

# Preface

Dear owners,

Thank you for your trust in Riddara brand and choosing a Riddara vehicle. We are committed to enhancing your work and life with our high-quality products and services.

Before your first use of the vehicle, please read this manual thoroughly and follow all the instructions in this manual. It will help you better understand and use your new vehicle, ensuring good technical condition and optimal performance. The more you know about your vehicle, the safer and more fun you'll enjoy driving it.

If you find some problems during use, please contact an authorised service centre for overhaul as soon as possible, the authorised service centre will provide you with quality service in maintenance and repair. Please make sure that you have the vehicle serviced on schedule, please refer to the electronic version of the Warranty and Maintenance Manual for specific information about the maintenance regulations.

This manual provides as much information as you need to know about your vehicle and is current as of the date of this manual. Due to our ongoing commitment to enhancing and refining the design of our vehicles, there may be variations between your vehicle and the specifications outlined within this manual. Consequently, we reserve the right to implement modifications without prior notification. However, any changes made will be communicated in compliance with applicable regulations following their implementation; under no circumstances can anyone rely on the data, illustrations and descriptions in this manual as a legal basis for any claim against us. Updates concerning this manual will be published electronically.

More electronic versions of the After Sales Service Manual are available on:

- RIDDARA official website <https://www.riddara.com>.

This manual is an integral part of the vehicle and should be passed on to the new owner if the vehicle is sold or lent to another person.

All the information in this manual is the latest information at the time of publication, and in case of future updates, supplementary notice will be released in accordance with the relevant regulations.

Shandong Tangjun Ouling Automobile Manufacture  
Co., Ltd.

November  
2025

Shandong Tangjun Ouling Automobile Manufacture Co., Ltd.

Any content of this manual may not be reproduced or copied without the written  
consent of Shandong Tangjun Ouling Automobile Manufacture Co., Ltd.

Note: The cover and pictures of this manual are for reference only. The actual  
information of the vehicle shall prevail.



November 2025, V1

---

# Contents

## Introduction and identification

- 7 Introduction
- 7 Notes to owners
- 10 Prompts
- 10 Symbols
- 11 Vehicle identification
- 11 Vehicle identification marks
- 11 Location of vehicle identification marks
- 14 Microwave window
- 14 Type plate

## Charging system

- 19 Introduction to high-voltage system
- 19 System layout
- 21 System features
- 22 High-voltage battery
- 24 Charging system introduction
- 24 Charging port

## Instrument and control

- 31 Instrument and controls
- 31 Driver side overview
- 34 Passenger side overview
- 37 Instrument cluster

37 Overview of full-segment display type instrument cluster (if equipped)

41 Overview of full LCD instrument cluster (if equipped)

46 Warning and indicator lamps

57 Steering wheel modules for lights and wipers

57 Steering wheel module for lamps

61 Steering wheel module for wipers

63 Steering wheel

63 Horns

63 Steering wheel adjustment

65 Buttons on steering wheel

67 Rearview mirrors

67 Exterior rearview mirrors

70 Interior rearview mirrors

72 Windows

72 Power windows

75 Sunroof (if equipped)

75 Panoramic sunroof

78 Interior lighting

78 Front Interior lighting

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

---

|    |   |     |  |
|----|---|-----|--|
| 79 | Rear interior lighting (if equipped)      | 106 | Ambient light and sunlight sensor            |
| 80 | Exterior lighting                         | 107 | Air conditioning and ventilation system      |
| 80 | Exterior lighting (if equipped)           | 112 | Air outlet adjustment                        |
| 80 | Cargo box lighting                        | 112 | Air purification system                      |
| 80 | Cargo box lighting                        | 113 | Turning on and off air conditioning remotely |
| 82 | Interior equipment                        |     |  |
| 82 | Glove box                                 |     |  |
| 83 | Storage boxes/compartments                |     |  |
| 86 | Sun visor and vanity mirror               | 115 | Seats  |
| 87 | Ticket holder (if equipped)               | 115 | Front seats                                  |
| 87 | Glasses case (if equipped)                | 118 | Rear seats                                   |
| 87 | Centre armrest                            | 120 | Front seat heating/ventilation (if equipped) |
| 88 | Cup holder                                | 121 | Rear seat ventilation (if equipped)          |
| 89 | Accessory power outlet                    | 122 | Seat adjustment parameters                   |
| 93 | Wired charging                            | 122 | Driver seat memory (if equipped)             |
| 93 | Wireless charging pad (if equipped)       | 123 | Seat belts                                   |
| 95 | Interior handles                          | 123 | Overview of seat belts                       |
| 95 | Magazine net (if equipped)                | 123 | Why are seat belts protective                |
| 95 | Net bag (if equipped)                     | 126 | Three-point seat belt                        |
| 95 | Cargo compartment                         | 129 | Seat belt maintenance and replacement        |
| 98 | Exterior equipment                        | 130 | Airbags                                      |
| 98 | Roll cage (if equipped)                   | 130 | Airbag overview                              |
| 98 | Roof rack (if equipped)                   | 131 | Positions of airbags                         |
|    |   | 134 | Airbag deployment                            |
| 99 | Air conditioning system                   |     |  |
| 99 | Heating, ventilation and air conditioning |     |  |
| 99 | Front A/C control system                  |     |  |

|                             |                                    |     |  |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------------|-----|--|
| 137                         | Airbag maintenance and replacement | 177 | Electronic stability control (ESC)                 |
| 138                         | Child restraint system             | 179 | Electronic brake assist (EBA)                      |
| 138                         | Selecting child restraint system   | 179 | Hill descent control (HDC)                         |
| 140                         | Using child restraint system       | 180 | Hill hold control (HHC)                            |
| 143                         | Installing child restraint system  | 181 | Traction control system (TCS)                      |
| <b>Starting and driving</b> |                                    | 181 | Acoustic vehicle alerting system (AVAS)            |
| 149                         | Key                                | 182 | Intelligent U-turn assistance system (If equipped) |
| 149                         | Smart key                          | 183 | Parking assist system                              |
| 151                         | Immobiliser                        | 183 | Parking distance control (PDC)                     |
| 151                         | Immobiliser                        | 186 | Rear view camera (RVC) system (if equipped)        |
| 151                         | Vehicle locking and unlocking      | 188 | Around view monitor (AVM) (if equipped)            |
| 151                         | Locking and unlocking              | 191 | Driver assist systems                              |
| 159                         | Vehicle start                      | 191 | Introduction to driver assist systems              |
| 159                         | Start switch (keyless start)       | 194 | Cruise control (CC) (if equipped)                  |
| 160                         | Start operation                    | 197 | Automatic speed limit control system (LIM)         |
| 161                         | Vehicle start failure              | 198 | Adaptive cruise control (ACC) (if equipped)        |
| 161                         | Driving                            | 208 | Intelligent cruise control (ICC) (if equipped)     |
| 167                         | Automatic shifting operation       |     |  |
| 167                         | Electronic shift lever             |     |  |
| 168                         | Gears                              |     |  |
| 169                         | Instructions for use               |     |  |
| 173                         | Brake and electric assist system   |     |  |
| 173                         | Service brake                      |     |  |
| 174                         | Parking brake                      |     |  |

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

---

|  |   |
|--|---|
| 219 Lane keeping assist (LKA)<br>(if equipped)                 | 261 Fuse position and<br>identification                   |
| 223 Lane departure warning<br>(LDW) (if equipped)              | 262 Underhood electrical<br>centre (UEC)                  |
| 224 Automatic emergency<br>brake system (AEB) (if<br>equipped) | 267 Interior fuse box                                     |
| 230 Rear side radar system<br>(RSRS) (if equipped)             | 271 Checking or replacing a<br>fuse                       |
| 234 Forward car leaving<br>warning (FCLW) (if<br>equipped)     | 272 Replacing bulbs                                       |
|  | 272 Bulb specifications                                   |
| <b>Fault during driving</b>                                    | 273 Emergency handling                                    |
| 237 Hazard warning device                                      | 273 Overheating of hybrid<br>powertrain                   |
| 237 Hazard warning lamp  | 274 Vehicle collision                                     |
| 237 Warning triangle   | 275 Vehicle on fire                                       |
| 238 Reflective vest  | 276 Getting unstuck                                       |
| 238 Fire extinguisher  | 276 Emergency response to<br>road accidents (if equipped) |
| 239 Jump start   | 278 Refuelling  |
| 239 Jump start   | 278 Refuelling  |
| 242 Towing vehicle   | 279 Vehicle emission                                      |
| 242 Towing tips  | 279 Vehicle emission                                      |
| 242 Towing eye   |   |
| 244 Towing mode (if<br>equipped)                               | <b>Repair and maintenance</b>                             |
| 247 Replacing tyres  | 281 Maintenance   |
| 247 Tyres  | 281 Regular maintenance                                   |
| 254 Rapid tyre repair  | 283 Front compartment                                     |
| 257 Replacing spare tyre (if<br>equipped)                      | 283 Bonnet  |
| 261 Changing fuses   | 284 Front compartment                                     |
|  | 285 Engine oil  |
|  | 285 Checking and adding<br>engine oil                     |

---

|                              |                              |   |
|------------------------------|------------------------------|---|
| 286 Cooling system           | 299 Cleaning of the exterior | 1 |
| 286 Cooling system           | 300 Cleaning of the interior |   |
| introduction                 |                              |   |
| 287 Checking coolant         |                              |   |
| 287 Adding coolant           |                              |   |
| 289 Brake system             |                              |   |
| 289 Overview                 | 303 Main parameters          | 2 |
| 290 Energy recovery          | 303 Main dimension           |   |
| 290 Brake pedal travel       | parameters                   |   |
| 292 Replacing brake system   | 303 Vehicle weight           |   |
| parts                        | parameters                   |   |
| 292 Brake fluid              | 304 Main assembly types and  | 3 |
| 293 Steering system          | parameters                   |   |
| 293 Electric power steering  | 306 Vehicle power            |   |
| (EPS)                        | performance                  |   |
| 294 Exterior lamps           | 306 Vehicle economy          | 4 |
| 294 Condensation on exterior | 306 Emission level           |   |
| lamps                        | 307 Wheels and tyres         |   |
| 294 Batteries                | 308 Fluids                   | 5 |
| 294 Maintenance of low-      | 308 Recommended oils,        |   |
| voltage battery              | fluids and capacities        |   |
| 295 Low-voltage battery      |                              |   |
| inspection                   |                              |   |
| 295 Replacement of low-      |                              |   |
| voltage battery              |                              |   |
| 296 Vehicle storage          |                              |   |
| 296 Washer fluid and wiper   | 309 Product information      | 6 |
| blades                       | 309 Power system             |   |
| 296 Washer fluid             | information                  |   |
| 297 Wiper blades             | 315 Vehicle emergency tools  | 7 |
| 299 Vehicle cleaning and     | 317 High voltage discharge   |   |
| maintenance                  | solution                     |   |
|                              | 319 Safety sign information  |   |
|                              | 319 Safety sign information  |   |
|                              | 320 Information on           |   |
|                              | emergency response           |   |
|                              | procedure                    |   |
|                              | 320 Items to be prepared     |   |

---

|                             |                             |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 323 Vehicle fire            | 325 Cuttable positions      |
| 324 Waterlogged vehicle     | 333 Removing vehicle from   |
| 324 Emergency evacuation of | the scene after an accident |
| occupants                   |                             |

## Introduction

### Notes to owners

1. This vehicle is a hybrid vehicle with features that differ from traditional fuel vehicles. Before first use, please read the instructions in this manual carefully. Failure to do so could result in personal injury and property damage and may void your service or warranty.
2. The hybrid powertrain combines the power sources from engine and electric motor to enhance fuel economy and reduce emissions. The engine can also power the drive motor to charge the high-voltage battery.
3. The engine in the hybrid powertrain can start and stop automatically (during low-load driving, when decelerating or the vehicle stops, the engine will stop automatically). When the READY indicator on the instrument cluster is on, the drive motor can propel the vehicle even with the engine off. However, when the engine is warming up, the high-voltage battery is charging, or the high-voltage battery temperature is too low or too high, the engine may not be able to stop automatically.
4. The vehicle has two batteries: a lithium-ion high-voltage battery (high-voltage) that provides power to the electric motor for driving the vehicle, and a 12V lead-acid battery located in the front compartment.

The 12V battery functions similarly to lead-acid batteries in traditional fuel vehicles, supplying power to low-voltage electrical systems such as headlights, audio systems and speakers. The 12V lead-acid battery is charged from the high-voltage battery.

5. If you drive the vehicle for the first time or drive it after parking for a long time, there may be a deviation in the SOC displayed on the instrument. It is recommended to fully charge the vehicle before driving.
6. To keep the high-voltage battery in its best service status, fully charge it with charging equipment at regular intervals (full charging at least once a week is recommended).
7. The high-voltage power of the vehicle is about 400V. Do not touch the high-voltage components with bare hands when the high-voltage power supply is connected. The high-voltage components include an electric drive controller, distribution box, power harness device, high-voltage auxiliary driving controller, high-voltage main cable, charging plug, charging port, high-voltage battery, drive motor, etc. The high-voltage cables inside the vehicle are wrapped with orange-yellow corrugated tubing for easy identification.

8. Use a charging gun connected to the power grid to charge the vehicle's high-voltage battery.
9. Try to maintain smooth acceleration and deceleration when driving the vehicle. During driving, the hybrid powertrain can perform energy recovery through regenerative braking when the vehicle decelerates. To extend the remaining range, avoid unnecessary acceleration/ deceleration.
10. It is strictly prohibited to touch the positive and negative poles of the battery pack enclosure with hands.
11. Any deliberate actions, such as crushing, piercing, or burning, that may damage the battery system are strictly prohibited.
12. Never sell, transfer or modify the high-voltage battery. The high-voltage batteries removed from end-of-life vehicles should be recycled by Riddara authorised service centre to prevent accidents.
13. All references in this manual to "our authorised service centre" or "service centre" are intended to refer to Riddara authorised service centre.
14. When washing the vehicle, try not to aim the water gun at the electrical parts inside the front compartment or in the chassis area.
15. The vehicle should be parked in an environment where the ambient temperature ranges from -30°C to 55°C. Otherwise, the vehicle may not operate normally.
16. The vehicle is equipped with electronic stability control (ESC) system, which includes anti-lock brake system (ABS). In case of an emergency brake, apply firm and continuous pressure to the brake pedal instead of light taps.
17. The vehicle features a creep function. When the vehicle is ready for driving (indicated by the READY light), and the gear lever is in the D (Drive) or R (Reverse) position, releasing the brake pedal and parking brake will cause the vehicle to move slowly forward or backwards.
18. Regularly inspect tyre wear and tyre pressure according to the methods and tyre pressure requirements recommended in this manual.
19. Use the recommended oils and fluids specified in this manual and adhere to the maintenance requirements specified in the Warranty and Maintenance Manual.
20. This hybrid powertrain operates with high-voltage electricity. During operation, this system generates high temperatures/ pressures. Strictly observe the warning labels on the vehicle.
21. The vehicle is equipped with airbags. To ensure child passenger safety, it is prohibited to use rear-facing child restraint systems on

seats protected by frontal airbags (when activated).

22. To ensure your driving safety, do not disassemble or replace vehicle parts by yourself. Some fasteners on the vehicle may have anti-loosening agents applied, and they cannot be reused after disassembly.

23. Any retrofit or addition of new equipment on the vehicle without proper authorization is strictly prohibited. Riddara will not assume any responsibility for direct or indirect losses resulting from unauthorised retrofits or additions.

24. Ensure that the vehicle is parked in an environment free from corrosive, explosive, or insulating gas and away from heat sources.

25. Do not park for too long with the engine on. Avoid inhaling exhaust gas or mistakenly stepping on the accelerator pedal. Otherwise, the engine may keep idling at high speed, leading to vehicle fire and affect personal and property safety.

26. Ensure that floor mats are correctly positioned and are of the correct size. The foot mats must not interfere with the normal use of pedals, and avoid slippage of the foot mats that affect the pedal action, thus causing a traffic accident.

27. The Multimedia Manual is essential for understanding the vehicle's infotainment system and is an integral part of this manual. For specific instructions on operating the infotainment system, refer to the Multimedia Manual available in the official website.

28. The content of this manual is based on the product information at the time of publication. To meet the needs of customers and comply with the requirements of regulations, the vehicle's features and performance will be continuously optimized and improved, so there may be differences between the actual vehicle and the description in this manual.

### Prompts

#### Danger

 Indicating that ignoring this warning could lead to severe injury or death, and the steps or requirements stated must be strictly followed.



Indicates the rotation direction.



Indicates the forbidden operation or situation.

#### Warning

 Indicating that the steps or requirements stated here must be noted and followed, otherwise the vehicle may be damaged.

#### Notice

 Suggestive statement, which assists you in operating the vehicle in a better way.

#### Eco-friendly

 Indicating that the information described here is related to environmental protection.

#### If equipped

If a title or name is followed with "if equipped", the device or function concerned is available to some model, not necessarily in the vehicle.

### Symbols

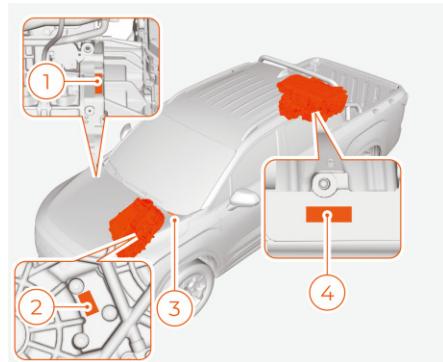
 Indicates an object.

 Indicates the movement direction.

## Vehicle identification

### Vehicle identification marks

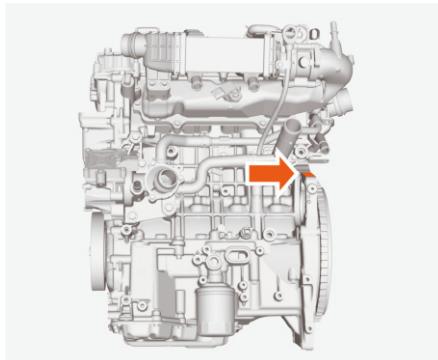
Please provide the vehicle identification number (VIN) when contacting a Riddara authorised service centre. Additionally, if your inquiry or service request involves the drive motor or engine, you may also need to provide its code.



1. Engine code
2. Front drive motor code
3. Vehicle identification number (VIN)
4. Rear drive motor code

### Location of vehicle identification marks

### Location of engine code



Engine code is stamped on the engine block at the junction between engine and front drive motor.

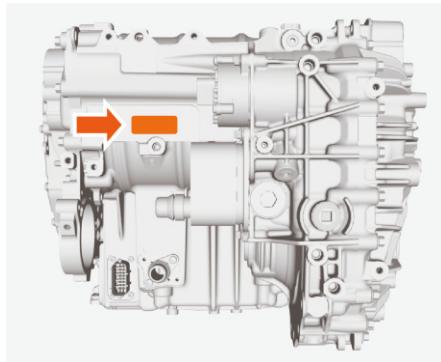
### Position of drive motor code/identification number

#### Front drive motor



Front drive motor code/identification number is located on the left side of the motor housing.

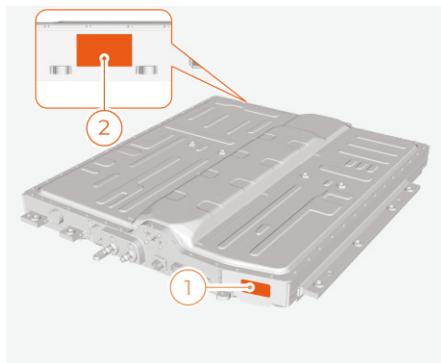
## Rear drive motor



Rear drive motor code/identification number is located at the bottom of the motor housing.

## Location of high-voltage battery code

### High-voltage battery



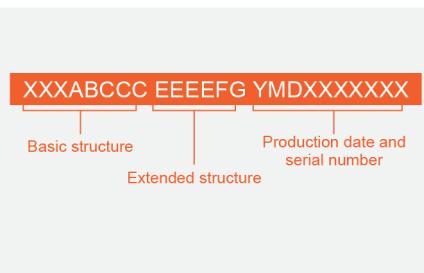
The high-voltage battery stickers are affixed to the front and rear sections of the high-voltage battery.

1. 24-digit new GB standard code label
2. Riddara 43-digit 2D label



When the high-voltage battery is repaired or recycled, it is necessary to provide and upload the high-voltage battery code. If the label on the high-voltage battery is damaged, please contact a Riddara authorised service centre in time.

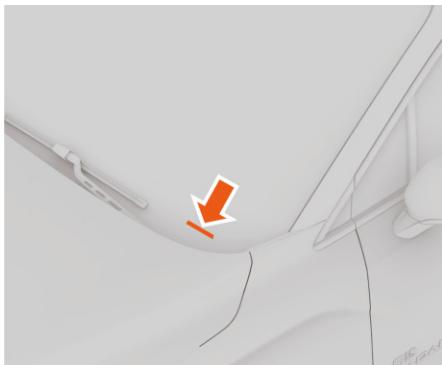
High-voltage battery code:



The high-voltage battery code in the 24-digit new GB standard code label is composed of 24 characters. It contains the high-voltage battery supplier code, product type, battery type, specification code, origin, production date and serial number and other information.

Riddara 43-digit 2D label shows the part number, traceability code (New GB standard code), and supplier code.

## Location of vehicle identification number (VIN)



There are 4 VIN labels on the vehicle. The VIN label shown in the illustration is located on the dash panel at the lower left corner of the windscreen and can be seen through the windscreen.



The VIN label, as shown in the illustration, is located on the front passenger seat beam. You can see VIN by moving the front passenger seat backward to the limit position and uncovering the blanket.

The locations of the other 2 VIN labels are as follows:

- VCU electronic data
- On the type plate at the lower end of the left side B-pillar panel.



Please provide the vehicle identification number (VIN) when contacting the Riddara authorised service centre. If there is any damage to the identification number engraved under the front passenger seat, please contact the Riddara authorised service centre for service as soon as possible.

## Reading VIN

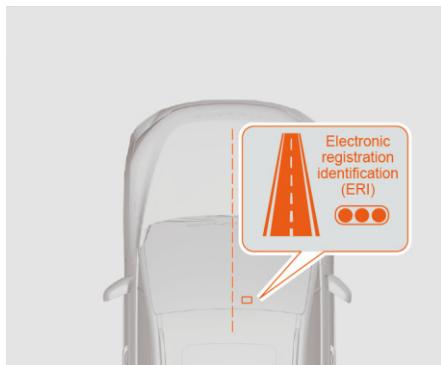
The VIN can be read by a Riddara authorised service centre using a vehicle diagnostic tester. The specific steps are as follows:

1. Turn the start switch to OFF;
2. Connect the Riddara diagnostic tester to the OBD diagnostic interface;
3. Start the diagnostic program, start the vehicle, and tap "Welcome".
4. The VIN is automatically read.



To read VIN using the method above, a professional maintenance person from a Riddara authorised service centre is needed, since non-professional operation may cause damage to the vehicle.

### Microwave window



The microwave window is located at a place at the horizontal centre and in the upper part in the vertical direction of the windscreens.

The electronic registration

identification (ERI) should be installed in the middle, slightly to the right, of the microwave window. It should not be obstructed by the interior rearview mirror mounting bracket, sensor bracket, or other objects.

The ERI contains essential information about the vehicle.



Please keep the front windscreens clean and dry. Do not paste film or metal and other materials on the microwave window to ensure the standardized installation of the ERI and the effective reading of the data. Do not block, squeeze or remove the ERI! If the ERI is damaged, reapply it to the issuer immediately.

### Type plate

Type I



The type plate is located below the left-side centre pillar and contains the following information:

- Country of manufacture
- Manufacturer name
- Vehicle identification number
- Brand
- Vehicle model
- Max. permissible mass
- Max. single-axle load
- Max. tandem-axle load
- Vehicle type
- Manufacture month and year

## Type II



The type plate is located below the left-side centre pillar and contains the following information:

- Country of manufacture
- Manufacturer name
- Vehicle identification number
- Brand
- Vehicle model
- Vehicle type
- Manufacture month and year

## Type III



The type plate is located below the left-side centre pillar and contains the following information:

- Manufacturer name
- Country of manufacture
- Vehicle model
- Manufacture month and year
- Vehicle identification number

### Type IV



The type plate is located below the left-side centre pillar and contains the following information:

- Manufacturer name
- Vehicle identification number
- Brand
- Vehicle model
- Maximum net power of engine
- Engine model
- Rated voltage of high-voltage battery system
- Engine displacement
- Rated capacity of high-voltage battery system
- Number of passengers
- Maximum allowable total mass
- Vehicle kerb weight
- Drive motor model
- Peak power of drive motor
- Manufacture month and year
- Maximum authorised towed mass (if equipped)

### Type V



The type plate is located below the left-side centre pillar and contains the following information:

- Manufacturer name
- Vehicle identification number
- Brand
- Vehicle model
- Maximum net power of engine
- Engine model
- Rated voltage of high-voltage battery system
- Engine displacement
- Rated capacity of high-voltage battery system
- Number of passengers
- Maximum allowable total mass
- Vehicle kerb weight
- Drive motor model
- Peak power of drive motor
- Manufacture month and year
- Maximum authorised towed mass (if equipped)

## Type VI



The type plate is located below the left-side centre pillar and contains the following information:

- Manufacturer name
- Vehicle identification number
- Brand
- Vehicle model
- Maximum net power of engine
- Engine model
- Rated voltage of high-voltage battery system
- Engine displacement
- Rated capacity of high-voltage battery system
- Number of passengers
- Maximum allowable total mass
- Vehicle kerb weight
- Drive motor model
- Peak power of drive motor
- Manufacture month and year
- Maximum authorised towed mass (if equipped)

## Type VII



The type plate is located below the left-side centre pillar and contains the following information:

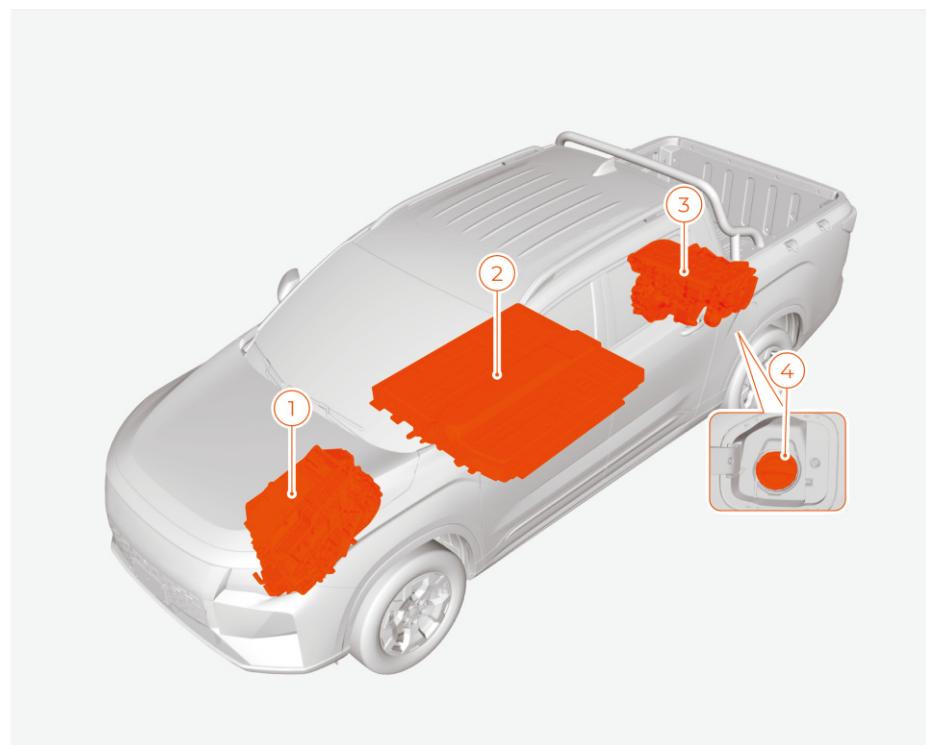
- Manufacturer name
- Vehicle certificate number
- Vehicle identification number
- Max. permissible mass
- Max. permissible mass (inc. trailer)
- Max. single-axle load
- Max. tandem-axle load



# Introduction to high-voltage system

## System layout

### Type I

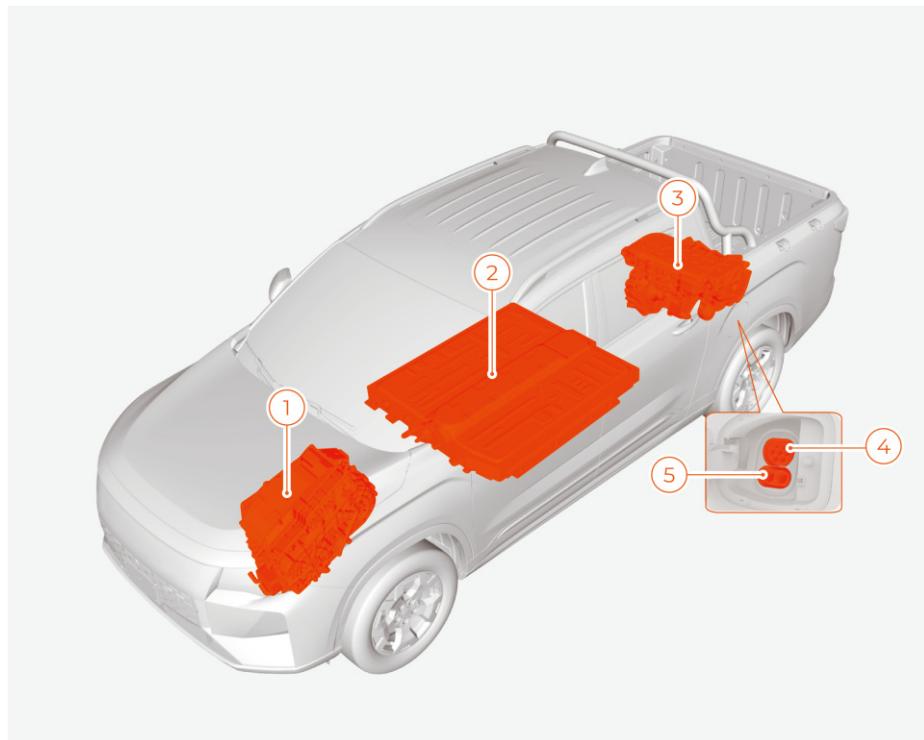


1. Front drive motor
2. Power battery
3. Rear drive motor
4. AC charging port

## Charging system

---

### Type II



|                      |                     |
|----------------------|---------------------|
| 1. Front drive motor | 4. AC charging port |
| 2. Power battery     | 5. DC charging port |
| 3. Rear drive motor  |                     |

## System features

### High voltage safety

The high-voltage battery provides DC voltage of about 400V for the high-voltage electrical system, which is converted into three-phase AC power for the drive motor through the motor control unit. The high-voltage DC system supplies power to the front drive motor and heater through the front interface of the power battery, and to the compressor through the front drive motor interface.

Additionally, the system also supplies power to the rear drive motor and the high-low voltage charging system assembly via the rear interface of the power battery, through the High-Voltage Distribution Unit (PDU). The following information is essential to protect vehicle occupants and first responders from high-voltage electrical hazards:

- The high-voltage fuse (inside the high-voltage battery) provides short-circuit protection for the high-voltage battery.
- The positive and negative high-voltage cables connected to the high-voltage battery are usually controlled by a high-voltage relay. When the high-voltage power supply of the vehicle is disconnected, the relay is disconnected to prevent current

from flowing out of the high-voltage battery.

- To prevent serious injury or death from severe burns or electric shock, never touch, cut, or damage any orange high-voltage cables or high-voltage components.
- The positive and negative cables are insulated from the metal body. High-voltage current flows through these cables and does not pass through the metal body. It is safe to touch the metal body as it is insulated from high-voltage components.

### Warning message

In case of power system failure or improper operation of the user, the instrument cluster will automatically display warning messages. Please read and follow the instructions in these messages. If warning lamps illuminate, warning messages are displayed, or there is a low-voltage battery fault, the power system may not start. In this case, please try to restart the system. If the READY indicator fails to illuminate, please contact a Riddara service centre for inspection and repair.

When the impact sensor detects a certain level of impact, it will urgently disconnect the system and high-voltage current output to minimize the risk of electric shock. Once this function is activated, the vehicle

cannot be restarted. To restart the vehicle, you need to contact a Riddara service centre for inspection and repair.

**!** The vehicle is equipped with high-voltage DC and AC systems, as well as a 12V low-voltage system. The high-voltage DC and AC equipment systems can be extremely dangerous, and in the event of a failure, they may result in severe personal injury or even death.

### High-voltage battery

As one of main power sources, the high-voltage battery can be charged repeatedly. The primary methods of charging the high-voltage battery through the external power supply are AC charging or DC charging (if equipped), and the high-voltage battery can also be charged through the motor when the vehicle is braking or coasting.



To keep the high-voltage battery in optimal condition, it's necessary to recharge the battery if the vehicle has not been driven for more than three months or if the battery charge level is too low. Failure to do so could result in over-discharge of the high-voltage battery, leading to reduced battery performance. Vehicle malfunction or damage caused by this could void the warranty.

- For a new vehicle with a healthy high-voltage battery, the actual endurance mileage may vary due to factors such as driving habits (frequent acceleration and deceleration), road conditions (steep uphill roads), temperature (cold weather), and the use of electrical accessories (e.g. air conditioning).
- At low temperatures (below 0 °C), the chemical reaction rate in the battery is reduced, and the effective energy provided by the battery is reduced, which is quite normal.
- All of a vehicle's electrical appliances are battery-powered. At low temperatures, the self-heating function of the high-voltage battery system will be activated, and the air conditioning in the passenger compartment will start heating. The energy allocated to the power system will be reduced, thus shorting the endurance mileage correspondingly.
- The high-voltage battery is a specialized chemical product that

requires proper use and maintenance. Regular full charging and discharging are crucial for maintaining optimal performance. Additionally, due to its chemical properties, the capacity of high-voltage battery naturally decreases over time. Therefore, for vehicles that have been in use for some time, it is advised to have them checked at a Riddara authorised service centre when their endurance mileages vary considerably when fully charged.

**i** For long-term parking vehicles equipped with Lfp battery packs, it is necessary to confirm that the SOC is 50% to 70% before parking. Batteries shall be maintained at least once every 3 months, fully charged by slow charging and then discharged to 50-70% before being parked.

## Notes

The high-voltage battery is a high-voltage energy storage device and classified as a hazardous item. Improper handling and usage by non-professionals can lead to serious consequences such as electric shock, fire, or explosion. The installation and maintenance of high-voltage batteries must be carried out by professional technicians at Riddara authorised service centres and the use of them must strictly adhere to relevant safety regulations. It is strictly forbidden for

non-professionals to install and maintain high-voltage batteries and use them beyond their scope. Any battery damage or other losses resulting from improper use or usage beyond specified limits will not be covered by warranty. Please note the following points:

1. Protection against moisture and water  
There are many high-voltage control lines and single batteries in a high-voltage battery. Liquids entering a high-voltage battery can cause short circuits, leakage and corrosion of cells, electronic circuits and connectors. Therefore, it is necessary to ensure that the high-voltage battery will not be immersed in various liquids and wet air.
2. Protection against ambient heat  
Maintaining the high-voltage battery within the optimal operating temperature range significantly extends its lifespan and enhances safety. Therefore, you should park your vehicle in areas with thermal insulation and good ventilation.
3. Protection against shock and collision  
The high-voltage battery contains cells connected in series and is installed with a management system and various sensor elements. To prevent the battery

## Charging system

from impact, be careful when driving on bumpy roads.

## Charging system introduction

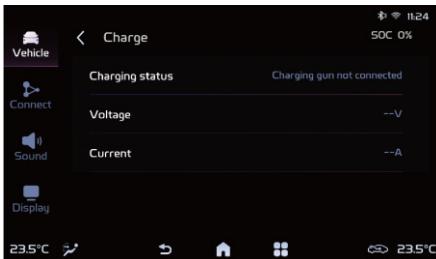
### Charging port

The vehicle has two kinds of charging ports: AC and DC (if equipped). You can charge the high-voltage battery after opening the charging port cover.

 Do not remove or modify the charging port without authorization.

### Vehicle charging

#### Charging Settings



On the multimedia display, tap Settings → Vehicle > Energy > Charging to view current charging information.

### AC charging port

If the vehicle needs to be charged in AC charging mode, open the recharge hatch and plug the AC charger into the AC charging port.

Type I



Type II



The AC charging port is on the left rear side of the vehicle.

Opening AC charging port

Type I



1. Open the charging port flap by pressing on its rear area.

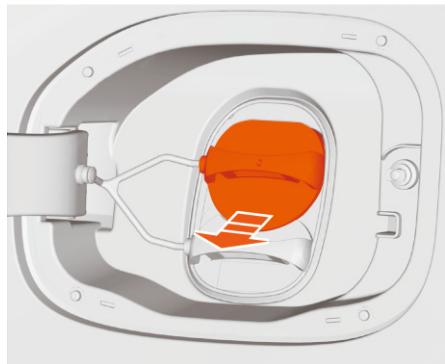


2. Remove the AC charging port cover.

### Type II



1. Open the charging port flap by pressing on its rear area.



2. Remove the AC charging port cover.

### Electronic lock

The vehicle is equipped with an electronic lock function for AC charging, which prevents hot plugging of the charging gun and also prevents the charging gun from being stolen. The electronic lock is installed on the charging port and controls the extension and retraction of the

cylindrical lock lever to lock and unlock the charging gun.

#### Locking

The electronic lock automatically locks when you insert the charging gun into the port with all charging conditions met.

#### Unlocking

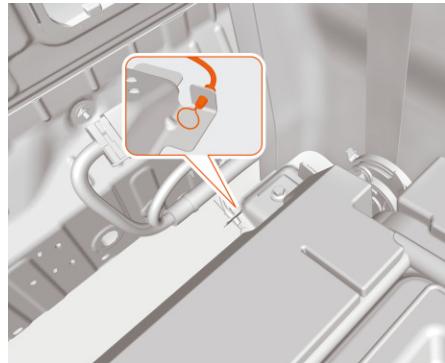
There are two ways to unlock:

1. When the start switch is in the OFF position, press the unlock button on the smart key or the central unlock button to unlock.
2. In case the key-operated unlocking is not working, you can unlock it by pulling the emergency release ring.

**i** After pressing the unlock button on the smart key, if you do not unplug the charging gun and there is no further operation on the smart key within 30 seconds, the electronic lock will automatically relock, and charging will continue.

### Emergency release ring

In the course of AC charging the battery through the slow charging port, if an unexpected situation (e.g., power failure of the vehicle or mechanical failure of electronic lock) prevents the slow charging gun from being pulled out, the gun can be manually unlocked using the emergency release ring for emergency unlocking.



The emergency release ring is located on the left rear side of the rear backrest and can be seen after folding down the seat back.

**!** Before closing the charging port flap, please ensure that the charging port cover is securely in place to prevent water or dust from entering the charging port and causing malfunctions. To prevent potential discharge due to abnormal power failure and ensure personal safety, unlock the vehicle, then press the button on the charging plug, remove the charging gun, and finally disconnect the plug from the power grid.

## DC charging port (if equipped)



2

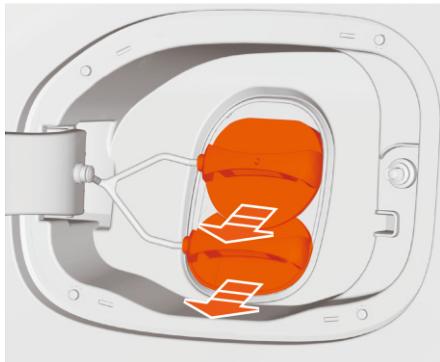
The DC charging port is on the left rear side of the vehicle.

## Opening DC charging port



1. Open the charging port flap by pressing on its rear area.

# Charging system



2. Remove the AC and DC charging port cover.

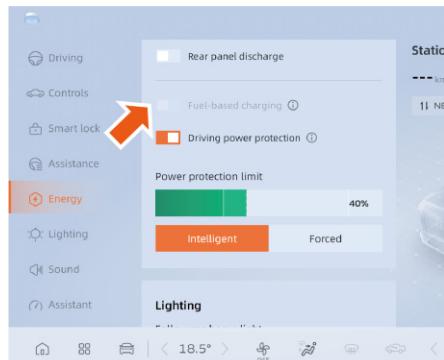
## Engine-assisted charging

### Type I



On the multimedia display, tap Settings → Vehicle → Energy. You can turn on or off Engine-assisted Charging.

### Type II



On the multimedia display, tap My car → Energy → Engine-assisted charging. You can turn on or off Engine-assisted Charging.

Engine-assisted charging uses the engine to recharge the high-voltage battery.

Fuel will be consumed during the function operation. Please monitor the fuel level. The following conditions must also be met:

- Vehicle in READY state with gear selector in Park (P).
- Brake pedal not depressed.
- SOC of high-voltage battery  $\geq$  85%. Use this function in an open area and monitor the vehicle operation.

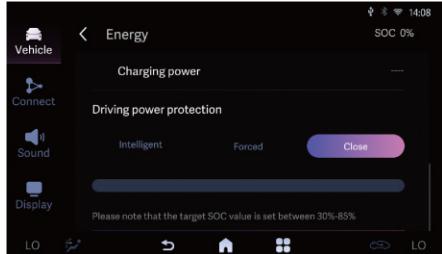
Depressing the brake pedal can quickly deactivate this function.

## Driving power protection

By default, this function is off but can be memorised. It is unavailable in EV mode. It activates only when the target

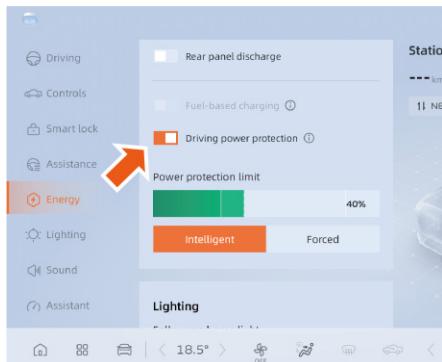
charge level exceeds the current battery level by a defined threshold.

#### Type I



On the multimedia display, tap Settings → Vehicle → Energy. You can turn on or off Driving Power Protection.

#### Type II



On the multimedia display, tap My car → Energy → Driving power protection. You can turn on or off Driving Power Protection.

##### Intelligent

The engine is intelligently activated to prioritise fuel efficiency.

##### Forced

The engine is continuously run to prioritise charging speed.

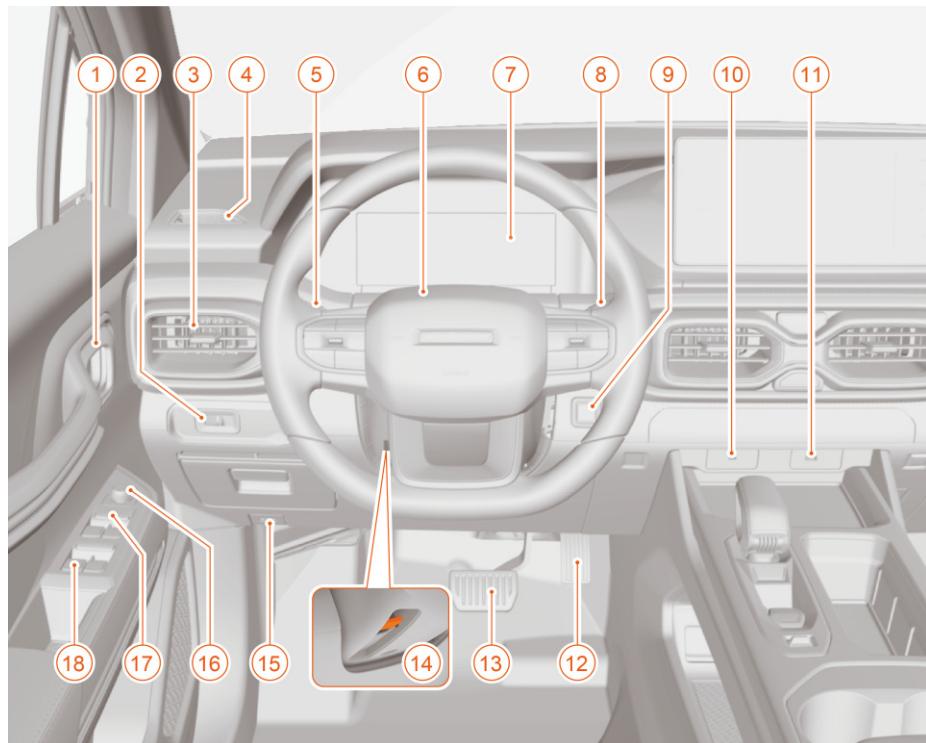
**i** If destination charging is available, set a lower charge threshold to prioritise battery usage and minimise fuel consumption. If charging access is limited or your route includes demanding conditions (e.g., predicted traffic congestion, mountainous terrain), raise the target charge level to maintain sufficient battery reserves. This ensures consistent power delivery for enhanced drivability and comfort.



## Instrument and controls

### Driver side overview

#### Type I



3

1. Door inner handle
2. Headlight level switch
3. Left side air outlet
4. Left defroster air outlet
5. Steering wheel module for lamps
6. Steering wheel
7. Instrument cluster
8. Type-C charging port
9. USB multimedia port
10. Accelerator pedal
11. Brake pedal
12. Bonnet release handle
13. Exterior rearview mirror adjustment switch
14. Steering wheel adjustment lever
15. Bonnet release handle (repeated)
16. Left defroster air outlet (repeated)
17. Headlight level switch (repeated)
18. Door inner handle (repeated)

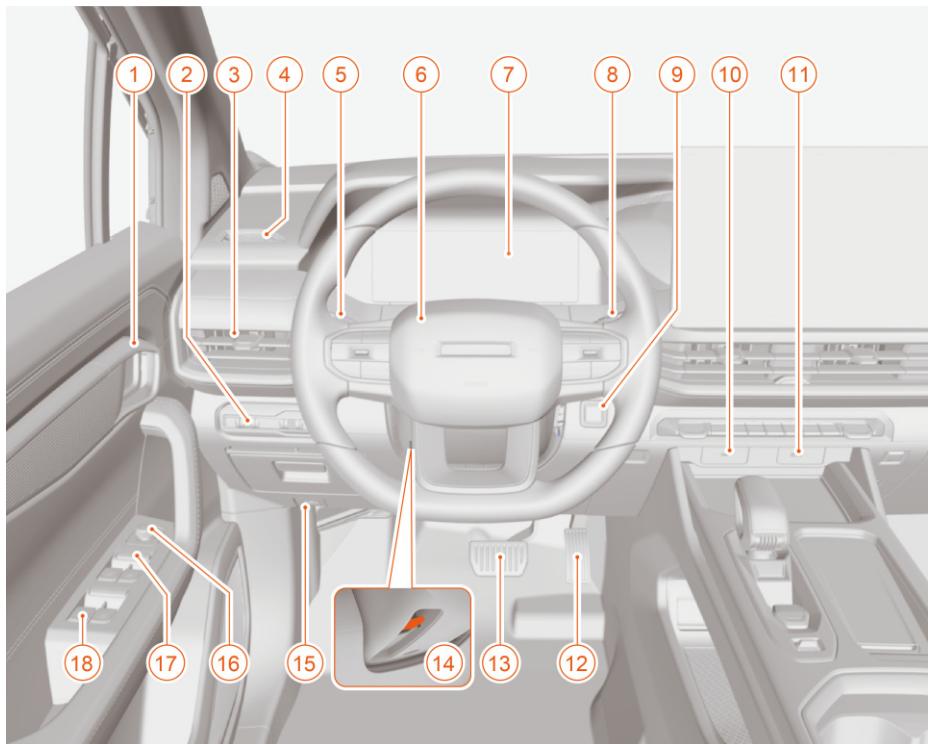
## Instrument and control

---

|                                     |                                 |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 8. Steering wheel module for wipers | 17. Central control button      |
| 9. Start switch                     | 18. Power window control switch |

## Driver side overview

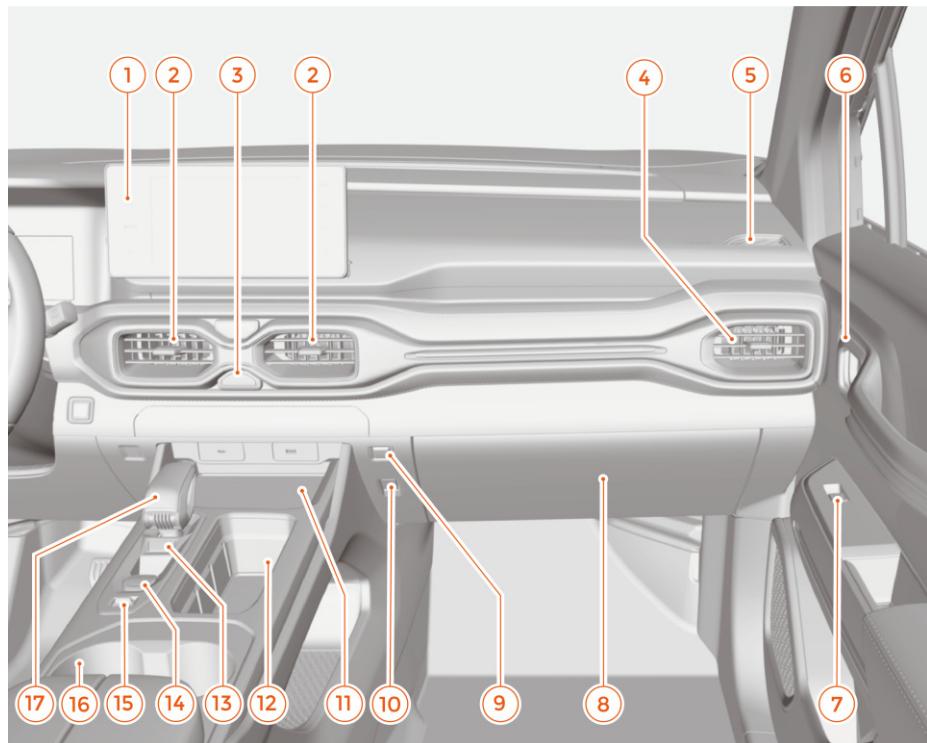
Type II



1. Door inner handle
2. Console switch module
3. Left side air outlet
4. Left defroster air outlet
5. Steering wheel module for lamps
6. Steering wheel
7. Instrument cluster
8. Steering wheel module for wipers
9. Start switch
10. Type-C charging port
11. USB multimedia port
12. Accelerator pedal
13. Brake pedal
14. Steering wheel adjustment lever
15. Bonnet release handle
16. Exterior rearview mirror adjustment switch
17. Central control button
18. Power window control switch

## Passenger side overview

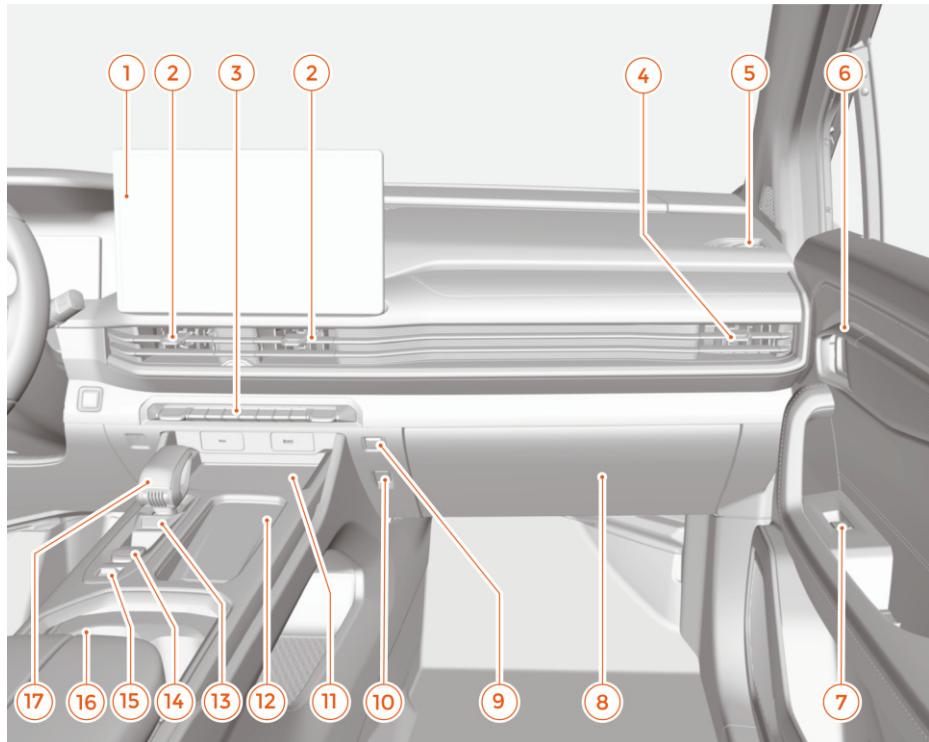
### Type I



|   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Multimedia display                               | 10. Hook                                  |
| 2. Central air outlet                               | 11. Center console upper storage box      |
| 3. Hazard warning lamp switch                       | 12. Center console storage box            |
| 4. Right side air outlet                            | 13. Gear P button                         |
| 5. Right defroster air outlet                       | 14. Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) switch |
| 6. Door inner handle                                | 15. Driving mode selector switch          |
| 7. Front passenger side power window control switch | 16. Cup holder                            |
| 8. Glove box  | 17. Electronic shift lever                |
| 9. Glove box switch                                 |   |

## Passenger side overview

Type II



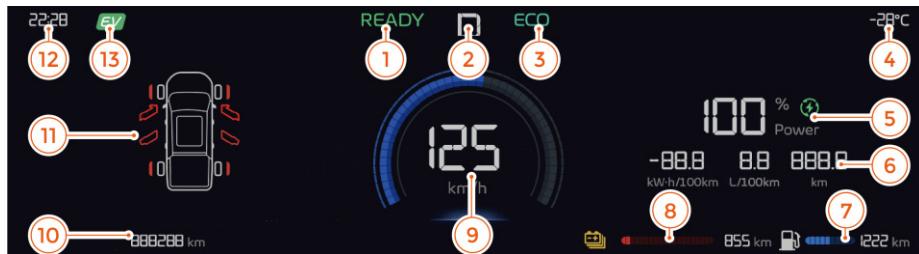
3

1. Multimedia display
2. Central air outlet
3. A/C control button and hazard warning lamp switch
4. Right side air outlet
5. Right defroster air outlet
6. Door inner handle
7. Front passenger side power window control switch
8. Glove box
9. Glove box switch
10. Hook
11. Center console upper storage box
12. Wireless charging pad
13. Gear P button
14. Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) switch
15. Driving mode selector switch
16. Cup holder
17. Electronic shift lever



## Instrument cluster

### Overview of full-segment display type instrument cluster (if equipped)



#### 1. Ready status display area

When the vehicle is fully ready for normal driving, the Ready Indicator **READY** will illuminate.

Displays average energy consumption, average fuel consumption and trip distance.

#### 2. Gear information display area

Gear: based on the selected gear, it will be displayed as P, R, N, D.

#### 7. Fuel level & range display area

- Fuel level: Displays the remaining fuel quantity via graduated scale.
- Fuel range: Displays the range available with the remaining fuel numerically.

#### 3. Driving mode display area

Driving mode: Depending on the selected driving mode, it will be displayed as Comfort, Eco, Sport, Snow, Mud, Off-road, or Sand.

#### 8. State of charge (SOC) & range display area

- SOC: Displays remaining high-voltage battery charge via graduated scale.
- Battery range: Displays the range available with the remaining battery power numerically.

#### 4. Temperature display area

Temperature: Always displayed. The display range of the outside temperature is -40°C to 60°C before parking.

On the multimedia display, tap Settings → Vehicle → Energy. You can set the battery ranges under different operating conditions for display.

#### 5. Power and energy recovery display area

- Power: Displays percentage output.
- Energy recovery: Displays energy recovery level.

#### 6. ECU information display area

### 9. Speed display area

Displays current vehicle speed numerically.

### 10. Total distance display area

Display the total distance travelled of the vehicle.

### 11. Door status & tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS) information

- Door status: Indicates which doors are ajar.
- TPMS information: Alerts for abnormal tyre pressure conditions.

### 12. Time display area

Always displayed. Time adjustment is available when steering wheel control multiplexing is activated.

### 13. Drive mode display area

Displays the vehicle's current driving mode, e.g.:

- EV: electric vehicle mode;
- HEV: hybrid electric vehicle mode.

## Instrument cluster settings

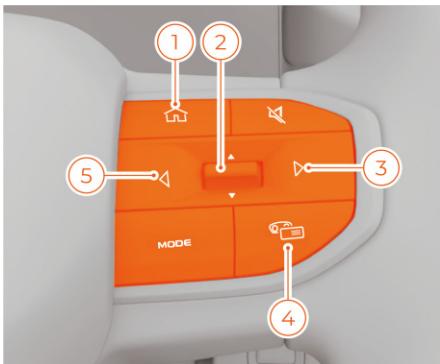


For safety reasons, it is prohibited to set the instrument cluster while the vehicle is in motion.



Before adjusting the instrument cluster settings, ensure steering wheel control is switched to instrument.

### Steering wheel combined use function



Briefly press the mode switch button on the right side of steering wheel to activate steering wheel control multiplexing (i.e., switches steering wheel control to instrument cluster).

1. Home button: Return to the homepage of the multimedia display screen.
2. Confirm:
  - After selecting time setting, time display enters blinking state. Press and hold this button to enable time adjustment. When the hours field blinks independently, scroll up this button to increment the hour value. About 5s after hour adjustment, the minutes field blinks independently. Scroll up this button to increment the minute value.
  - After selecting time setting, time display enters blinking state. Press and hold this button to enable time adjustment. When the hours field blinks

independently, scroll down this button to decrement the hour value. About 5s after hour adjustment, the minutes field blinks independently. Scroll down this button to decrement the minute value.

- After selecting ECU adjustment, the ECU screen enters blinking state. Press and hold this button to reset trip odometer, average fuel consumption and average energy consumption.

3. Right selector button: After briefly pressing the MODE button, from the default cluster screen, briefly press to choose between time setting or ECU adjustment.
4. Modes switch key: Press this button to switch the control of the steering wheel button to the multimedia host and the instrument cluster.
5. Left selector button: After briefly pressing the MODE button, from the default cluster screen, briefly press to choose between time setting or ECU adjustment.

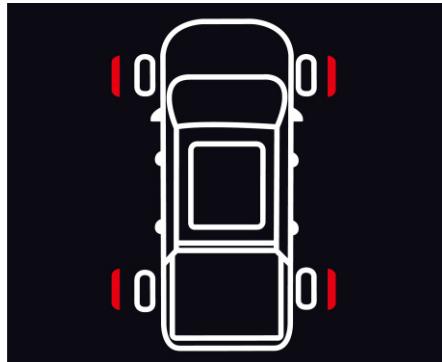
### “Lights not off” alerts

When the start switch is in the OFF position, and if the position lamp or front combination lamp is on with the left front door open, the instrument cluster will remind the driver using a buzzer.



Please turn off all lights when you leave the vehicle to prevent the low-voltage battery from draining and being unable to start the vehicle.

### TPMS alert

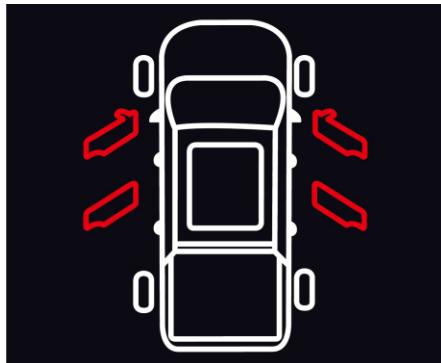


While driving, if abnormal tyre pressure is detected, the cluster will display a warning for the affected tyre(s). In this case, stop the vehicle as soon as possible, check the tyre pressure and deflate the tyre to the correct pressure.



The illustration shows the alert status when the tire pressure of all wheels is abnormal. The actual display on the vehicle shall prevail.

### “Doors not closed” alerts



If any of the four doors are not properly closed, the instrument cluster will display corresponding door alert(s). Depending on current speed, affected door alerts will flash prominently with audible warnings.

**i** The illustration shows the reminder status when all doors are not closed while the vehicle is stationary. The actual display on the vehicle shall prevail.

### Overspeed alarm

When the vehicle speed exceeds 120 km/h, an audible warning is emitted while a warning message is displayed on the instrument cluster to remind the driver to reduce the speed and drive safely. When the actual vehicle speed drops below 115 km/h, the warning automatically cancels.

## Overview of full LCD instrument cluster (if equipped)



1. Temperature display area  
Temperature: always-On, the outdoor temperature display ranges from -40°C~ 60°C.
2. Drive mode display area  
Displays the vehicle's current driving mode, e.g.:
  - EV: electric vehicle mode;
  - HEV: hybrid electric vehicle mode.
  - iTMS: Intelligent mode.
3. Driving mode display area  
Driving mode: Depending on the selected driving mode, it will be displayed as Comfort, Eco, Sport, Snow, Mud, Off-road, or Sand.
4. Infotainment information and alarm message display area
  - Driving information: trip distance, since starting, tyre status.
  - Multimedia: Radio, BT music, USB music.
  - Communications: Current call status, recent call history.
5. Time display area  
The GPS time is displayed by default. On the multimedia display, tap My car → System → General → Time. You can set the time format.
6. Energy recovery and drive power display area  
Displays the current energy recovery level and drive power.
7. Total distance display area  
Display the total distance travelled of the vehicle.
8. Ready status display area  
When the vehicle is fully ready for normal driving, the Ready Indicator **READY** will illuminate.
9. Fuel level display area  
Display the remaining fuel range.

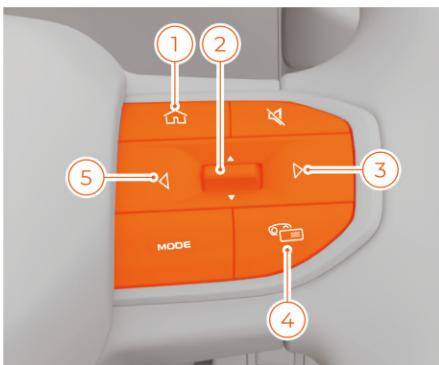
10. High-voltage battery SOC display area  
Displays the SOC of high-voltage battery or driving range according to the settings in the multimedia display.
11. Gear information display area  
Gear: based on the selected gear, it will be displayed as P, R, N, D.
12. Speed display area  
The speedometer displays the current speed of the vehicle. On the multimedia display, tap My car → General → Unit. You can set the speed unit.
13. Prompt message display area  
Displays advisory messages (e.g., driver assistance alerts).

## Instrument cluster settings

**!** For safety reasons, it is prohibited to set the instrument cluster while the vehicle is in motion.

**i** Before adjusting the instrument cluster settings, ensure steering wheel control is switched to instrument.

### Steering wheel combined use function



Briefly press the mode switch button on the right side of steering wheel to activate steering wheel control multiplexing (i.e., switches steering wheel control to instrument cluster).

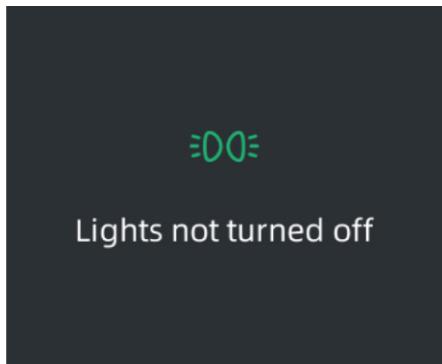
1. Home button: Return to the homepage of the multimedia display screen.
2. Confirm:
  - When the instrument cluster menu is opened, press this button upward to select the previous item in the instrument cluster menu.

- When the instrument cluster menu is opened, press this button downward to select the next item in the instrument cluster menu.

- When the instrument cluster menu is opened, briefly press this button to confirm the selection of menu items and fix the options.
- When the instrument cluster menu is open, press and hold this button to reset the ECU data.
- While a standard alert message is displayed, briefly press this button to hide the message.

3. Right selection button: When the instrument cluster menu is opened, briefly press this button to select menu items to the right in the instrument cluster menu.
4. Modes switch key: Briefly press this button to switch the control of the steering wheel button to the multimedia host and the instrument cluster.
5. Left selection button/Back button: When the instrument cluster menu is opened, briefly press this button to select menu items to the left in the instrument cluster menu.

### “Lights not off” alerts



When the start switch is in the OFF position, and if the position lamp or front combination lamp is on with the left front door open, the instrument cluster will display a warning message accompanied by an audible alert.



Please turn off all lights when you leave the vehicle to prevent the low-voltage battery from draining and being unable to start the vehicle.

### “Doors not closed” alerts



If any of the four doors are not properly closed, the instrument cluster will

display alert(s). An audible warning will accompany when the vehicle speed exceeds 10 km/h.

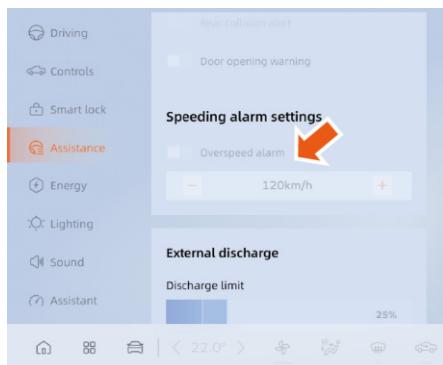


The illustration shows the reminder status when all doors are not closed while the vehicle is stationary. The actual display on the vehicle shall prevail.

### Overspeed alarm

When the instrument cluster detects vehicle speed exceeding the preset warning threshold, it will display a warning message accompanied by an audible alert. This is to remind the driver to slow down and drive safely. The speed setting range for the overspeed alarm is 30 - 260 km/h. If the overspeed alarm speed is set to 120 km/h, it will sound an alarm when the speed exceeds 120 km/h to remind the driver to control the speed. When the speed is less than 115 km/h, the alarm will be cleared.

### Turning on or off overspeed alarm



On the multimedia display, tap My car  
→ Driving assistance → Overspeed alarm  
setting, and turn on or off the  
overspeed alarm function on this  
screen.

#### **Setting overspeed alarm limit**

On the multimedia display, tap My car  
→ Driving assistance → Overspeed alarm  
setting, with the overspeed warning  
feature turned on, you can set the  
alarm speed on this interface (by  
clicking on +/- the speed changes in  
units of 5 km/h).

#### **Setting warning volume**

On the multimedia display, tap My car  
→ Sound → Driving safety volume. You  
can set Vehicle Alarm Volume to High,  
Medium or Low (according to the  
original 10 level sound setting, High is  
10, Medium is 6, and Low is 3).

### Warning and indicator lamps

Position of warning and indicator lamps on full-segment display type instrument cluster (if equipped)



Introduction to warning and indicator lamps on full-segment display type instrument cluster (if equipped)

| Symbol | Name                              | Description                  |
|--------|-----------------------------------|------------------------------|
|        | Left turn indicator               | Left turn signal lamp is on  |
|        | Right turn indicator              | Right turn signal lamp is on |
|        | Low beam indicator                | Low beam is on               |
|        |                                   | Low beam fault               |
|        | High beam indicator               | High beam is on              |
|        | Rear fog lamp indicator           | Rear fog lamp is on          |
|        | Position lamp indicator           | Position lamp is on          |
|        |                                   | Position lamp fault          |
|        | Brake indicator lamp              | Brake indicator lamp fault   |
|        | Airbag malfunction indicator lamp | Airbag system fault          |

| Symbol | Name   | Description   |
|--------|--|---|
|        | Parking brake indicator  | Parking brake is activated  |
|        | Service reminder lamp  | Service reminder status   |
|        | EPB / EBD / Brake system malfunction indicator lamp / Low brake fluid level indicator lamp | EPB malfunction /EBD malfunction / Level 2 brake system malfunction / Low brake fluid level |
|        | Brake system malfunction indicator lamp  | Level 1 fault of brake system   |
|        | Automatic parking (AUTO HOLD) status indicator lamp  | AUTO HOLD is on   |
|        | Front seat belt warning lamp   | Driver/front passenger seat belt not fastened   |
|        | Tyre pressure monitor system warning lamp  | Tyre pressure monitoring system malfunction, abnormal tyre pressure /unmatched              |
|        | Electronic Stability Control (ESC) malfunction indicator lamp                              | The electronic stability control system is faulty   |
|        | Electronic Stability Control (ESC) OFF indicator lamp                                      | The electronic stability control system is turned off                                       |
|        | Motor system fault/motor system overheat warning light                                     | Motor and controller fault /motor temperature too high                                      |
|        | EPS malfunction indicator lamp   | The electronic power steering (EPS) system is faulty  |
|        | Powertrain malfunction indicator lamp  | The powertrain is faulty  |
|        | Charging cable connection indicator lamp   | The charging gun is connected (plugged in)  |
|        | High-voltage battery charging indicator  | The high-voltage battery is charging  |
|        | High-voltage battery malfunction indicator lamp  | The high-voltage battery is faulty  |

## Instrument and control

| Symbol  | Name  | Description  |
|---|---|--|
|    | Battery charging fault/low battery voltage warning lamp | Battery charging fault/low battery voltage                               |
|    | Low battery indicator                                   | The high-voltage battery level is low                                    |
|    | Comfort mode indicator                                  | The driving mode is Comfort  |
|    | ECO mode indicator lamp                                 | The driving mode is ECO  |
|    | Sport mode indicator                                    | The driving mode is Sport  |
|    | Snow mode indicator                                     | The driving mode is Snow   |
|    | Off-road/Sand mode indicator                            | The driving mode is Off-road or Sand.                                    |
|    | Mud mode indicator                                      | The driving mode is Mud  |
|    | Hill descent control system (HDC) indicator             | The hill descent control system is faulty                                |
|   |   | The hill descent control system is on                                    |
|    | Anti-theft system indicator                             | Anti-theft system fault  |
|    | PEPS system indicator                                   | PEPS system fault  |
|    | Anti-lock brake system (ABS) malfunction indicator lamp | The anti-lock brake system fault   |
|  | Power limitation indicator                              | The vehicle has developed some specific faults and the power is limited. |
|  | Energy recovery level indicator                         | Energy recovery is activated and the recovery level is "High"            |
|   |   | Energy recovery is activated and the recovery level is "Medium"          |
|   |   | Energy recovery is activated and the recovery level is "Low"             |

| Symbol | Name                              | Description                                 |
|--------|-----------------------------------|---|
|        | High-voltage insulation indicator | High-voltage insulation fault               |
|        | READY indicator                   | The vehicle is all ready for normal driving |
|        | LIM status indicator              | LIM activated                               |
|        |                                   | LIM is on                                   |
|        | Cruise indicator lamp             | Cruise is activated                         |

| Symbol | Name   | Description                    |
|--------|--|--------------------------------|
|        | Cruise indicator lamp                          | Cruise is on                   |
|        | Towing indicator (If equipped)                 | Towing mode is on              |
|        | Drive mode indicator                           | EV mode is on                  |
|        |  | HEV mode is on                 |
|        | Engine emission MIL                            | Engine emissions malfunction   |
|        | Engine system MIL                              | Engine system malfunction      |
|        | Transmission MIL                               | Transmission malfunction       |
|        | Engine oil pressure low indicator lamp         | Low engine oil pressure        |
|        | Engine coolant high temperature indicator lamp | Engine coolant overtemperature |
|        | Low fuel level indicator                       | Low fuel level                 |

Please pay close attention to the illuminated warning indicators, otherwise, it can lead to severe personal injury and property damage.



## Introduction to warning and indicator lamps on full LCD instrument cluster (if equipped)



3

## Introduction to warning and indicator lamps on full LCD instrument cluster (if equipped)

| Symbol | Name  | Description                         |
|--------|---|-------------------------------------|
| ⬅      | Left turn indicator                                       | Left turn signal lamp is on         |
| ➡      | Right turn indicator                                      | Right turn signal lamp is on        |
| HID    | Low beam indicator  | Low beam is on                      |
| HID    | High beam indicator                                       | High beam is on                     |
| 垟      | Rear fog lamp indicator                                   | Rear fog lamp is on                 |
| 垟      | Position lamp indicator                                   | Position lamp is on                 |
| 垟      | Airbag malfunction indicator lamp                         | Fault in the airbag system          |
| ▲P     | Electronic parking brake (EPB) malfunction indicator lamp | Fault in EPB                        |
| (P)    | Parking brake warning lamp                                | Parking brake is activated          |
| (P)    | Parking brake indicator                                   | The AUTO HOLD function is activated |

## Instrument and control

| Symbol  | Name  | Description   |
|---|---|---|
|    | Brake system malfunction indicator lamp                       | The brake system is faulty  |
|    | Low brake fluid level indicator                               | The braking fluid level is too low  |
|    | Automatic parking (AUTO HOLD) status indicator lamp           | AUTO HOLD is on   |
|    |   | AUTO HOLD is faulty   |
|    | Front seat belt warning lamp                                  | Driver/front passenger seat belt not fastened                                       |
|    | Tyre pressure warning lamp                                    | Tyre pressure monitoring system malfunction, tyre pressure abnormal, or not learned |
|    | Electronic Stability Control (ESC) malfunction indicator lamp | The electronic stability control system is faulty                                   |
|    | Electronic Stability Control (ESC) OFF indicator lamp         | The electronic stability control system is turned off                               |
|    | AEB off indicator (If equipped)                               | The automatic emergency brake (AEB) system is turned off                            |
|    | AEB malfunction indicator lamp (If equipped)                  | The automatic emergency brake (AEB) system is faulty                                |
|  | LKA status indicator (If equipped)                            | The Lane Keeping Assist (LKA) system is enabled                                     |
|  |   | Lane departure warning (LDW)  |
|  |   | The Lane Keeping Assist (LKA) system is disabled                                    |
|  | Motor system malfunction indicator lamp                       | The drive motor and controller are faulty   |
|  | Motor system overheating warning lamp                         | Drive motor temperature is too high   |
|  | EPS malfunction indicator lamp                                | The electronic power steering   |

| Symbol | Name  | Description   |
|--------|---|---|
|        |   | (EPS) system is faulty  |
|        |   | Intelligent Cruise Control (ICC) is enabled but not activated |
|        | Intelligent Cruise Control (ICC) status indicator (If equipped)   | Intelligent Cruise Control (ICC) is activated                 |
|        |   | Intelligent Cruise Control (ICC) function is enabled          |
|        |   | Intelligent Cruise Control (ICC) function is disabled         |
|        |   | Intelligent Cruise Control (ICC) is faulty                    |
|        | Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) status indicator lamp (if equipped) | Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) is enabled but not activated    |
|        |   | Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) is activated                    |
|        |   | Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) is enabled                      |
|        |   | Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) is faulty                       |
|        | Powertrain malfunction indicator lamp                             | The powertrain is faulty                                      |
|        | Charging cable connection indicator lamp                          | The charging gun is connected (plugged in)                    |
|        | High-voltage battery charging indicator                           | The high-voltage battery is charging                          |
|        | High-voltage battery malfunction indicator lamp                   | The high-voltage battery is faulty                            |
|        | Battery charging malfunction indicator lamp                       | The battery charging is faulty                                |
|        | Low battery indicator   | The high-voltage battery level is low                         |

## Instrument and control

| Symbol  | Name   | Description  |
|---|--|--|
|    | Hill descent control system (HDC) indicator  | The hill descent control system is faulty  |
|    |  | The hill descent control system is on  |
|    | Blind Spot Detection (BSD) status indicator (If equipped)                                  | The rear side radar system (RSRS) works properly   |
|    |  | The rear side radar system (RSRS) is faulty  |
|    | Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBD)/Brake energy recovery malfunction indicator lamp | Electronic brake force distribution/brake energy recovery system is faulty                         |
|    | Anti-lock brake system (ABS) malfunction indicator lamp                                    | The anti-lock braking system is faulty   |
|    | Power limitation indicator   | The vehicle has developed some specific faults and the power is limited.                           |
|    | Important alarm indicator  | More than 1 security alarm is being displayed  |
|    | Secondary alarm indicator  | More than 1 general alarm is being displayed or there are general alarms hidden in the alarm list. |
|   | Towing mode indicator (If equipped)  | Towing mode is enabled   |
|  | Energy recovery level indicator  | Energy recovery is activated and the recovery level is "High"                                      |
|  |  | Energy recovery is activated and the recovery level is "Medium"                                    |
|  |  | Energy recovery is activated and the recovery level is "Low"                                       |
|  | Intelligent U-turn assistance indicator  | Intelligent U-turn assistance function is enabled  |

| Symbol  | Name   | Description   |
|---|--|---|
|    |  | Intelligent U-turn assistance function is activated |
|    |  | Intelligent U-turn assistance function is disabled  |
|    | LIM status indicator                                 | LIM is activated                                    |
|    |  | LIM is on   |
|    |  | LIM is faulty                                       |
|    | Cruise status indicator (If equipped)                | The vehicle is in cruise mode                       |
|    |  | Cruise is on  |
|    | Cruise and speed limit speed indicator (if equipped) | Speed indicator is activated                        |
|    |  | Speed indicator is not activated                    |
|    |  | Speed indicator is enabled                          |
|    |  | Speed indicator is faulty                           |
|   | High-voltage insulation indicator                    | High-voltage insulation is faulty                   |
|  | READY indicator                                      | The vehicle is all ready for normal driving         |
|  | Engine emission MIL                                  | Engine emissions malfunction                        |
|  | Engine system MIL                                    | Engine system malfunction                           |
|  | Engine oil pressure low indicator lamp               | Low engine oil pressure                             |
|  | Low fuel level indicator                             | Low fuel level                                      |

## Instrument and control

| Symbol  | Name   | Description                       |
|---|--|-----------------------------------|
|    | Engine coolant high temperature indicator lamp | Engine coolant overtemperature    |
|    |  | EV mode is on                     |
|    | Drive mode indicator                           | HEV mode is on                    |
|    |  | iTMS mode is on                   |
|    | Comfort mode indicator                         | The driving mode is Comfort       |
|    | ECO mode indicator lamp                        | The driving mode is ECO           |
|    | Sport mode indicator                           | The driving mode is Sport         |
|    | Snow mode indicator                            | The driving mode is Snow          |
|    | Off-road mode indicator                        | The driving mode is Off-road      |
|    | Mud mode indicator                             | The driving mode is Mud           |
|    | Sand mode indicator                            | The driving mode is Sand          |
|    | Transmission MIL                               | Degraded transmission performance |
|  |  | Transmission malfunction          |

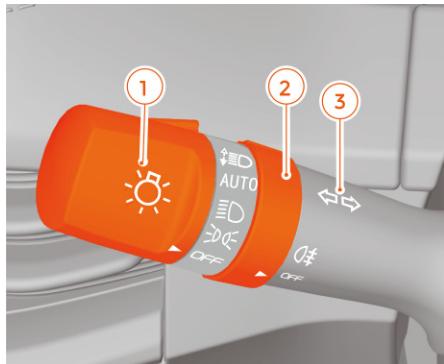


Please pay close attention to the illuminated warning indicators, otherwise, it can lead to severe personal injury and property damage.

## Steering wheel modules for lights and wipers

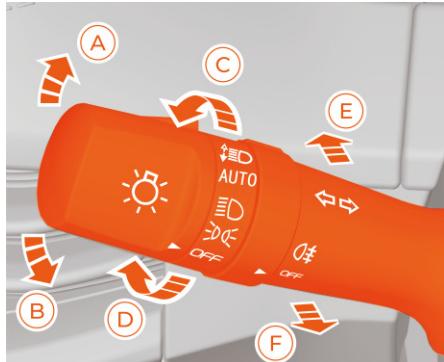
### Steering wheel module for lamps

#### Steering wheel module for automatic lighting



1. Light control switch
2. Fog lamp control switch
3. Light switch lever (control the high beam, low beam, left turn signal lamp, and right turn signal lamp)

### Operating steering wheel module for lamps



#### Position lamp

Rotate the light control switch in direction C until the mark▶ points to , and the position lamp and backlight are all on and can be adjusted. Rotate the light control switch in direction D until the mark▶ points to OFF, and then the position lamp and backlight on the light control switch are all off.

#### Low beam

Rotate the light control switch in direction C until the mark▶ points to , and then the low beam turns on.

Rotate the light control switch in direction D until the mark▶ points to OFF, and then the low beam turns off.

#### Shifting between high beam and low beam

If the low beam is on, push the light switch lever to the limit position in direction E, and then the high beam will turn on. Pull back the light switch lever to direction F, to switch back to the low beam.

#### High beam flash

Pull the light switch lever to the limit position in direction F, and then the high beam will turn on. Release the lever, and the high beam will automatically turn off. Repeating this action will flash the high beam.

#### Automatic lighting

Rotate the light control switch in direction C until the mark▶ points to AUTO, the headlight turns on automatically. The automatic lighting

system automatically controls the headlight ON and OFF according to the ambient light intensity. When entering a tunnel, the system will automatically turn on the position lamp and low beam, and when exiting the tunnel, it will turn them off.

Additionally, in dark ambient environments, the system will also activate the position lamp and low beam.



The system has a manual priority function in the auto mode, and if there is a lamp signal input, the system exits from the auto lamp mode.

### Rear fog lamp

With the low beam turned on, rotate the fog lamp control switch in direction C until the mark▶ points to , and then the rear fog lamp turns on.

### Right turn signal lamp

Pull the light switch lever to direction A, and the right turn indicator flashes. After the turn is completed, the light switch lever automatically returns to its original position, and the turn signal lamp turns off.

### Left turn signal lamp

Pull the light switch lever to direction B, and the left turn indicator flashes. After the turn is completed, the light switch lever automatically returns to its original position, and the turn signal lamp turns off.

### Lane-change lighting function

Pull the light switch lever in direction A or B briefly, and the corresponding turn indicator will flash 3 times.

## Headlight height adjustment function

### Headlight level switch (Type I)



### Headlight level switch (Type II)



#### 1. Headlight level switch

This knob is used to adjust the irradiation height of headlights.

#### Manual adjustment

Headlight level switch has four positions: 0, 1, 2, and 3.

Please adjust the knob position according to the load:

- 0: Driver only.
- 1: Driver and front passenger.

- 2: All the seats are occupied, and the cargo compartment is under full load.
- 3: Only the driver seat is occupied, and the cargo compartment is under full load.

 When adjusting the height of the front combination lamp, ensure that it does not dazzle oncoming road users.

### Headlight AUTO ON function



The light intensity of the external environment is monitored by the ambient light sensor. When the light is dim, the low beam, the position light and the corresponding indicator lamp on the instrument cluster will automatically turn on. When the light is sufficient, they will automatically turn off.

## Daytime running lamps

### Daytime running lamp ON

When the vehicle is started with the low beam turned off, the daytime running lamps turn on automatically.

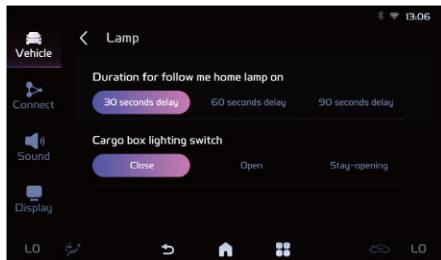
### Daytime running lamp OFF

The daytime running lamps automatically turn off under the following conditions:

- The vehicle is powered off.
- The low beam is turned on.

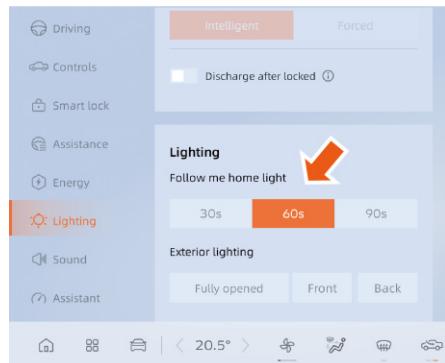
## Follow me home

### Time setting of follow me home function (Type I)



Tap Settings → Vehicle → Lighting on the multimedia display, and go to the Follow Me Home function interface.

### Time setting of follow me home function (Type II)



Tap May car □ Lighting on the multimedia display, and go to the Follow Me Home function interface. In the settings interface, you can choose the timer duration based on your preference, with options of 30 s, 60 s, or 90 s. When the "Follow Me Home" function is activated, the timer will start counting down according to your chosen duration.



With the vehicle unlocked, activate follow-me-home lighting via:

- Automatic activation: The low beam is turned on within the last 60 seconds before turning the start switch to the OFF position.
- Manual activation: High beam flash is triggered within 10 minutes after the vehicle is powered off.

## Steering wheel module for wipers

### Steering wheel module for wipers

#### Steering wheel module for manual wipers (if equipped)



1. Wiper control lever
2. Wiper INT speed control knob

Steering wheel module for automatic wipers (if equipped)

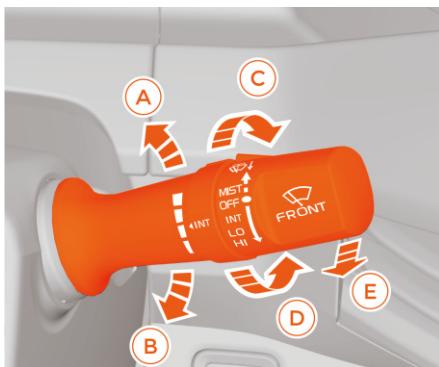


1. Wiper control lever
2. Wiper sensitivity adjustment knob

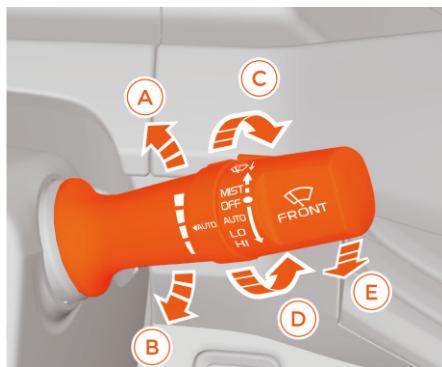
**⚠** If there is dust or sand on the windscreen, please clean it before using the wiper. Do not use the wiper on a dry windscreen as it can scratch the glass and affect the lifespan of the wiper blades.

### Operating steering wheel module for wipers

#### Steering wheel module for manual wipers (if equipped)



### Steering wheel module for automatic wipers (if equipped)



#### MIST

Flick the wiper control lever in direction A and release it (i.e. release the lever when it is in MIST position), the lever will automatically go back to OFF, and the front wiper will work once.

#### OFF

When the wiper control lever is in OFF position, the wiper will be turned off.

#### INT (if equipped)

Move the wiper control lever in direction B to the intermittent wipe position 'INT'. The wipers will operate intermittently according to the position selected. The wiper intermittent wiping interval can be adjusted by turning the wiper INT speed control knob in the C or D direction. When the scale bar pointed to by the INT indicates the intensity of wiping, narrowing of the bar indicates the decrease of wiping, and vice versa.

#### AUTO (if equipped)

When the wiper control lever is flicked in direction B to AUTO position, the wiper will work automatically. At this time, the wiper system automatically adjusts the wiping speed according to the amount of rain. The sensitivity of the wiper system for sensing rainfall can be adjusted by rotating the wiper sensitivity adjustment knob in direction C or D. The wider the scale bar pointed by AUTO, the higher sensitivity of the wiper system in sensing rainfall.

#### LO

When the wiper control lever is flicked in direction B to LO position, the wiper will work at a low speed.

#### HI

When the wiper control lever is flicked in direction B to HI position, the wiper will work at a high speed.

#### Wiper maintenance mode

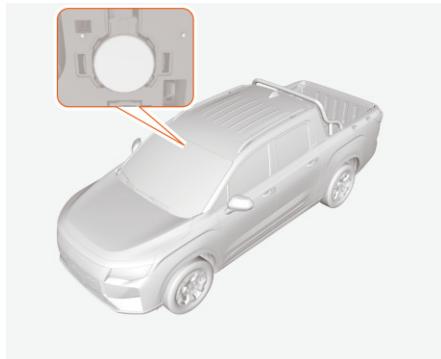
Within 30 seconds after switching the start switch to OFF, toggle the wiper control lever in direction A to MIST and release, the wipers will run and stop on the windscreens, making it easy to change the wipers. After the start switch is placed in the ON position, flick the wiper switch to any gear, the wiper will return to the original position and exit the maintenance mode.

#### Windscreen washing

Flick the wiper control lever in the direction E, while the front windshield

washer sprays water, and the wiper wipes. After releasing the wiper control lever, the washer stops spraying water, and at the same time, the wiper wipes several times before resetting.

### Rain sensor (if equipped)



The rain sensor is mounted behind the front windscreen, and it can adjust the action of the wiper according to the amount of rain falling on the front windscreen.

**⚠** Please keep the rain sensor area clean to avoid affecting the sensitivity of the rain sensor and the use of the wiper.

### Steering wheel

#### Horns



3

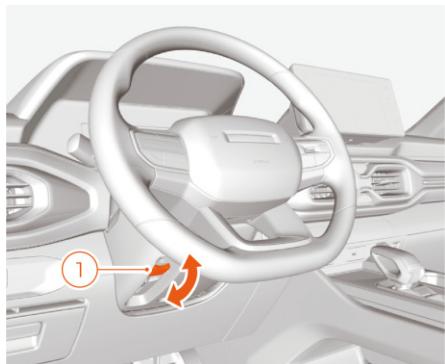
Press the Horn icon area on the steering wheel (Indicated by the arrows) to activate the horn.

**⚠** The area with horn icons on the steering wheel is also the cover for the driver airbag. Due to the special function requirements of the driver's airbag, please do not press or strike the driver airbag cover forcefully when using the horn. Doing so may trigger the deployment of the driver's airbag, causing personal injury.

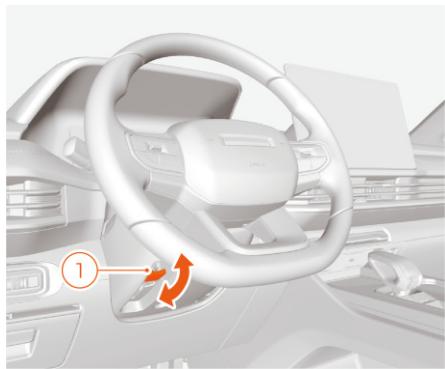
### Steering wheel adjustment

**⚠** After adjusting the position of the steering wheel, please confirm that the steering wheel is locked. Do not adjust the steering wheel while the vehicle is in motion, otherwise, it will lead to severe personal injury and property damage.

### Type I



### Type II



1. Steering wheel adjustment lever  
Adjust the steering wheel to the appropriate position in the following steps:
  1. Turn the steering wheel so that the front wheels can face straight ahead.
  2. Release the steering wheel adjustment lever completely.
  3. Grip the steering wheel with both hands and adjust the steering wheel back and forth, up and down, to the appropriate position.

4. Pull up the steering wheel adjustment lever completely to lock the steering wheel in the new position.

### Steering mode switch



Drivers should choose the appropriate steering mode according to their own driving ability and road conditions.



Large angle steering or high speed driving may cause failure in switching.

The vehicle offers 3 steering modes.

Drivers can switch among the steering modes (See the 'Starting and Driving' chapter, 'Driving Mode' section).

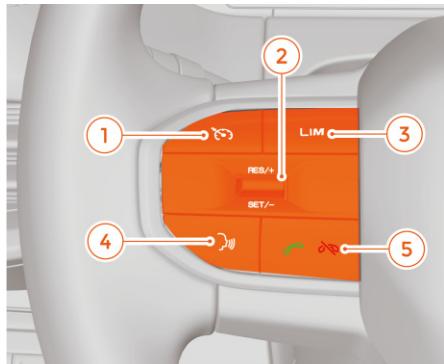
Depending on the vehicle configuration, some models allow selecting the steering mode through the multimedia display (tap My car → Driving → Steering assistance style).

- Standard mode: medium power assisted steering, and the hand feeling is comfortable when steering.
- Comfort mode: compared with the Standard mode, increased power assisted steering, and the hand feeling is light and flexible.
- Sports mode: compared with the Standard mode, reduced power assisted steering, and the hand feeling is calm and stable.

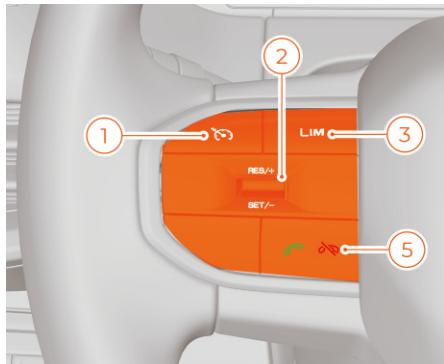
## Buttons on steering wheel

### Steering wheel with cruise control system (CCS) (if equipped)

#### Type I



#### Type II

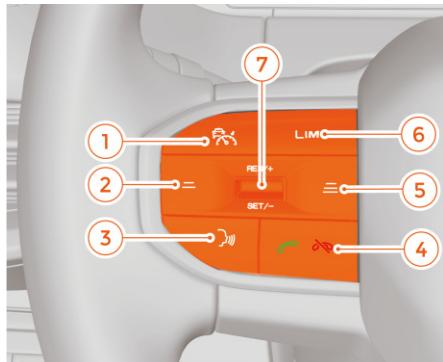


1. CCS button: Enable/disable the cruise control function.
2. RES/+/SET/- switch: used for cruise control adjustment in cruise control state; used for speed limit adjustment in Speed Limit state.
  - RES/+ (Restore/Accelerate)

Push the Speed Setting button in the RES/+ direction to restore the cruise speed to the original setting or increase the cruise speed.

- SET/- (Set/Decelerate)  
Push the speed setting button in the SET/- direction to set the current speed to the cruise speed or decrease the cruise speed.
- 3. Speed Limit button: enable the active Speed Limit function, and set the speed through the RES/+ and SET/- buttons. The speed limit range of LIM is from 30 to 150 km/h.
- 4. Voice button (if equipped): Briefly press to activate the voice function; press again briefly to exit.
- 5. Call button: When receiving a call, press and hold it to hang up, briefly press it to answer the call, and then briefly press it again to hang up after answering.

### Steering wheel with adaptive cruise control (ACC) (if equipped)

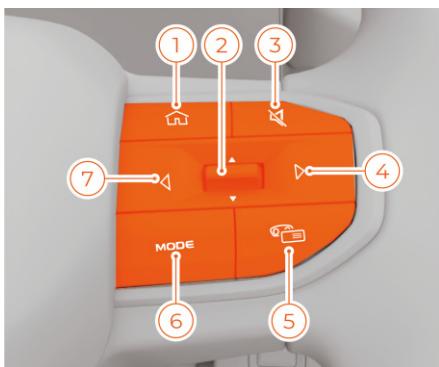


1. Intelligent Cruise Control (ICC)/Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) button: Turn on/off/exit ICC/ACC.
2. Decrease Headway button: decrease the headway of the ICC/ACC system.
3. Voice button: Briefly press to activate the voice function; press again briefly to exit.
4. Call button: When receiving a call, press and hold it to hang up, briefly press it to answer the call, and then briefly press it again to hang up after answering.
5. Increase Headway button: Increase the headway of the ICC/ACC system.
6. Speed Limit button: Enable the active Speed Limit function, and set the speed through the RES/+ and SET/- buttons.
7. RES/+SET/- switch: used for cruise control adjustment in cruise

control state; used for speed limit adjustment in Speed Limit state.

- RES/+ (Restore/Accelerate)  
Push the Speed Setting button in the RES/+ direction to restore the cruise speed to the original setting or increase the cruise speed.
- SET/- (Set/Decelerate)  
Push the speed setting button in the SET/- direction to set the current speed to the cruise speed or decrease the cruise speed.

### Buttons on right side of steering wheel



1. Home button: Return to the homepage of the multimedia display screen.
2. Volume Adjustment button: adjust the volume.
3. Mute button: turn on/off the mute mode.
4. Right selection button: briefly press this button to skip to the next available station in the radio mode

or the next file in the multimedia mode.

5. Modes switch key: Briefly press this button to switch the control of the steering wheel button to the multimedia host and the instrument cluster.
6. MODE button: sound source switching.
7. Left selection button: briefly press this button to skip to the previous available station in the radio mode or the previous file in the multimedia mode.

## Rearview mirrors

### Exterior rearview mirrors

 Do not adjust the exterior rearview mirror while the vehicle is in motion, otherwise it will lead to serious personal injury and property damage.

 Before driving, the exterior rearview mirror must be unfolded and adjusted correctly.

The exterior rearview mirror adjustment switch is on the door interior trim panel of the driver door.

#### Type I



### Type II



1. Exterior rearview mirror adjustment switch

**i** Objects seen in the exterior rearview mirror are further away than they really are. Please adjust the driving position first, and then adjust the exterior rearview mirror. When the exterior rearview mirror is frozen, use spray or deicer to remove the ice from the surface of the exterior rearview mirror. And then adjust the exterior rearview mirror.

**!** Do not touch the exterior rearview mirror while adjusting to avoid damage to the vehicle.

### Adjusting exterior rearview mirror

#### Type I



#### Type II



1. When the start switch is in ACC or ON, rotate the exterior rearview mirror adjustment switch so that the mark — on the exterior rearview mirror adjustment switch points to L (Left) or R (Right) to select the corresponding left and right exterior rearview mirrors.
2. Adjust the angle of the exterior rearview mirror by pushing the

exterior rearview mirror adjustment switch front, back, left or right.

- After the adjustment, reset the exterior rearview mirror adjustment switch to the initial position (0).

## Folding exterior rearview mirror

### Manual folding exterior rearview mirrors (if equipped)



Manually push the exterior rearview mirror inwards to fold it. Manually push the exterior rearview mirror outwards to unfold it.

### Electric folding exterior rearview mirrors (if equipped)



3

The electric exterior rearview mirror will be folded automatically when driving through a narrow lane or when parking the car.

Rotate the exterior rearview mirror adjustment switch to **Q** to fold the left and right exterior rearview mirrors at the same time; Rotate the switch to a different angle to unfold the left and right exterior rearview mirrors simultaneously.

### Auto-folding exterior rearview mirrors function (if equipped)

On the multimedia display, tap **My car**→**Body control**→**Rearview Mirror**, you can enable the exterior rearview mirror folding function when the vehicle is locked. After this function is enabled, when the exterior rearview mirror adjustment switch is in the unfolded gear and the exterior rearview mirror is in the folded state, the exterior rearview mirror will automatically unfold after the vehicle is unlocked.

When the exterior rearview mirror adjustment switch is at the unfolded gear and the exterior rearview mirror is in the unfolded state, the exterior rearview mirror will automatically fold after the vehicle is locked.

**⚠** For vehicles with electric folding exterior rearview mirrors, do not fold the exterior rearview mirror manually. Otherwise, the folding mechanism of the exterior rearview mirror may be damaged.

### Exterior rearview mirror heating & defrosting function (If equipped)

After the vehicle is started, press the rear window and exterior rearview mirror defrost/demist button  on the A/C control panel of the dash panel. Then, the defrost function will be activated and the indicator of this button will light up. The defrosting function will be automatically deactivated about 12 minutes later. For details, see the “Heating, Ventilation and Air Conditioning” section in “Air Conditioning Systems”.

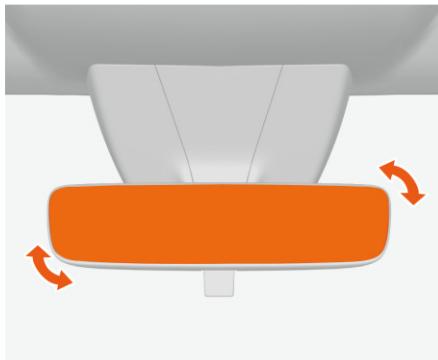
## Interior rearview mirrors

### Adjustment of interior rearview mirror

**⚠** Do not adjust the interior rearview mirror while the vehicle is in motion, otherwise it will lead to serious personal injury and property damage.

**⚠** To avoid affecting the function of the interior rearview mirror, it is prohibited to attach a label or install a tachograph in front of the interior rearview mirror.

#### Type I

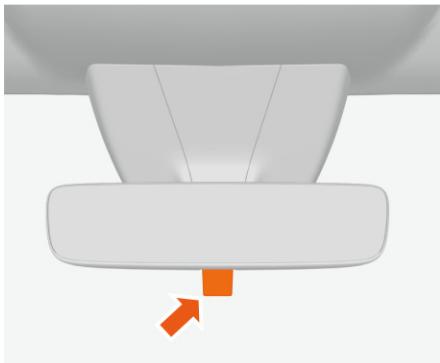


## Type II



The interior rearview mirror is fixed to the windscreen and can be adjusted to the desired position by rotating it.

**Mechanical anti-glare interior rearview mirror (With bezel) (If equipped)**



Adjust the interior rearview mirror angle by pushing the bottom handle to activate the anti-glare function. Pull the handle back to return the rearview mirror to its regular position and deactivate the anti-glare function.

**Mechanical anti-glare interior rearview mirror (Without bezel) (If equipped)**



3

Adjust the interior rearview mirror angle by pushing the bottom handle to activate the anti-glare function. Pull the handle back to return the rearview mirror to its regular position and deactivate the anti-glare function.

### Windows

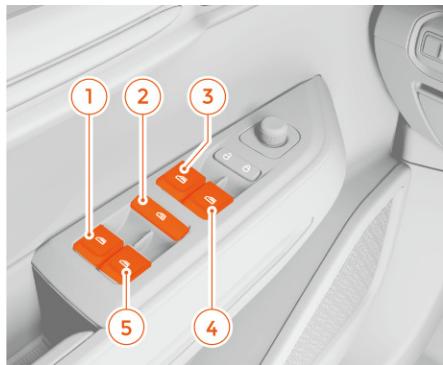
#### Power windows

**⚠** Never leave children, incapacitated adults or pets in a vehicle with the windows closed and locked. Otherwise, injury or even death may occur if the interior temperature gets too high and they cannot open the door or window.

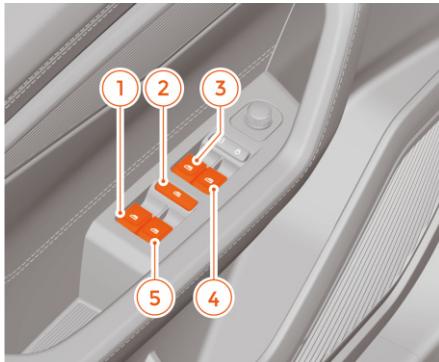
**⚠** Do not attempt to test the anti-pinch function with your body; otherwise, it will cause personal injury or death.

When the window is closed and the top of the window is less than 4 mm from the window frame, the anti-pinch function may not work.

#### Window control switch (Type I)



#### Window control switch (Type II)



1. Left rear window switch
2. Window lock switch
3. Left front window switch
4. Right front window switch
5. Right rear window switch

#### Manual operation

Open: Press and hold the window switch to open the window.

Close: Pull and hold the window switch to close the window.

#### Automatic operation

##### Automatic window opening

Press the window switch and shift it to Auto position, and release it to open the window automatically.

If you push down or pull up the window switch again during the automatic opening, the window will stop opening.

### Automatic window closing (if equipped)

Pull the window switch up to Auto position, and release it to close the window automatically.

If you push down or pull up the window switch again during the automatic closing, the window will stop closing.

### Remote opening/closing

When the start switch is set to OFF, the four doors are closed and the anti-theft alarm is not triggered, long press the unlock button on the smart key, and all windows will be opened at the same time. Press and hold the lock button on the smart key and all windows will be closed at the same time.

### Window lock switch

The window lock switch is located on the driver door, in the middle of the window switch.

Press the switch to disable the window switch operation for the front passenger side window and rear windows. When the lock function is enabled, the window lock switch indicator lights up. The driver can still control the front passenger side window and rear windows using the driver side window switch.

To restore the window switch operation for the front passenger side window and rear windows, simply

press the switch again to unlock. The window lock switch indicator will turn off, deactivating the lock function.

### Auto close windows in rain (if equipped)

Click on the multimedia display step by step: My car→Body control→Power window, the auto close windows in rain function can be enabled. After this function is enabled, when the vehicle is powered off and locked with the power windows open, if it suddenly rains, the vehicle can automatically close the power windows.

### Power window thermal protection

If the windows are operated repeatedly within a short time or in high temperature conditions, it may temporarily disable the power window control switch to protect the motor's longevity. Wait for a brief period or until the temperature decreases, and the power window operation will be restored.

### Anti-pinch function (if equipped)

During the automatic closing, if an object is caught between the glass and the window frame, the window will automatically stop and return to its initial position. If the window is violently impacted, this function may work even

if no objects are caught. If the power windows anti-pinching function does not work properly, adaptive-learning of power windows is required.

### Anti-pinching power window self-learning

If the low-voltage battery of the vehicle is reconnected after power failure or if the anti-pinching power window does not work properly, self-learning of the anti-pinching power window is necessary.

Follow the steps below to perform self-learning:

1. Turn the start switch to ON.
2. Pull up the window switch to Manual Up gear until the window is completely raised to the top, and release the window switch.
3. Pull up the window switch again and hold for more than 3 seconds.
4. Push the window switch to the Down position until the window reaches the bottom.
5. Press the window switch again and hold for more than 3 seconds.
6. Repeat the same steps for the remaining windows (both raising and lowering) to finalize the self-learning procedure.
7. If the power window continues to malfunction despite following these steps, please go to a Riddara authorised service centre for repair.



If the window can automatically close, the self-learning is successful.

During the self-learning process, it's essential to strictly follow the steps and complete them continuously. If the window stops moving while raising or lowering, you should restart the process.

### Operation delaying function

When all the following conditions are met, within 60 seconds after turning the start switch to OFF position, you can still operate the windows using the window switches:

- The front doors are not open.
- The vehicle is not unlocked/locked using the smart key.

### Window lift after lock

If the function "Window lift after lock" is turned on in the multimedia display, all open windows will automatically close after vehicle locking.

## Sunroof (if equipped)

### Panoramic sunroof



The sunroof switch is located on the front interior lighting control panel.

### Sunroof opening/closing

#### Sunroof automatic operation

Briefly push the sunroof switch backward to fully open the sun blind.

Briefly push the sunroof switch backward again, and the sunroof glass will automatically move to its maximum open position.

Briefly push the sunroof switch forward, and the sunroof glass will slide to the fully closed position. Briefly push the sunroof switch forward again, and the sun blind will automatically slide to the closed position.

During the automatic operation of the sun blind or sunroof glass, briefly pushing the sunroof switch backward or forward will stop the sun blind or sunroof glass from moving.

#### Sunroof manual operation

Push the sunroof switch backward and hold it, and the sun blind will fully open. Push the sunroof switch backward again and hold it, and the sunroof glass will move to its maximum open position.

Push sunroof switch forward and hold it, and the sunroof glass will slide to the fully closed position. Push hold the sunroof switch forward again and hold it, and the sun blind will fully close.

During the press and hold, releasing the sunroof switch will stop the sun blind or sunroof glass from moving.

### Tilt opening/closing

#### Tilt opening

Press the sunroof switch upward. After the sun blind moves to the half-open position, the sunroof glass will tilt open.

#### Tilt closing

If the sunroof glass is in the tilted open position, briefly press the sunroof switch forward to close the sunroof glass.

During the operation of tilting open or closing the sunroof glass, pressing upward, or briefly pressing the switch forward or backward will halt the movement of the glass.

### Remote sunroof opening/ closing

When the start switch is set to gear OFF, the four doors are closed and the anti-theft alarm is not triggered, press and hold the unlock button on the smart key, the sunroof will be fully opened. Press and hold the lock button on the smart key, the sunroof will be completely closed.



To enable or disable remote sunroof closing, tap My car → Vehicle Unlock on the multimedia display, and turn on or off Window Lift after Lock. After enabling, briefly press the lock button on the smart key to trigger the function.

### Anti-pinch protection

#### Tilt anti-pinch

- When the sunroof is tilting open, it will stop if an obstacle is detected.
- The sunroof will return to the fully tilted position if an obstacle is detected when it is closing.

#### Sunroof glass and sun blind with anti-pinch function

- During the sliding closure of the sunroof, if an obstacle is encountered, the anti-pinch protection feature will be activated.
- Anti-pinch function will be activated when the sunroof and sun blind run into obstacles.

### Sun blind

#### Sun blind opening

Push the sunroof switch backwards, and the sun blind will automatically operate to fully open. Push the sunroof switch backwards/forwards again, and the sun blind will stop sliding immediately. Push the sunroof switch backwards and hold it to open and slide the sun blind. Release the sunroof switch, the sun blind stops sliding immediately.

#### Sun blind closing

Push the sun blind switch forwards, the sun blind will automatically operate until fully closed. Push the sun blind forwards and hold it to close and slide the sun blind. Release the sunroof

switch, the sun blind stops sliding immediately.

If the sunroof glass is not fully closed, the sun blind cannot be closed. During the automatic (briefly press) or manual (press and hold) closing process of the sunroof, push the sunroof switch backwards/forwards again, and the sun blind will stop sliding; During the manual closing process of the sun blind, the sun blind will stop sliding after releasing the sunroof switch.



Do not apply excessive force to sun blind to avoid looseness, which could lead to abnormal noise or operational issues.

- When the sunroof is fully opened, it may cause excessive wind noise.
- When parking the vehicle for a long time, it is recommended to close the sun blind to the fully closed position. If possible, it is best to park in the garage to prevent the temperature inside the vehicle from rising due to long-term sunlight exposure, resulting in interior damage.

heavy wind and sand, you can regularly use a wet sponge to clean the sand and dirt near the glass rubber strip.

- If the vehicle is parked for a long time or the sunroof is not used for a long time, fine talc powder or lubricant dedicated for the rubber strip can be used to clean the rubber strip around the sunroof.
- When washing the vehicle, check whether the sunroof rubber strip, drainage holes, and grooves are covered by foreign objects such as sand, leaves, and branches. If so, please clean them up.

## Maintenance

### Maintenance of sunroof glass

Use a glass cleaner to clean the glass panel of the sunroof. Do not use sticky cleaners!

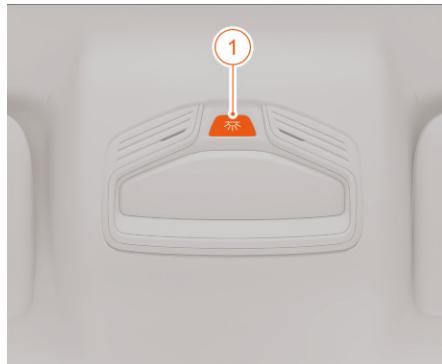
### Maintenance of sunroof

- When the vehicle often uses the sunroof in an environment with

## Interior lighting

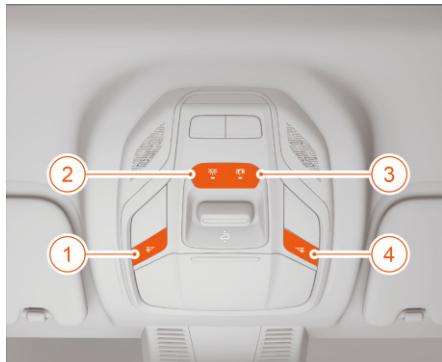
### Front Interior lighting

#### Basic front interior lighting (If equipped)



1. Interior lighting always on switch

#### Front interior lighting with sunroof (If equipped)



1. Left interior lighting switch
2. Interior lighting always on switch
3. Interior light door-controlled switch
4. Right interior lighting switch

## Operating front interior lighting

### Operating basic front interior lighting (If equipped)

Press the interior lighting always on switch to turn on or off the interior lighting.

### Operating front interior lighting with sunroof (If equipped)

Press the left or right interior lighting switch to turn on or off the left or right interior lighting.

Press the interior lighting always on switch to turn on or off the interior lighting on both sides simultaneously.

When this switch is turned on, the indicator lamp on the switch lights up.

Press the interior lighting door-controlled switch to turn on or off the interior lighting door control function.

When the function is turned on, the indicator lamp on the switch lights up.

**i** When interior lighting on the left (or right) side is turned on using the interior lighting door control function, the left (or right) interior lighting cannot be turned off using the left (or right) interior lighting switch.

**!** Avoid using front interior lighting when driving at night. Bright lights may affect the driver's safe driving and may cause traffic accidents.

## Interior lighting door-controlled status

The door-controlled function of interior lighting is enabled by default.

### Light up

- With the four doors closed, the interior lighting gradually goes on after the power is off.
- When the locked vehicle receives the unlocking command, the interior lighting gradually goes up.
- When either door is opened, the interior lights gradually light up.

### Go out

- With the four doors closed, the interior lights will automatically go out 15 seconds after the power is off.
- With the four doors closed, but the start switch is not in the OFF position, the interior lights go out after the power is off.
- When the vehicle loses power and all four doors are closed, the interior lights go out upon receiving a locking command.
- Press the interior lighting door-controlled switch (if equipped) to turn off the interior lighting door control function. The interior lighting goes out.

## Rear interior lighting (if equipped)

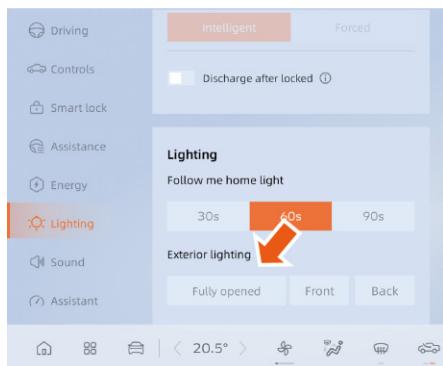


3

By pressing the rear interior lighting switch, you can activate or deactivate the rear interior lighting.

### Exterior lighting

#### Exterior lighting (if equipped)

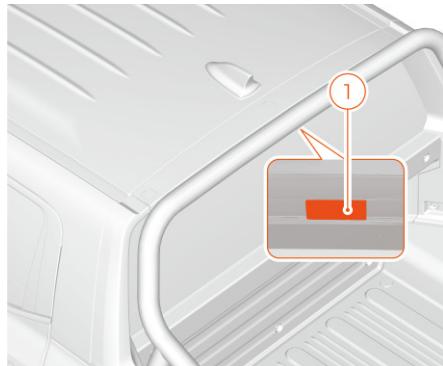


Click on the multimedia display step by step: My Car → Lights, and turn on or off the exterior lighting on the active screen.

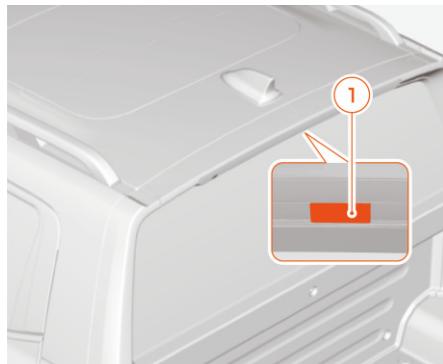
### Cargo box lighting

#### Cargo box lighting

#### Cargo box lighting (Type I)



#### Cargo box lighting (Type II)



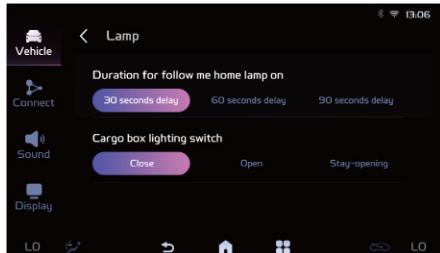
##### 1. Cargo box lighting

#### Turning on cargo box lighting (Type I)

##### Illuminate by unlocking

When the vehicle is unlocked with insufficient ambient light, pressing the cargo compartment tailgate button will illuminate the cargo box lighting.

## Activating using multimedia display



Click on the multimedia display step by step: Settings → Vehicle → Lighting. You can choose to turn on cargo box lighting or set it to Always On.

## Turning off cargo box lighting (Type I)

1. Turn off cargo box lighting via the multimedia display.
2. Lock the vehicle using remote key or keyless system.
3. Shift to R or D.
4. When the cargo box lighting is unlocked and turned on via the tailgate button, it will automatically turn off after a 10-minute countdown.

## Turning on cargo box lighting (Type II)

### Activating using switch

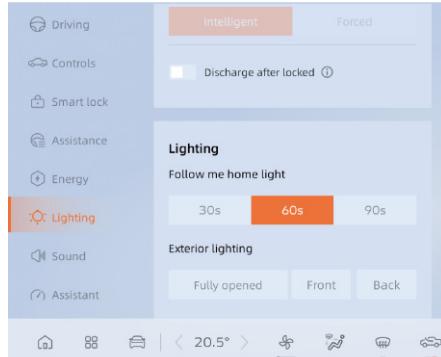


3

### 1. Cargo box lighting switch

To switch on the cargo box lighting, briefly press the cargo box lighting switch when the vehicle is stationary.

### Activating using multimedia display



On the multimedia display, tap My car → Lighting. You can choose to activate the cargo box lighting on the Exterior Lighting settings screen.

### Turning off cargo box lighting (Type II)

1. When the cargo trunk lighting is activated via the multimedia display, it will automatically turn off upon subsequent operation through the multimedia display or when the vehicle is powered down.
2. When the cargo trunk lighting is activated via its physical switch, it will automatically turn off upon pressing the switch again, when the vehicle is powered down, or when the vehicle is locked.
3. The cargo box lighting will automatically turn off when the gear is not in P.

### Interior equipment

#### Glove box

##### Type I



##### Type II

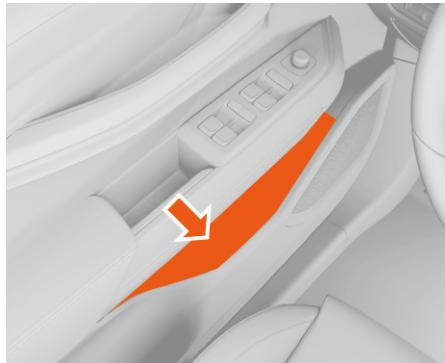


The glove box switch is located on the left side of the glove box. Press the switch to open the glove box. Push the glove box lid back to close the glove box.

## Storage boxes/ compartments

### Door storage compartments

#### Type I



#### Type II



The door stowage compartments, which are located under the interior trim panels of the four doors and can be used for storing smaller items.

## Dashboard storage box (if equipped)

### Type I



3

### Type II



There is a storage box in the lower left of the dashboard, which can be opened by pulling the opening handle.

## Instrument and control

### Dashboard card slot

Type I



Type IV



Type II



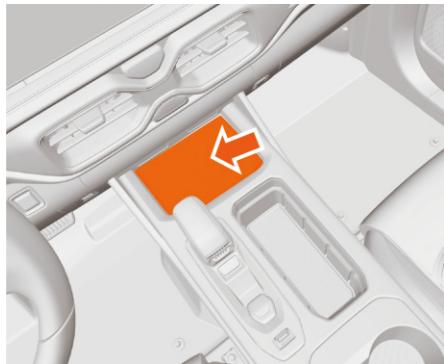
The dashboard card slot is located at the lower left of the dashboard for storing cards.

Type III

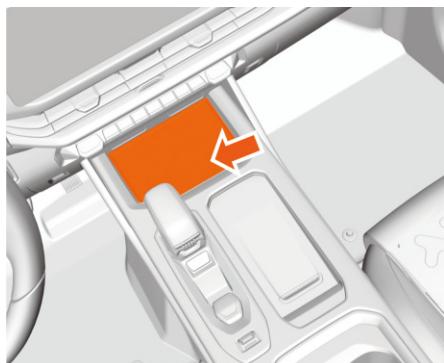


## Front storage box

### Centre console top storage box (Type I)



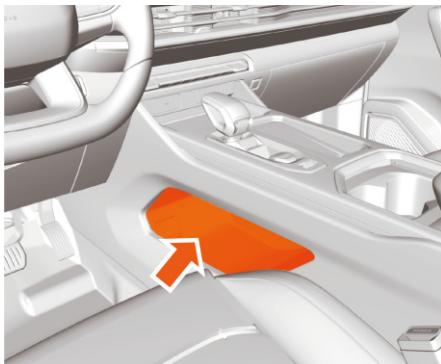
### Centre console top storage box (Type II)



The vehicle is designed with an open storage box on the upper part of the centre console, which can be used directly.

### Centre console bottom storage box

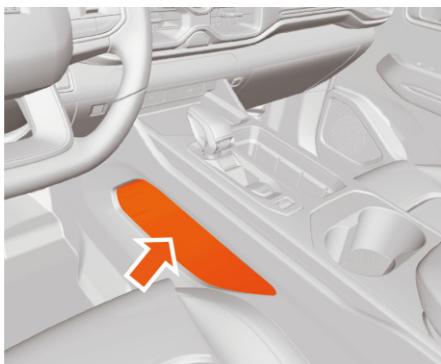
#### (Type I)



3

### Centre console bottom storage box

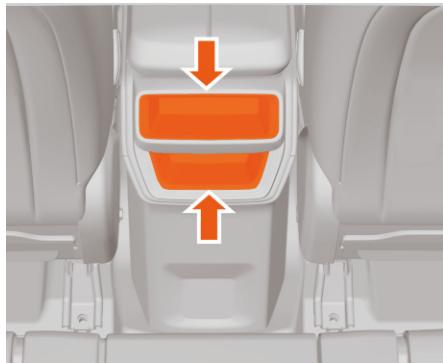
#### (Type II)



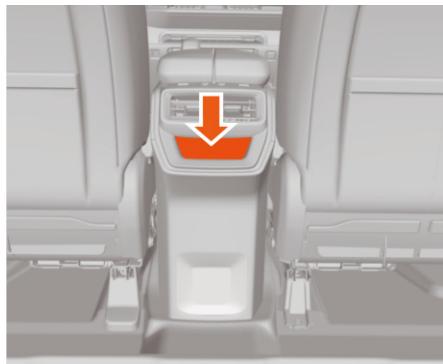
The vehicle is designed with a storage box under the centre console, which can be used for storing smaller items.

### Rear storage box

Centre console rear storage box (Type I) (if equipped)

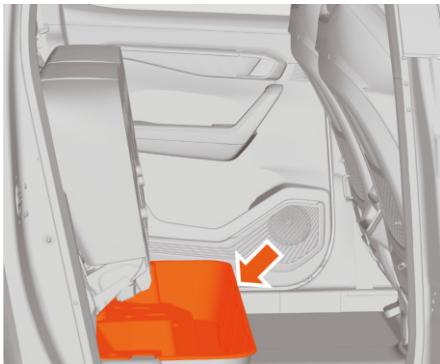


Centre console rear storage box (Type II) (if equipped)



The vehicle is designed with an open storage box behind the centre console, which can be used for storing smaller items.

Rear seat stowage compartment (if equipped)



A storage box is designed under the cushion of the rear seat for storing tools and warning triangle.

### Sun visor and vanity mirror

#### Sun visors



The vehicle is equipped with sun visors on the driver's side and front passenger's side. Turn down the sun visor or pull it out of the holder and turn it towards the door to reduce glare.

## Vanity mirror (if equipped)



The vanity mirror is located on the inner side of the sun visor. To use the vanity mirror, flip down the sun visor, and lift the mirror cover upwards.

## Ticket holder (if equipped)



For placing small and light objects (e.g. invoices).

## Glasses case (if equipped)



The glasses case is integrated with the front interior lighting for you to place or use your glasses while driving.

## Centre armrest

### Front centre armrest



There is a storage box under the front centre armrest of the vehicle. Press the latch under the front of the centre armrest to open the storage box.



Do not open the storage box in the centre armrest while the vehicle is in motion.

### Rear centre armrest



The rear centre armrest is located in the middle of the rear seat backrest, pull down the pull strap, you can open the centre armrest to improve the comfort.

### Cup holder

#### Front cup holder

##### Type I



#### Type II



The cup holder behind the gear lever on the auxiliary console On some models, it is equipped with a cover. The cup holder can be accessed by pulling open the cover.

 When something is placed inside the cup holder, do not start or brake the car all in a sudden, in case that the drink splashes out. Hot drinks may cause scalding of the driver and occupants of the vehicle.

 Do not place open drink bottles on the cup holders while the vehicle is in motion! Otherwise, drinks could be spilled when braking, causing damage to the vehicle and the electrical equipment inside the vehicle.

## Rear cup holder



There is a rear cup holder on the rear centre armrest, which can be used after turning the centre armrest backward.

## Accessory power outlet

### Accessory power outlet under console



The accessory power outlet is located in the stowage compartment under the console. The accessory power outlet is available to 120 W electrical equipment at most.

## Discharge platform (Type I)

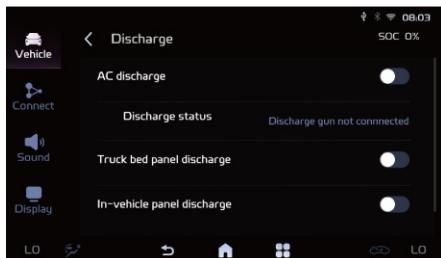
The vehicle has vehicle discharging feature. You can use the V2L discharge gun (to be purchased, recommended to use the original manufacturer's accessory) by plugging it into the AC charging port to access a 220V household power supply. Additionally, you can also use the V2V discharger (to be purchased, recommended to use the original manufacturer's accessory) in conjunction with an interconnection device to enable vehicle-to-vehicle charging in situations where there is a temporary power deficit.

### Discharge via AC gun

Vehicle discharging (V2L or V2V) activates when the following conditions are met after the discharge gun is plugged in.

- Vehicle unlocked.
- Vehicle not powered off, or start switch in OFF position with smart key inside.
- Discharge gun properly plugged into AC charging port.
- SOC of high-voltage battery  $\geq 20\%$ .

### Settings for AC discharge via charging gun



On the multimedia display, tap Settings → Vehicle → Energy → Discharge. You can turn on or off alternating discharge.

#### Discharge via DC gun

Vehicle discharging (V2L or V2V) activates when the following conditions are met after the discharge gun is plugged in and External Discharge is turned on.

- Vehicle unlocked.
- Start switch in ON position.
- Discharge gun properly plugged into DC charging port.
- Discharge gun in initial condition, not in emergency power-off condition, i.e., emergency power-off of discharge gun not triggered.
- SOC of high-voltage battery  $\geq 20\%$ .



Avoid excessive discharge. Ensure sufficient battery SOC before discharge.

Discharge automatically deactivates if vehicle is locked during discharge. Always remove and store discharge gun after use.

### Discharge platform (Type II)

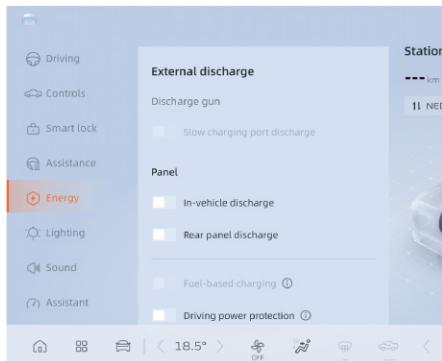
The vehicle has vehicle discharging feature. You can use the V2L discharge gun (to be purchased, recommended to use the original manufacturer's accessory) by plugging it into the AC charging port to access a 220V household power supply. Additionally, you can also use the V2V discharger (to be purchased, recommended to use the original manufacturer's accessory) in conjunction with an interconnection device to enable vehicle-to-vehicle charging in situations where there is a temporary power deficit.

#### Discharge via AC gun

Vehicle discharging (V2L or V2V) activates when the following conditions are met after the discharge gun is plugged in.

- Discharge gun properly plugged into AC charging port.
- The high-voltage battery has sufficient charge, and the discharge limit can be set via the multimedia display.
- The external discharge function is enabled in the multimedia display.

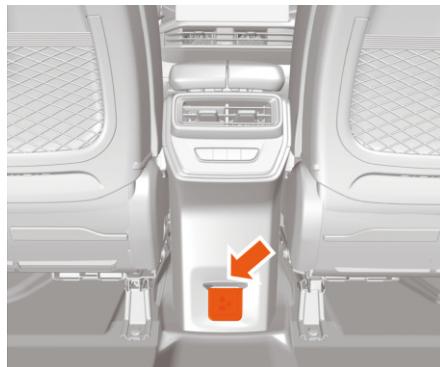
## Discharge setting



On the multimedia display, tap My car → Energy → External discharge. You can set Discharge Gun, Panel Engine-Assisted Charging, Driving Power Protection.

- If the discharge gun is not plugged in, the multimedia display prompts that it will stop the vehicle discharging function after a period of time.
- When the SOC of the battery is less than 15%, the target SOC cannot be set and the vehicle discharging function cannot be activated.

## Rear interior power outlet (if equipped)



A three-pin socket is installed behind the console and can be used to connect electrical equipment with a maximum power limit of 2.2kW.

- When using rear interior power outlets, ensure that the interior power panel discharge function is activated in the multimedia display.

## Power outlet in cargo area (if equipped)



1. Cargo compartment power switch

The power outlet in cargo area is located on the right side of the cargo compartment. To activate it, press and hold the power switch after unlocking using remote key (by pressing the unlock button on remote key) or opening the vehicle door, or enable the cargo compartment power panel discharge via the multimedia display. When activated, the power indicator illuminates, providing 220V AC output. To deactivate, press the power switch again or disable the function through the multimedia display, which will turn off the power indicator and cut off the 220V AC supply.

The 6-plug power outlet in cargo area includes four 220V three-pin sockets and two 12V 120W DC power outlets.



- When using the 220V AC discharge function: the starting current of the motor (inductive load) is greater than 3 times the rated current. Therefore, the vehicle triggers overload protection when a too high current is caused by electrical equipment such as cable drilling, electric hand drills, cutting machines, chainsaws, hair dryers, or locked-rotor and low power switching to high power.
- Before connecting electrical equipment, the vehicle discharging function is switched off. After the discharging function is switched on with stable voltage output, connect the electrical equipment and gradually increase the power (the hair dryer, for example, gradually shifts from cold air to warm air).
- In the case that an abnormal power failure of electrical equipment occurs in the discharge process, disconnect the electrical equipment from the vehicle. After the vehicle discharge function is reactivated with stable voltage output, reconnect the electrical equipment and have it work at a lower power level if possible.

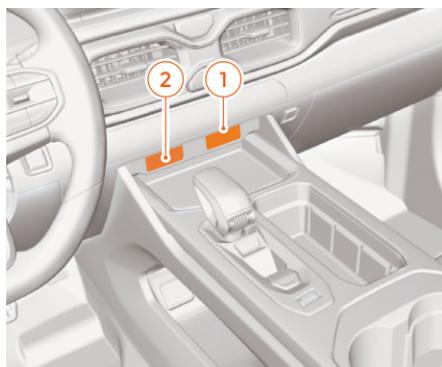


- During discharging, keep children away from the power outlet and discharging equipment of the cargo compartment to prevent accidental electric shock, which may lead to fatal injuries.
- Never use the power outlet in cargo area in situations where water may enter the outlet (Such as using the discharging function outdoors in rainy weather) to avoid leakage accidents.
- After use, switch off the power outlet in cargo area, and keep the outlet dry and clean. This is to prevent potential danger to life due to accidental electric shock.

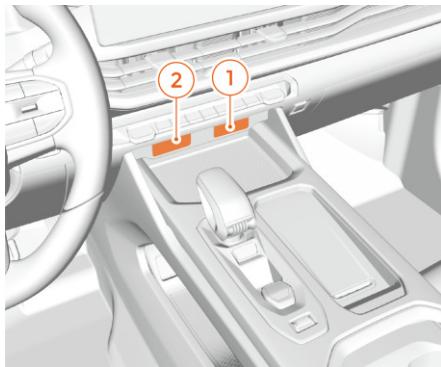
## Wired charging

### Front charging port

#### Type I



#### Type II



1. USB multimedia port

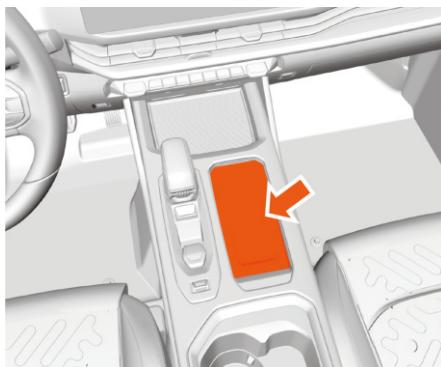
2. Type-C charging port

USB multimedia port provides data transmission and charging function and Type-C charging port is used to charge mobile devices.



Never use charging ports to connect high-power electrical appliances.

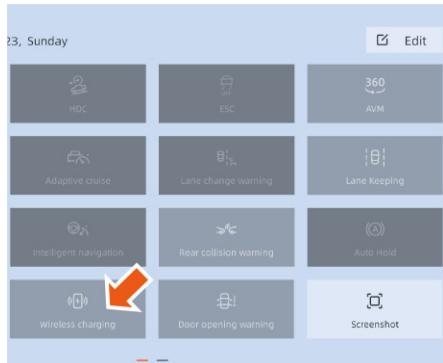
### Wireless charging pad (if equipped)



The wireless charging pad is located on the right side of the gear lever on the

## Instrument and control

console. When charging, please place the phone face-up on the wireless charging pad.



Pull down the multimedia display screen from the top to open the control centre and tap “Wireless Phone Charger” to turn on or off the wireless phone charging function.

To use the wireless charging pad, turn the start switch to ON position, and place the phone on the pad so that the phone charging port side and the bottom line of the pad coincide, to ensure that the coil inside the phone is aligned with the coil in the centre of the charging pad. Due to the different coil positions of each phone, it may be necessary to adjust the phone position.

**⚠** When charging, please remove the protective case of your phone and do not place metal objects such as coins, rings or keys between your phone and the wireless charging pad, as metal objects can become very hot. If any metal object is stuck between the phone and the wireless charging pad, carefully remove the phone and wait for the metal object to cool before removing it. Otherwise, it may cause burns.



- Starting the vehicle or closing the last door will trigger the key finder function. As the wireless charging and the smart key use the same frequency band, RF, the wireless charging function will stop working briefly when key finder function is triggered to prevent interference.
- Wireless charging supports the latest standards with a maximum output power of 50W. It can accommodate all existing wireless charging phones available in the market.

## Interior handles



The interior handles are installed onto front passenger's door and rear doors, so that the passengers can open the doors under special circumstances. Spring is installed inside the interior handle. When the handle is released, the handle will return to its original position.

## Magazine net (if equipped)



The magazine net is provided at the back of the front seat and is used to store small items such as newspapers and maps.

**⚠** Do not place any heavy or sharp objects in the magazine net, or the net may be damaged.

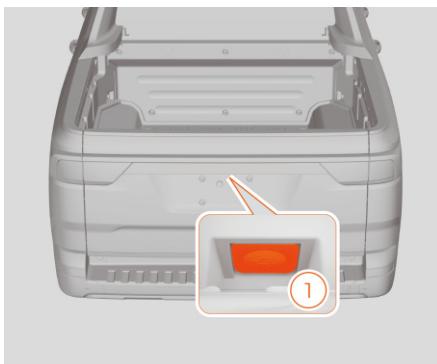
## Net bag (if equipped)



Net bag is located on the back of the front seat and is used to store small items such as newspapers and maps.

**⚠** Do not place any heavy or sharp objects in the net bag, or it may be damaged.

## Cargo compartment

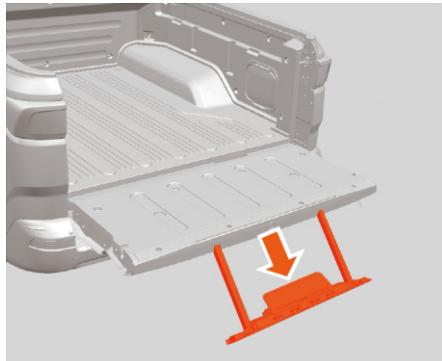


1. Tailgate unlock switch

The cargo compartment is used for loading large or heavy objects. After the tailgate is pre-unlocked, press the tailgate unlock switch and pull it back to open the tailgate and close the tailgate forcefully to lock it.

**i** For detailed information about pre-unlocking of the tailgate, please see the section "Opening and Closing Tailgate" in the chapter "Starting and Driving".

### Cargo compartment ladder (if equipped)



Before climbing up or down the cargo compartment, open the tailgate, and pull out the ladder for the sake of convenience.

**i** The maximum design load of this vehicle's cargo compartment ladder is approximately 150 kg. Overloading is strictly prohibited during use, and the load must be evenly distributed. If any abnormalities are found with the ladder, such as deformation, unusual noises, or loose connectors, please stop using it immediately and contact an authorized service centre of our company.

### Loading goods

When loading goods, its height and length must not exceed the height of the vehicle or the dimensions of the cargo compartment. If the goods are heavy, it should be placed as far forward in the cargo compartment as possible. Goods within the cargo compartment must be secured using rope hooks or other reliable tools to prevent personal injury and property damage.

 When loading goods, please strictly adhere to the following safety regulations:

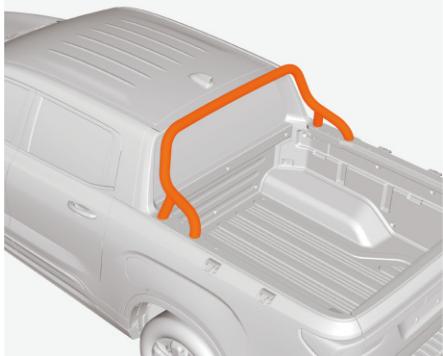
- Do not throw heavy objects  
Do not drop or throw heavy items with sharp edges, such as large stones or metal parts, from a height into the cargo compartment, as impact may damage the cargo compartment panels.
- Avoid contact with strong chemical agents  
SMC material has good corrosion resistance, but its tolerance to chemicals such as strong acids, strong alkalis, pesticides, and herbicides is limited. Such items must be stored in sealed containers and must not come into direct contact with the cargo compartment.
- Do not load high-temperature materials  
The loading of high-temperature industrial waste, asphalt, unburnt coal residue, or other hot materials directly from kilns or furnaces is strictly prohibited. High-temperature objects can cause carbonisation or deformation of the cargo compartment.
- No hot work in the cargo compartment area  
Any form of hot work, such as welding, cutting, or open flames, is strictly prohibited inside or near

the edges of the cargo compartment. Sparks or molten slag can instantly damage the SMC surface and cause harm to the cargo compartment structure.

- Secure rolling cargo properly  
Easily rolling cargo, such as tyres or steel pipes, must be effectively secured to prevent it from rolling and impacting the cargo compartment during transport.
- No overloading or point loading  
Please load cargo within the carrying capacity of the cargo compartment. For heavier items, such as concrete blocks, tiles, or equipment, avoid concentrated point loads. Do not allow the weight to be supported by only a few points (e.g., only by the feet of equipment). Always use thick wooden planks or padding to distribute the pressure.

## Exterior equipment

### Roll cage (if equipped)



The roll cage is located at the rear of the cabin. Its main purpose is to improve vehicle safety during rollover accidents. It helps protect occupants from serious injuries. The roll cage also makes the cargo compartment more practical and convenient for securing and transporting goods.

**i** Do not use the roll cage to support or secure large or heavy items.

Do not modify the roll cage. Modifications may change its structure or strength. This could reduce or eliminate its ability to protect the vehicle.

### Roof rack (if equipped)



Roof racks are located on both sides of the roofs.

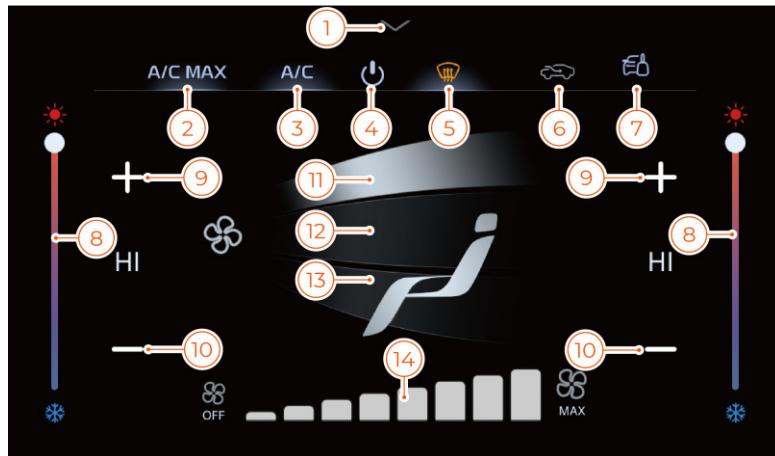
**i** The roof rack is a load-bearing roof rack with a static carrying capacity of 75 kg. Considering that full acceleration, sudden braking, and fast cornering during driving will cause additional load on the roof rack, please reduce the weight according to actual driving habits. Always strictly follow the relevant requirements for use. In case of damage, contact a Riddara authorised service centre.

# Heating, ventilation and air conditioning

## Front A/C control system

### Basic electric air conditioning (if equipped)

### Multimedia automatic air conditioning control



4

1. A/C menu close button
2. A/C MAX button
3. A/C button
4. Rear window/defrost/demist button (if equipped)
5. OFF button
6. Front windscreen defrost/demist button
7. Fresh air/recirculation button
8. Remote control air conditioner temperature setting button
9. Temperature adjustment zone
10. Temperature increasing button
11. Temperature decrease button
12. Windscreen mode selection area
13. Face mode selection area
14. Foot mode selection area
15. Fan speed control zone

**i** On the A/C control panel in the multimedia display, you can use the windscreen mode, face mode, or foot mode individually. Alternatively, you may combine windscreen mode or face mode with foot mode.

When the A/C menu is closed, some climate control buttons remain displayed at the bottom of the multimedia screen, allowing easy status checks and quick reopening of the A/C menu.

## Control buttons for basic electric air conditioning

### 1. A/C menu close button

Tap this button to close the A/C menu. To reopen the menu, tap the temperature display area, vent mode display area or recirculation/fresh air display mode at the bottom of the multimedia display.

### 2. A/C MAX button

Tap this button, and when the button indicator is on, you can quickly cool down.

### 3. A/C button

Tap this button, when the button indicator is on, the cooling function of the A/C compressor is enabled.

### 4. Rear window/defrost/demist button (if equipped)

Tap this button, when the button indicator is on, the rear window/defrost/demist function is enabled.



Do not use a scraper or sharp tool to remove condensation or other substances from the inside of the windscreen and rear window. Failing to do so can result in the damage of rear window demister grille. Repairs resulting from this are not covered by the warranty. Make sure all objects are at a safe distance from the vehicle windows.

### 5. OFF button

When the air conditioner system is working, tap this button and the system is switched off.

### 6. Front windscreen defrost/demist button

After the defrost/demist function is enabled, the air blows the windscreen and switches to the fresh air mode. After the A/C is turned on, tapping the air speed adjustment button in the defrost/demist mode will increase or decrease the air speed accordingly, and the air vent mode will remain in windscreen blowing mode. When switching off the defrost/demist function, the air speed and air vent mode return to the original setting.

### 7. Fresh air/recirculation button

Tap this button to switch between recirculation and fresh air modes. When in recirculation mode, the button indicator lights up. The recirculation mode enables the internal circulation of air in the vehicle, helping to quickly cool or heat the air in the vehicle and prevent ambient air and odours from entering.

 Using the recirculation mode over a long period may cause the cabin air to be dirty or the glass to mist.

8. Remote control air conditioner temperature setting button

When you press this button on the touchscreen, the indicator light will turn on, and the remote air conditioner temperature, A/C button (if equipped) setting menu will appear.

9. Temperature adjustment zone

To adjust climate control temperature, slide down to decrease the temperature or slide up to increase the temperature.

10. Temperature increasing button

Tapping this button can increase the air conditioning temperature in 0.5°C steps. The temperature setting range of the air conditioning is 17.5°C-31.5°C. Temperatures set above 31.5°C will display as HI, and temperatures set below 17.5°C will display as LO.

11. Temperature decrease button

Tapping this button can decrease the air conditioning temperature in 0.5°C steps. The temperature setting range of the air conditioning is 17.5°C-31.5°C. Temperatures set above 31.5°C will display as HI, and temperatures set below 17.5°C will display as LO.

12. Windscreen mode selection area

Tapping this mode selection area highlights the area and activates windscreen mode.

13. Face mode selection area

Tapping this mode selection area highlights the area and activates face mode.

14. Foot mode selection area

Tapping this mode selection area highlights the area and activates foot mode.

 When A/C menu is closed, the current vent mode can be viewed in the vent mode display area at the bottom of the multimedia display.

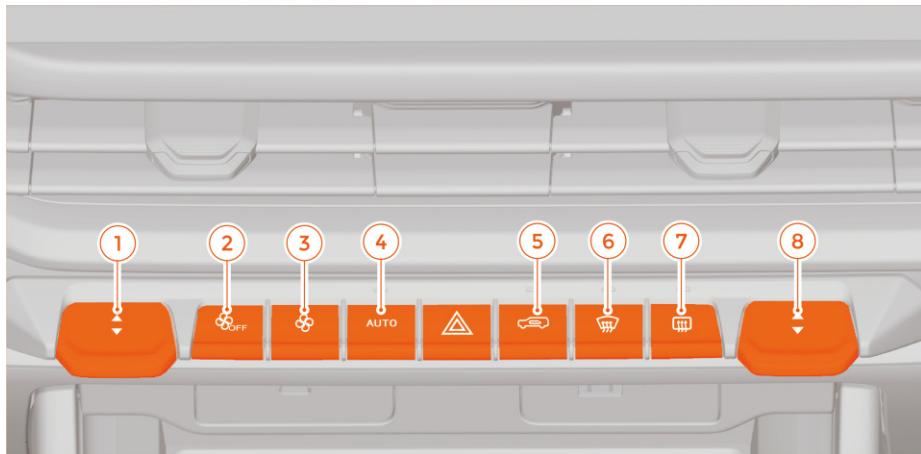
15. Fan speed control zone

The system features 8 adjustable fan speeds, selectable through dedicated buttons in the control zone. There are quick adjustment buttons on both sides of the control zone. Pressing the MAX button immediately sets the fan to maximum speed. Pressing the OFF button shuts down the A/C system while deactivating all ventilation.

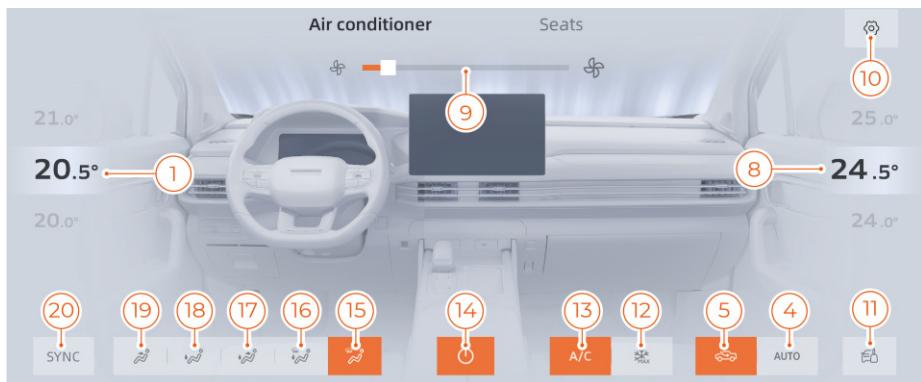
## Air conditioning system

### Automatic dual-zone air conditioning (if equipped)

Automatic dual-zone air conditioning control using dash panel



Multimedia automatic dual-zone air conditioning control



|   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Driver side temperature button                             | 11. Remote control air conditioner temperature setting button            |
| 2. Air volume decrease/OFF button                             | 12. A/C MAX button   |
| 3. Air volume increase button                                 | 13. A/C button   |
| 4. AUTO button  | 14. ON/OFF button  |
| 5. Fresh air/recirculation button                             | 15. Windscreen mode button   |
| 6. Front windscreen defrost/demist button                     | 16. Windscreen/foot mode button  |
| 7. Rear window/Exterior rearview mirror defrost/demist button | 17. Face/foot mode button  |
| 8. Passenger side temperature button                          | 18. Foot mode button   |
| 9. Air volume adjustment button                               | 19. Face mode button   |
| 10. SET button  | 20. Dual-zone automatic air conditioning synchronization function button |

### Control buttons for automatic dual-zone air conditioning

1. Driver side temperature button  
Adjust the driver side temperature. The temperature adjustment button adjusts each bar to 0.5°C. The temperature setting range of the air conditioning is 17.5°C-31.5°C. Temperatures set above 31.5°C will display as HI, and temperatures set below 17.5°C will display as LO.
2. Air volume decrease/OFF button  
Adjust the air volume downwards and press the air volume decrease button again when the air volume is at level 1 to turn off the air conditioning.
3. Air volume increase button  
Press this button to power on the fan or increase the fan speed. When the fan is at level 8, further attempts to increase the fan speed will be ineffective.
4. AUTO button  
When the button is pressed/tapped and the button indicator light is on, the air conditioning system will enter the automatic temperature control state and automatically provide the optimal temperature and air volume according to the temperature in the vehicle.
5. Fresh air/recirculation button  
Press/tap this button to switch between recirculation and fresh air modes. When in recirculation mode, the button indicator lights up. The recirculation mode enables the internal circulation of air in the

vehicle, helping to quickly cool or heat the air in the vehicle and prevent ambient air and odours from entering.



Using the recirculation mode over a long period may cause the cabin air to be dirty or the glass to mist.

6. Front windscreen defrost/demist button  
After the defrost/demist function is enabled, the air blows the windscreen and switches to the fresh air mode. After the A/C is turned on, pressing the airflow adjustment button in the defrosting/demisting state will increase or decrease the air speed accordingly, and the air vent mode will keep blowing the windscreen. When switching off the defrost/demist function, the air speed and air vent mode return to the original setting.
7. Rear window/Exterior rearview mirror defrost/demist button  
Press this button to turn on or off the rear window/exterrior rearview mirror defrost/demist function. When the rear window/exterrior rearview mirror defrost/demist function is turned on, the button indicator lights up. Press this button again to switch off the rear window defrost/demist function.

 Do not use a scraper or sharp tool to remove condensation or other substances from the inside of the windscreen and rear window. Failing to do so can result in the damage of rear window demister grille. Repairs resulting from this are not covered by the warranty. Make sure all objects are at a safe distance from the vehicle windows.

8. Passenger side temperature button  
Adjust the front passenger side temperature. The temperature adjustment button adjusts each bar to 0.5°C. The temperature setting range of the air conditioning is 17.5°C-31.5°C. Temperatures set above 31.5°C will display as HI, and temperatures set below 17.5°C will display as LO.
9. Air volume adjustment button  
Click the air volume progress bar and select the air volume according to your personal needs.
10. A/C settings button  
Tap this button to bring up the air conditioning settings interface.
11. Remote control air conditioner temperature setting button  
When you press this button on the touchscreen the remote air conditioner temperature setting menu will appear.
12. A/C MAX button  
Tap this button, and when the button indicator is in highlighted state, you can quickly cool down.
13. A/C button

Tap this button, when the button indicator is highlighted, the cooling function of the A/C compressor is enabled.

14. ON/OFF button  
Tap this button to turn on or off the air conditioning.
15. Windscreen mode button  
Tap this button, when the button indicator is highlighted, the window mode will be enabled.
16. Windscreen/foot mode button  
Tap this button, when the button indicator is highlighted, the windscreen/foot mode is activated.
17. Face/foot mode button  
Tap this button, when the button indicator is highlighted, the face/foot mode is activated.
18. Foot mode button  
Tap this button, when the button indicator is highlighted, the foot mode will be enabled.
19. Face mode button  
Tap this button, when the button indicator is highlighted, the face mode will be enabled.
20. Dual-zone automatic air conditioning synchronization function button  
Tap this button, and when the indicator lamp lights up, it is for single-zone control. When adjusting the driver's side temperature, the front passenger side temperature will be synchronized accordingly. If the front passenger side temperature is adjusted, the button will exit the

highlighted state, the air conditioning will revert to dual-zone mode, and the driver's side temperature will no longer be synchronized.

### Ambient light and sunlight sensor

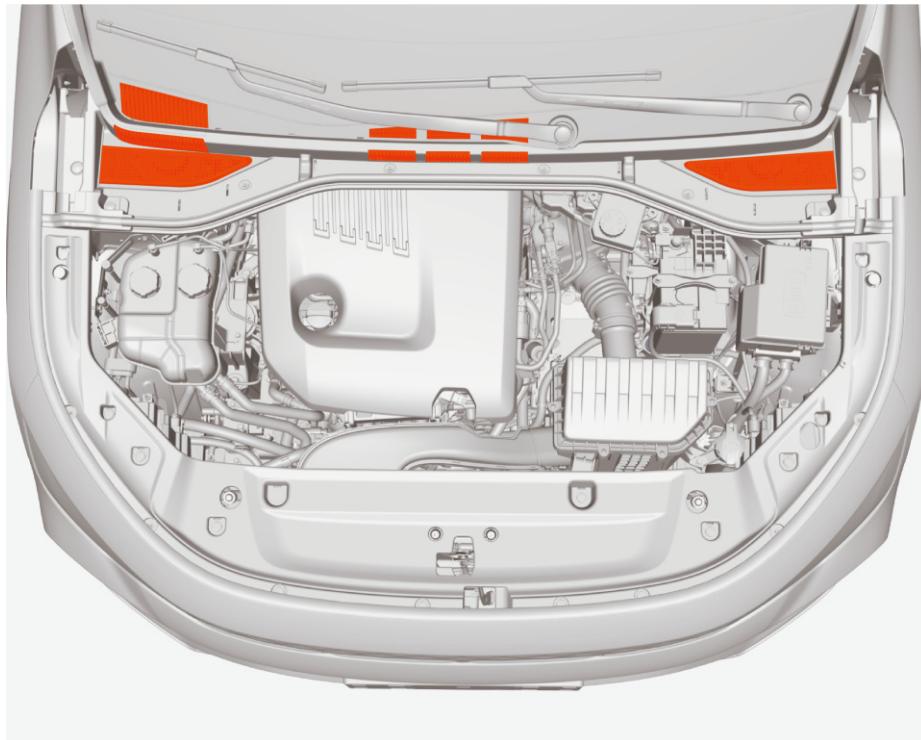


The ambient light and sunlight sensor behind the front windscreen sends information about the measured sunlight radiant intensity, then the air conditioning system evaluates it to control the temperature in the vehicle.

- i** Keep the sensor clean, and do not place foreign articles such as labels on it. Otherwise, the automatic climate control system may not work properly.

## Air conditioning and ventilation system

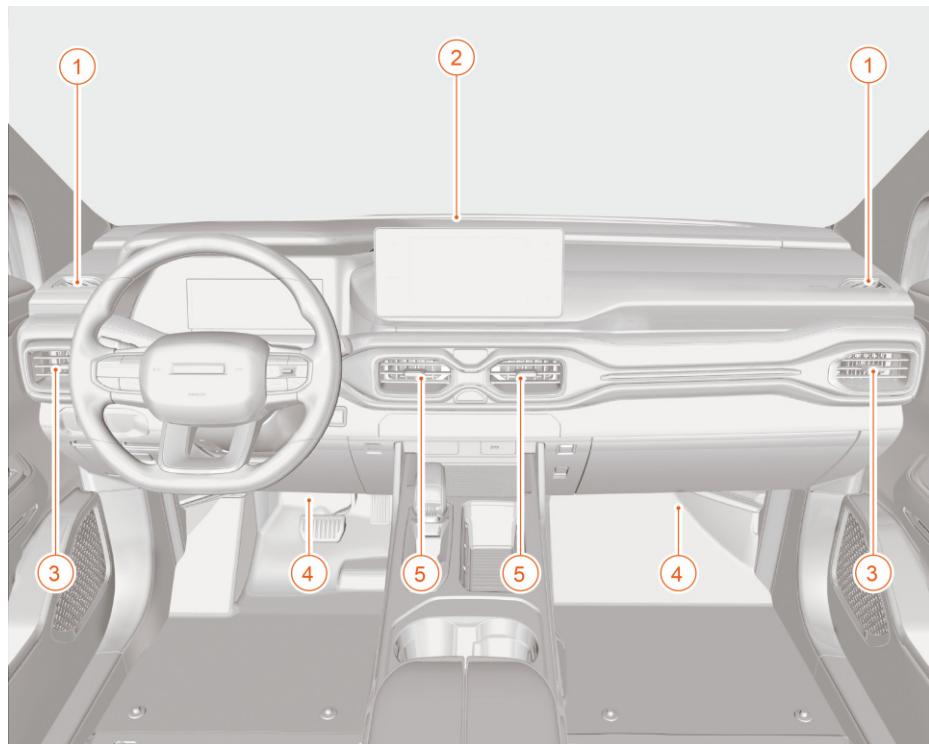
### Air inlet



Clear any obstructions from the air inlet under the front grille to ensure proper airflow into the vehicle.

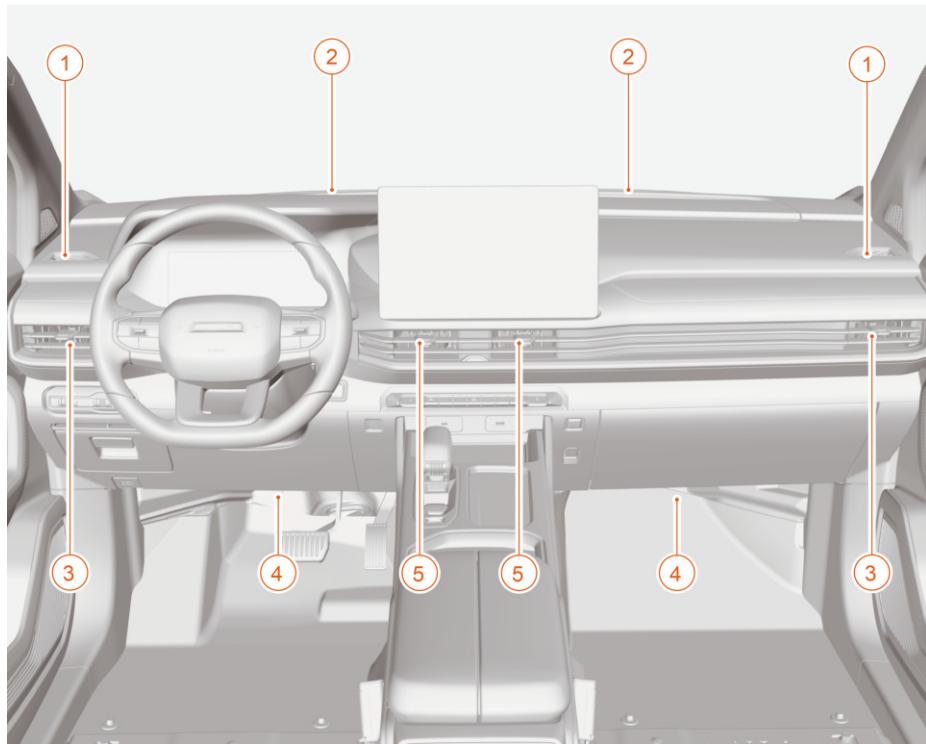
### Air outlets

#### Front air outlet (Type I)



|                                    |                              |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. Side defroster air outlet       | 4. Front footwell air outlet |
| 2. Windscreen defroster air outlet | 5. Central air outlet        |
| 3. Side air outlets                |                              |

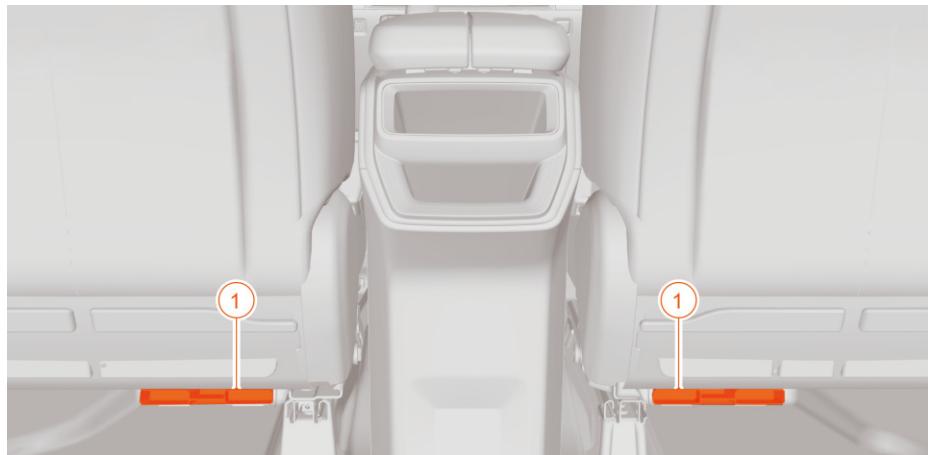
### Front air outlet (Type II)



- 1. Side defroster air outlet
- 2. Windscreen defroster air outlet
- 3. Side air outlets
- 4. Front footwell air outlet
- 5. Central air outlet

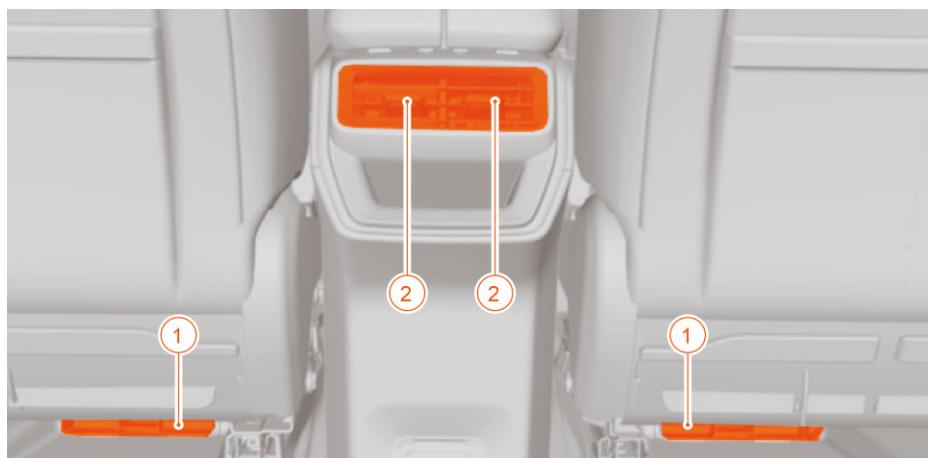
## Air conditioning system

### Rear air outlet (Type I)



1. Rear footwell air outlet

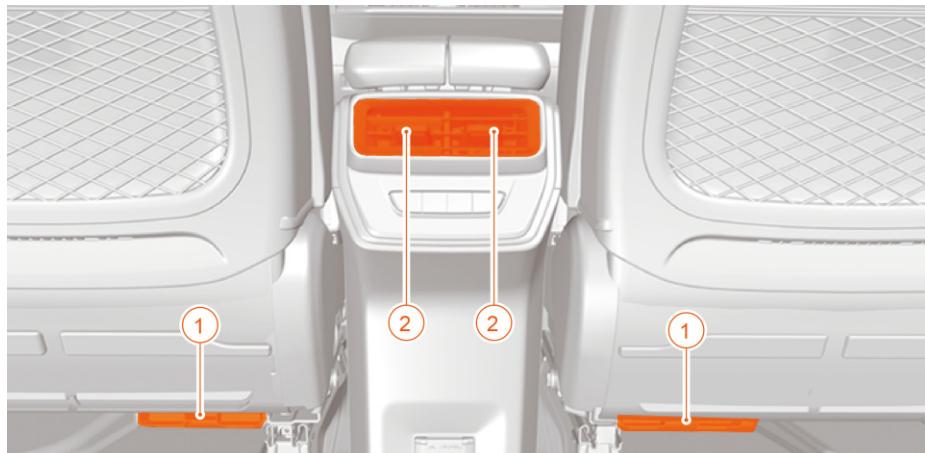
### Rear air outlet (Type II)



1. Rear footwell air outlet

2. Rear air outlet

### Rear air outlet (Type III)



1. Rear footwell air outlet

2. Rear air outlet

### Air outlet adjustment

#### Adjusting air outlets

##### Type I



##### Type II

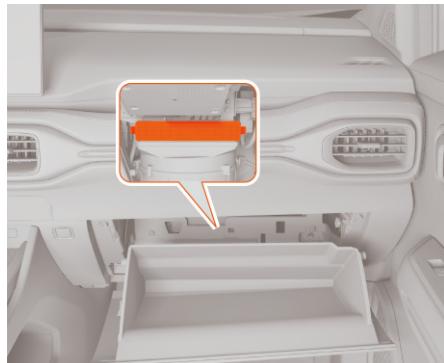


Change the direction of the airflow by adjusting the grille in the up, down, left, and right directions.

### Air purification system

#### A/C filter

##### Type I



##### Type II



A/C filter is located at the rear of the glove box. The filter can effectively block and filter very small particles (0.3 $\mu$ m level) such as dust, pollen, and dust inhaled into the vehicle from the outside, and has a sterilization function. To maintain optimal filtration, check and replace the filter element regularly.

in accordance with the Warranty and Maintenance Manual.

## Maintenance of A/C system

- If the vehicle is parked under direct sunlight for a long time, the temperature in the vehicle can rise very high. In this case, open all windows first to let the hot air out of the vehicle and switch on the A/C Max function. When the temperature in the vehicle is reduced, close windows and adjust the internal temperature as needed.
- In wet weather, cold air should not be blown directly into the front windscreen to avoid condensation on the window due to the temperature difference between the inside and outside of the window.
- When driving on dusty roads, close all windows and it is recommended to keep the air recirculation mode running.
- Do not smoke when the air conditioning is working, otherwise, it will cause eye stinging.
- Do not let leaves or other debris block the air inlet.
- Keep the underside of the front seats clear to facilitate air circulation.

## Long-term storage

If the vehicle is to be stored or not used for more than two weeks, leave the air conditioning system running for five minutes in the recirculation mode and

at maximum air rate when the vehicle is started. This allows the air conditioning system to be fully lubricated and minimizes the possibility of damage to the air conditioning system when the system starts up again.

## Turning on and off air conditioning remotely

### Turning on air conditioning remotely

To turn on air conditioning remotely with start switch OFF, all doors closed and  $\text{SOC} \geq 20\%$ , briefly press the lock button on the smart key, and press and hold the vehicle locating button for 3s within 2s. If air conditioning is turned on, the system resumes last-used settings, and the turn signal lamps flash three times.

### Turning off air conditioning remotely

To turn off air conditioning remotely, briefly press the lock button on the smart key, and press and hold the vehicle locating button for 3s within 2s. If air conditioning is turned off, the turn signal lamps flash three times.

Air conditioning turns off automatically in the following situations:

- When the 20-minute countdown ends.

## Air conditioning system

---

- When the SOC of high-voltage battery drops below 20%.

 After air conditioning is turned on using the smart key, it remains on until you perform any of the following operations before the end of the 20-minute countdown:

- Open any door.
- Depress the brake pedal.
- Set start switch to ON or READY.

## Seats

### Front seats

#### Adjusting front seat head restraints



Adjust the head restraints so that the upper edge of the head restraints is equal to the top of the head. This can reduce the risk of neck injury in the event of accidents.

**⚠** Correctly install and adjust the head restraints before driving to avoid serious injury or death in the event of an accident.

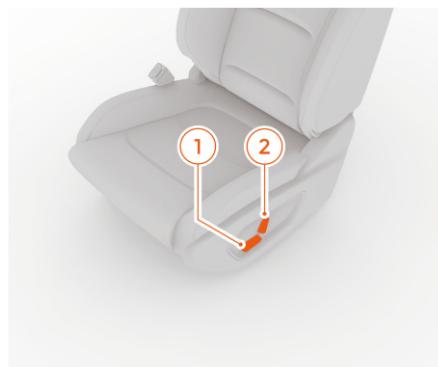
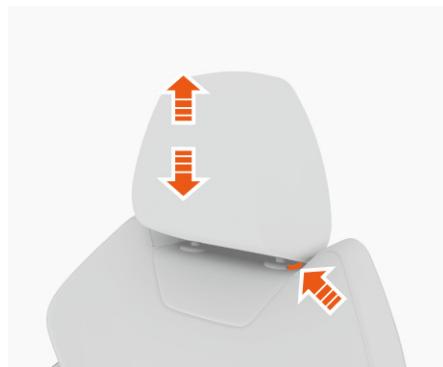
To adjust the head restraints height, simply lift it up. Press and hold the adjustment button on the side of the head restraints to adjust them to the desired height, then release the button. Gently press or lift the head restraints again until you hear a click to ensure the head restraints is stuck in place.

**⚠** Do not adjust the seat while the vehicle is in motion. This can cause the vehicle to lose control, resulting in injury or death.

#### Electrically-adjustable driver seat (if equipped)

The driver seat can be electrically adjusted in six directions, and the adjustment switch is located on the left side of the seat.

**⚠** Do not place anything under the power seat or deliberately hinder the adjustment of the seat; otherwise, it can lead to damage to the seat.



## Seat and protection device

1. Seat back and forth/height adjustment switch
2. Backrest angle adjustment switch

### Adjusting seat back and forth



Press the switch in the direction of the arrows to adjust the seat back and forth.

**⚠** Under normal temperature conditions (25 °C), if the adjustment motor experiences overheating protection and cannot work, it will automatically resume after a while.

### Adjusting seat height



Press the switch in the direction of the arrows to adjust the seat height.

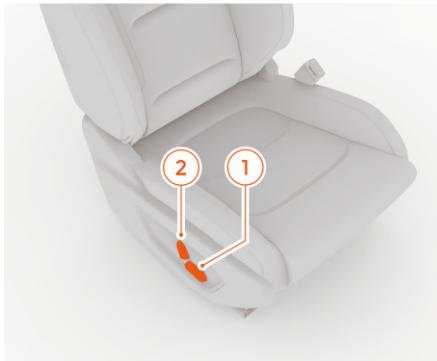
### Adjusting backrest angle



Press the switch in the direction of the arrows to adjust the tilt of the backrest.

### Electrically-adjustable front passenger seat (if equipped)

The front passenger seat can be electrically adjusted in four directions, and the adjustment switch is located on the right side of the seat.



1. Seat back-and-forth adjustment switch
2. Backrest angle adjustment switch

## Adjusting seat back and forth



Press the switch in the direction of the arrows to adjust the seat back and forth.

## Adjusting backrest angle



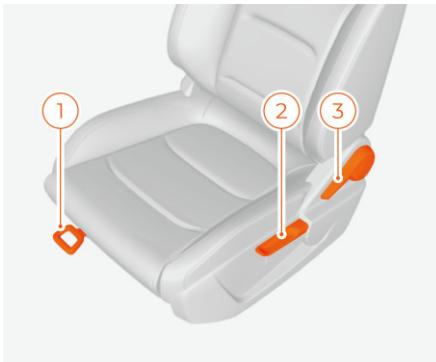
Press the switch in the direction of the arrows to adjust the tilt of the backrest.



Under normal temperature conditions (25 °C), if the backrest angle adjustment motor experiences overheating protection and fails to work, it will automatically resume after a while.

## Manually-adjustable driver seat (if equipped)

The driver seat can be adjusted in six directions, and the adjusting lever and rod are located on the left and front sides of the seat respectively.



1. Seat back-and-forth adjusting rod  
Hold the seat back-and-forth adjusting rod and pull it upwards. Slide the seat to the desired position by leaning lightly against the seat. Release the adjusting rod until a click is heard in the seat slide and the seat locks in place.
2. Seat height adjusting lever  
Raise/press the seat height adjusting lever up/down to adjust the seat height to the desired position and release the adjusting lever.
3. Backrest angle adjusting lever  
Raise the backrest angle adjusting lever to unlock the backrest; lightly press backwards or slowly move away from the backrest to rotate the backrest backward or forward

to the desired position. Release the backrest angle adjusting lever to lock the backrest.

### Manually-adjustable front passenger seat (if equipped)

The front passenger seat can be adjusted in four directions, and the adjusting lever and rod are located on the right and front sides of the seat respectively.

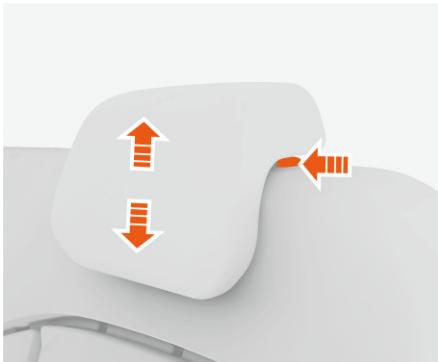


1. **Seat back-and-forth adjusting rod**  
Hold the seat back-and-forth adjusting rod and pull it upwards. Slide the seat to the desired position by leaning lightly against the seat. Release the adjusting rod until a click is heard in the seat slide and the seat locks in place.
2. **Backrest angle adjusting lever**  
Raise the backrest angle adjusting lever to unlock the backrest; lightly press backwards or slowly move away from the backrest to rotate the backrest backward or forward to the desired position. Release the

backrest angle adjusting lever to lock the backrest.

### Rear seats

#### Adjusting rear seat head restraints

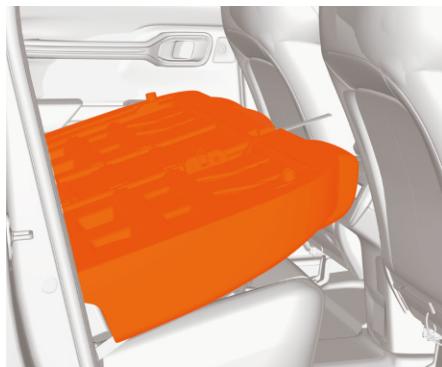


The headrest can be adjusted upwards by pulling up the headrest directly; when adjusting downwards, you need to press and hold the unlocking button on the side of the headrest, and make sure that the headrest is locked in place after the adjustment is completed. Press and hold the adjustment button to install or remove the head restraints.

## Folding rear seat backrest



There is a collapsible belt on the right side of the rear seat backrest. Pull the collapsible belt up as far as possible, release the rear seat backrest, and fold the rear seat into place.



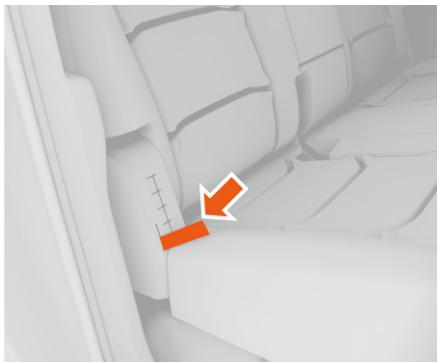
After the seat backrest is folded, ensure that there is a certain space between the rear seat head restraints and the front seat.

## Folding back rear seat backrest

To turn the rear seat backrest to its original position, fold back the rear seat

backrest and push back hard until you hear it lock.

## Folding rear seat cushion



The rear seat cushions have a 4/6 folding function, and collapsible belts are installed on each side. Pull the collapsible belts up as far as possible, and the corresponding cushion automatically turns up completely.

**⚠** When pulling out the collapsible belts, the rear seat cushion will turn up quickly. Please hold the seat cushion to slowly turn up to avoid unnecessary losses.

**ℹ** If the collapsible belts are not completely pulled to the end, the corresponding side cushion will not be completely turned up. To turn it up completely, pull the collapsible belts again.

## Folding back rear seat cushion

To turn the cushion to its original position, pull out the collapsible belts and move the seat cushion backwards,

## Seat and protection device

and press downwards hard until you hear it lock.

**⚠** When the vehicle is in motion, the occupant is not allowed to sit on the folded seat, and the seat should be used safely. When the seat backrest is restored to the initial position, the following precautions should be observed to prevent injury in the event of a collision or emergency brake:

- Push the top of the seat backrest forward and backward to ensure the seat backrest is firmly locked. Otherwise, it will affect the normal operation of the seat belt.
- Make sure the seat belt is not twisted or clamped under the seat but is placed in place for use.
- When the seat cushion is folded and locked, move the latches forward to the lowest position.

## Front seat heating/ventilation (if equipped)

### Front seat heating



Click on the multimedia display step by step: Air conditioning → Seats → Heating, and turn on or off the seat heating function on the active screen.

Seat heating has three levels: OFF, 1 and 2, and the driver seat heating intensity can be turned off or set by tapping the corresponding button.

**⚠** If the occupant cannot perceive pain and temperature due to medication, paralysis, numbness and other illnesses, do not use the seat heating function. Otherwise, body burns may occur.



- Do not kneel on the seat or apply concentrated load to the seat to avoid damaging the seat heating elements.
- Do not clean the seats with a wet method.
- Seat heating can be turned on only when the vehicle is started. This is to avoid low battery. In case of low battery, seat heating will be automatically turned off to leave enough electricity for the vehicle to work.
- Do not place cushions on seats during electric heating.

### Front seat ventilation



On the multimedia display, tap Air conditioner → Seats → Ventilation. You can turn on or off the front seat ventilation function.

Seat ventilation has four levels: OFF, 1, 2 and 3, and the corresponding seat ventilation intensity can be turned off or set by tapping the corresponding button.



- The front seat heating/ventilation function cannot be turned on unless the start switch is turned to ON position.
- For the same seat, heating and ventilation cannot be turned on at the same time.

## Rear seat ventilation (if equipped)

### Rear seat ventilation

#### Using multimedia display

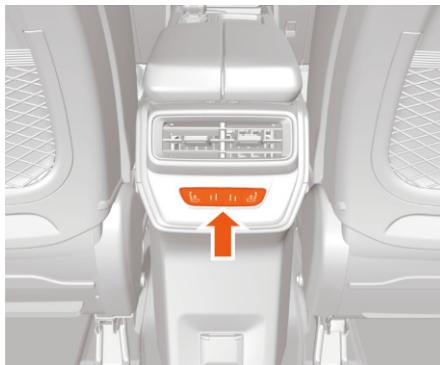


On the multimedia display, tap Air conditioner → Seats → Ventilation → Rear row. You can turn on or off the rear seat ventilation function.

Seat ventilation has three levels: OFF, 1 and 2, and the corresponding seat

ventilation intensity can be turned off or set by tapping the corresponding button.

#### Using physical button



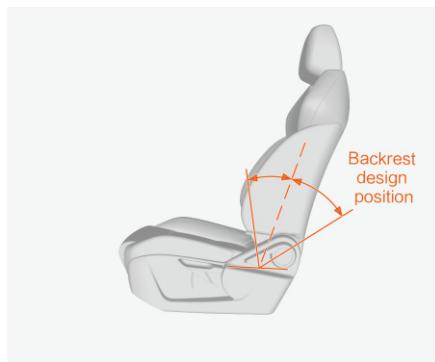
Pressing the rear seat ventilation button can turn on or off the rear seat ventilation function.

Seat ventilation has three levels: OFF, 1 and 2, and the corresponding seat ventilation intensity can be set by tapping the corresponding button.



- The rear seat ventilation function cannot be turned on unless the start switch is turned to ON position.

## Seat adjustment parameters



When the seat is in the original position, the adjustment parameters of the seat (when measuring cushion depth) are as follows:

| Item        |                           | Parameters  |
|-------------|---------------------------|---|
| Driver seat | Up and down adjustment    | Total stroke: 55mm (27.5 mm upward, 27.5 mm downward) |
|             | Back-and-forth adjustment | Total stroke 220mm (Forward: 190mm, rearward: 30mm)   |
|             | Back rest adjustment      | Total stroke 88° (Forward: 30°, rearward: 58°)        |

| Item                 | Parameters                |
|----------------------|---------------------------|
|                      | Cushion depth             |
| Front passenger seat | Back-and-forth adjustment |
|                      | Back rest adjustment      |
|                      | Cushion depth             |

## Driver seat memory (if equipped)



1. Click on the multimedia display step by step: Air conditioning → Seats, and go to the seat memory saving screen.
2. Adjust the seat to the appropriate position by seat back-and-forth

adjustment and backrest adjustment.

3. After pressing the save button, tap 5 optional selections on the central control screen within 3 seconds to refresh the seat memory positions corresponding to the options.



- If the seat memory is not saved or recovered, the currently-adjusted seat position is retained but not memorised.
- A speed below 5 km/h is a prerequisite for activating the seat memory function in the vehicle power mode "ON".
- During the adjustment of the seat position via the memory function, pushing the left-side seat adjustment switch will interrupt the automatic positioning process.

## Seat belts

### Overview of seat belts



Improperly fastening or failure to fasten seat belts may cause accidents and serious or fatal injuries!

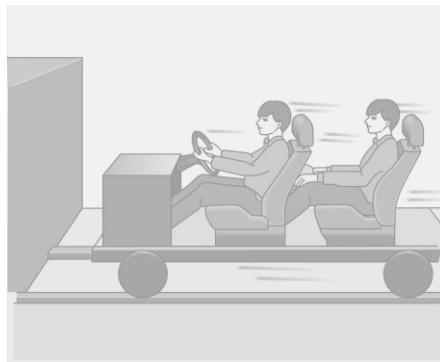
No occupant is allowed to sit in an area without a seat and seat belt or on a seat with a damaged seat belt. Each seatbelt is for one person only. Do not share seat belts (including children).

All occupants should properly wear their seat belts while the vehicle is in motion. Properly fastening seat belts can mitigate injuries to occupants in the event of emergency braking or an accident.

5

### Why are seat belts protective

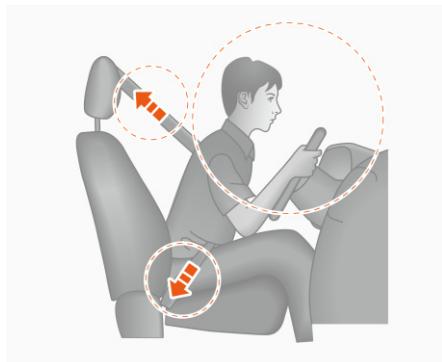
When a passenger sits inside or on an object, he or she shares the same speed as the object.



Take the above picture as an example. Consider the vehicle as a seat with wheels. Let a passenger sit on it, speed it up and then stop, the passengers on it won't stop.



The passenger will continue to move forward until blocked by an object. In a real case, the object might be hard objects such as the windscreen, dash panel, or seats.



If the seat belt is fastened, the passenger will slow down with the vehicle. It takes a longer time and longer distance before such motion comes to an end.

### Correct sitting posture

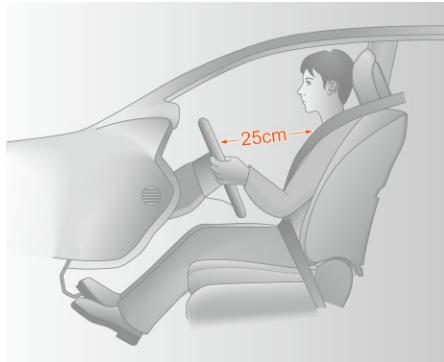
**Importance of correct sitting posture**  
Correct sitting posture is crucial for the optimal functioning of seat belts and airbags. The driver and front seat passenger can make various adjustments to their seats based on their body requirements. Correct sitting posture ensures:

- Accurate, effective and safe control of the vehicle.
- Proper support for the body, preventing driver fatigue.
- Maximizing the protective capabilities of seat belts and airbags.

**⚠** When driving, do not tilt the seat backrest too much, put your head or arms out of the window, or lean forward too close to the airbag to avoid serious injury or death.

### Correct sitting posture of driver

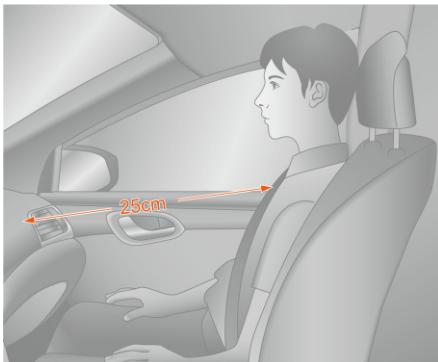
Correct sitting posture of driver is essential for safe driving. The recommended adjustments for driver are as follows:



- Adjust the steering wheel so that the distance between the chest and the steering wheel is at least 25 cm.
- Adjust the driver seat forward and backward so that the driver can better operate the accelerator and brake pedals.
- Adjust the seat backrest to the upright position so that the back can be fully fitted with the backrest.
- The head restraint should be properly adjusted according to height.
- Properly fasten the seat belt.

### Correct sitting posture of the front seat passenger

The recommended adjustments for front passenger are as follows:



- The front passenger must keep a distance of no less than 25 cm from the dash panel.
- Adjust the seat backrest to the upright position so that the back can be fully fitted with the backrest.
- Properly fasten the seat belt.

5

### How to fasten the seat belt correctly

This section is for adults only.



## Seat and protection device

For children and infants, there are different protection regulations and special requirements on seat belts. For detailed information, see the requirements for "Senior children" or "Infants and toddlers" in this chapter. All passengers should wear their seat belts to avoid injury in traffic accidents. Sit up straight, and put their feet on the front floor. The crotch belt should be positioned low and snugly across occupants' hips as much as possible, preventing occupants from shifting to reduce the risk of severe injury in traffic accidents. The shoulder belt should be over the shoulders and across the chest. In case of emergency braking or accidents, the shoulder belt is locked to protect the passenger.

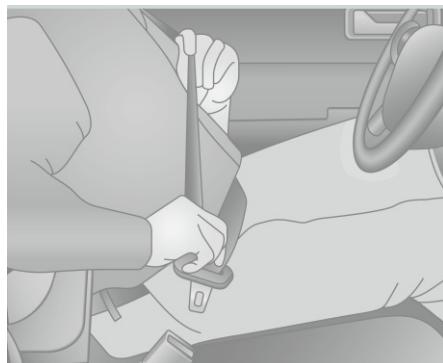
### How does a pregnant woman use a seat belt



Pregnant women should wear seat belts correctly, positioning the lap belt as low as possible below the protruding abdomen. Sitting upright

and positioning herself away from the steering wheel or dash panel can reduce the risk of injury to both the pregnant woman and the fetus in case of a collision or airbag deployment.

### Three-point seat belt

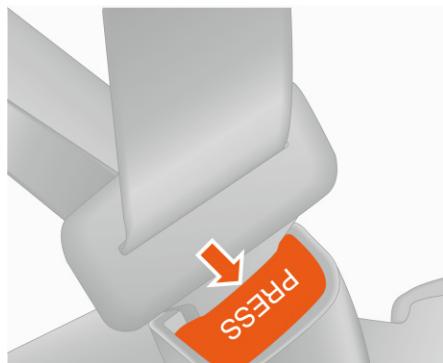


1. Pick up the latch plate and pull the seat belt across your body. Do not twist the seat belt.

The three-point seat belt may be locked when you pull it over your body too fast. If that happens, you can unlock the seat belt by retracting it a little, and then pull it slowly across your body.



2. Press the latch plate into the belt buckle until you hear a click. Pull the latch plate to ensure it is locked. Check the position of the release button on the striker pin so that the seat belt can be quickly unbuckled if necessary.
3. Pull the shoulder belt up to tighten the lap section.



4. Press the red button on the striker pin to unbuckle the seat belt. The seat belt shall be retracted to the state before use.



Take care to prevent foreign objects such as food scraps, nut shells, buttons, coins, and viscous liquid from falling into the safety belt buckle. It may lead to the failure of seat belt warning and buckle locking or unlocking.



Do not insert objects other than the vehicle's latch plate into the buckle, otherwise, it may cause the buckle to malfunction. This reduces the protection provided by the seat belt and may cause serious injuries and even death.



To prevent the seat belt from retracting back too fast and hurting the passenger or getting stuck, please hold the belt while unbuckling until it fully retracts.



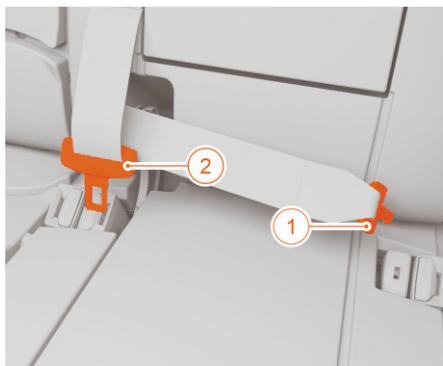
Before closing a door, make sure that the seat belt will not be stuck in the door. Otherwise, the seat belt and door will be damaged.

5

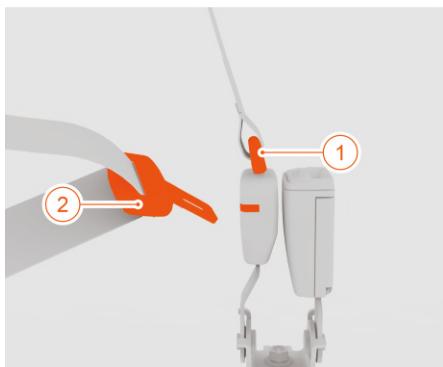
## Rear middle seat belts

The rear middle seat belt is a three-point belt, and the operation of wearing and unbuckling is as follows:

1. Insert the seat belt latch plate 1 into the left buckle of the rear middle seat. Then, insert the seat belt latch plate 2 into the right buckle of the rear middle seat.



2. Press the right seat belt buckle of the rear middle seat, unbuckle the middle rear seat belt latch plate 2, then turn up the rear seat cushion assembly. Insert the seat belt latch plate 2 into the buckle to release the seat belt latch plate 1, and recover the rear seat belt assembly.



### Seat belt pretensioner

The driver's and front passenger's seat belts are equipped with a seat belt pretensioner, respectively. In case of vehicle collision, it will tighten the seat belt to ensure the safety of front-row occupants. The pre-tensioner can only

work once. After a collision, it is necessary to contact a Riddara authorised service centre for a new pre-tensioner, and it may be necessary to replace other parts of the seat belt system.

### Seat belt unfastened alarm

The vehicle is equipped with unfastened seat belt warning for driver and unfastened seat belt warning for front passenger to remind the driver and front passenger to fasten their seat belts.

### Warning lamp and buzzer

- When the start switch is ON, if the vehicle is driven at a speed of less than or equal to 10 km/h and at a distance of within 300 meters, or when the gear is in position R and the driver or front passenger doesn't fasten the seat belt, the seat belt warning lamp will be on. The warning lamp goes out when the driver and front passenger have fastened their seat belts.
- When the vehicle is driven at a speed greater than 10 km/h and less than or equal to 25 km/h or at a distance greater than 300 meters, if the driver or front passenger seat belt is not fastened or is unbuckled, the warning lamp flashes and the buzzer alerts with a level-1 sound until their seat belts are fastened.

- Suppose that the vehicle is driven at a speed greater than 25 km/h, if the driver's or front passenger's seat belt is not fastened or is unbuckled, the warning lamp flashes and the buzzer alerts with a level-2 sound until their seat belts are fastened.

 Ignoring the warning lamp, prompts, and warning instructions may result in serious injury, vehicle damage or traffic accidents.

Correct use of seat belts can reduce the risk of injury during emergency braking and traffic accidents.

Therefore, always properly wear seat belts while the vehicle is in motion.

## Seat belt maintenance and replacement

### System check for seat belt

Check your seat belt system regularly:

- Check whether the seat belt warning lamp, seat belts, striker pins, latch plates, retractors and fixtures are working properly.
- Check the belt system for other loose or damaged parts that may affect the proper functioning of the seat belt system.
- If a seat belt has cracks or is damaged, replace it immediately.
- Ensure that the seat belt warning lamp is working properly.
- Check whether seat belts are clean and dry.

5

### Seat belt maintenance

Please keep seat belts clean and dry.

 Avoid using bleach or staining the seat belt as it can significantly weaken the integrity of the seat belt. In the event of a collision, the seat belt may not provide adequate protection. Clean the seat belts with mild soap and warm water only. Ensure that the seat belt is completely dry before using it again.

### Replacing seat belt

After an accident, go to a Riddara authorised service centre to check or replace the seat belt assembly. Replace

and repair the parts even if the seat belt system is not in use at the time of the accident.

 In the event of a collision, the seat belt system inside the vehicle may be damaged. Please contact Riddara authorised service centre for replacement as soon as possible.

## Airbags

### Airbag overview

The airbag is one part of the passive safety system and never replace seat belts. Otherwise, it will not be able to play its protective role effectively in the event of an accident.

 Without seat belts, rapid inflation and deployment of airbags can lead to more serious injuries. Therefore, all occupants should fasten their seat belts while driving.

Airbags do not trigger in all accidents due to factors such as the position and angle of impact, the degree of impact, and the characteristics of the collider. The airbag triggers with great force, so the driver and front seat passenger should adjust the seat to the front airbag at a sufficient distance and fasten the seat belt to avoid serious injuries.

**!** There must be no obstacles in the inflating area where the airbag triggers. Nothing should come between the occupant and the airbags. If there is an obstacle between the occupant and the airbags, the airbags may not inflate properly, or throw objects at the occupant when it is activated. This may lead to serious injuries or fatal death.

Do not touch the airbag after it has deployed to avoid burns.

When the airbags are triggered, a small amount of smoke may be released, which may irritate the skin and eyes. Please seek medical attention in case of serious discomfort.

**!** Do not maintain, repair, or replace any part of the airbag system without authorisation. Otherwise, the system may fail to work properly, resulting in serious injury or death.

The airbags can only trigger once! If the airbags have been activated, it must be replaced immediately at a Riddara authorised service centre.

**!** Because airbags deploy with considerable speed and force, do not allow infants, toddlers and children seat on or carry them in front seats with airbags, as this could result in serious injury or death.

## Positions of airbags

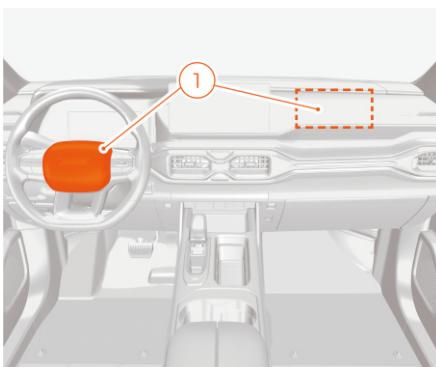
### Front airbags

When a frontal collision occurs, the front airbags, together with the seat

belt, can effectively protect the driver and front passenger from the frontal impact injury.

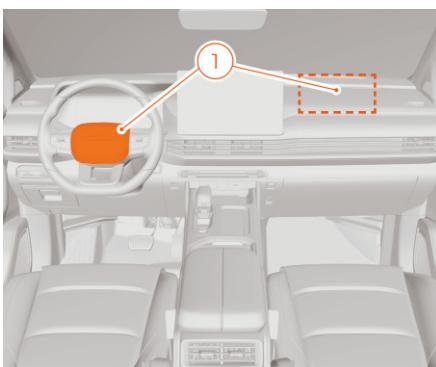
In the event of a moderate to severe frontal collision or near-frontal collision with the vehicle, the airbag system trigger condition is met, causing the airbag to fill with gas to cushion the driver and front passenger from the impact and prevent the driver and front passenger from hitting the steering wheel and dash panel directly.

#### Type I



5

#### Type II



1. Position of front airbags

Two front airbags are respectively installed in the centre of the steering wheel and the upper dash panel of the glove box, marked with the letters "AIRBAG".

 Frontal airbags are not designed for rear impact, slight frontal impact or vehicle overturning, and are not triggered in emergency braking.

The expansion and contraction of the airbag take place in a very short period of time, so the front airbags do not protect against the effects of a possible subsequent second impact.

To make full use of frontal airbag protection, all occupants must fasten their seat belts correctly and sit in the correct position while the vehicle is in motion.

 Do not place any objects or pets in front of the dash panel or glove box, or on the steering wheel equipped with an airbag. They will hinder the deployment of the airbag or cause serious casualties due to the large injection force when the airbag is deployed. Never add, modify, remove, strike, or open any front airbag component or wiring. This may cause the airbag to suddenly inflate or fail to function, leading to serious injury or death.



Do not sit on the edge of a seat or lean on the dash panel while the vehicle is in motion. This may cause serious injury or death to the occupant who is leaning upright or very close to the airbag when it expands. The driver and front passenger must keep at least 25 cm away from the airbags.



In the following cases, you must contact our authorised service centre as soon as possible:

- After the deployment of the front airbags;
- The front of the vehicle is impacted, but the front airbags are not triggered.
- The front airbag cover is cracked, scratched, or otherwise damaged.

### Side airbag (if equipped)

Side airbags are designed to provide further protection as a supplement to the safety protection provided by seat belts for the driver and front passenger. In the event of a moderate to severe side impact, side airbags will inflate to reduce occupant injury together with the seat belt.

Side airbags mainly help reduce chest injuries to the driver or front passenger.



Side airbags are installed inside the backrest of the driver seat and front passenger seat, marked with the letters "AIRBAG".

**⚠** Due to the considerable speed and force of the side airbag when expanded, never put your head or hands outside the window, or head close to the airbag expansion range when the vehicle is in motion, otherwise, it may cause serious injuries or death.

**⚠** Never install a seat cover on the seat equipped with the side airbag, otherwise, it will affect the deployment of the side airbag.

**⚠** Please contact a Riddara authorised service centre immediately in one of the following situations:

- Side airbags deployed.
- The door was impacted, but the side airbags didn't deploy.
- When the seat covering at side airbag assembly was cracked, scratched, or otherwise damaged.

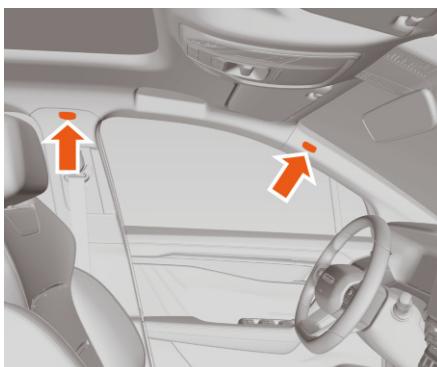


Do not perform the following operations without consulting a Riddara authorised service centre, so as not to affect the normal function of the side airbag:

- Installation of electronic equipment such as mobile two-way radio communication devices.
- Modifications to the side structure of the passenger side.

### Side curtain airbag (if equipped)

Side curtain airbags are designed to provide further protection as a supplement to the safety protection provided by seat belts for the driver and outside rear passengers. In the event of a moderate to severe side impact, side curtain airbags will inflate to reduce occupant injury together with the seat belt. Side curtain airbags mainly help reduce head injuries to the driver, front passenger, and outside rear passengers.



The side curtain airbags are installed above the left and right doors and marked with "AIRBAG".

**!** Due to the considerable speed and force of the side curtain airbag when expanded, never put your head or hands outside the window, or head close to the side curtain airbag expansion range when the vehicle is in motion, otherwise, it may cause serious injuries or death.

**!** Never install any decorative pieces around the side curtain airbags such as on the windscreen, windows, side pillars, and roof sides, or attach microphones or any other devices inside the roof and on the auxiliary handles. When the side curtain airbags are deployed, these items will be thrown out under the side curtain airbag expansion, resulting in injury or affecting the normal function of the side curtain airbags.

**!** Please contact a Riddara authorised service centre immediately in one of the following situations:

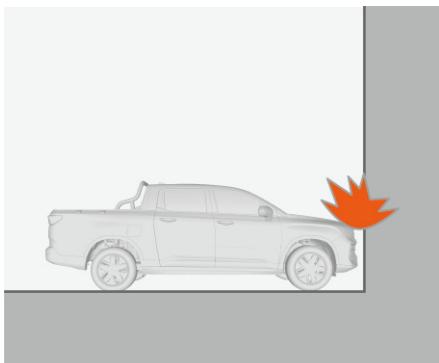
- Side curtain airbags deployed.
- The door was impacted, but the side curtain airbags didn't deploy.
- The side curtain airbags installed in the front pillars, rear pillars, and roof side trim, or roof were scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.

**!** Do not perform the following operations without consulting a Riddara authorised service centre, so as not to affect the normal function of the side curtain airbags:

- Installation of electronic equipment such as mobile two-way radio communication devices.
- Modification of the vehicle suspension.
- Repairs at or near the bracket.

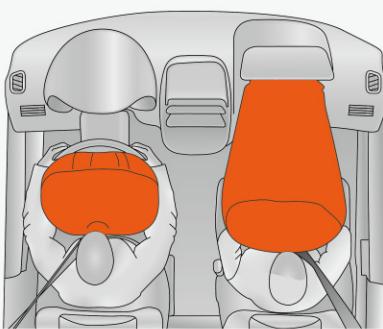
## Airbag deployment

### Front airbag deployment



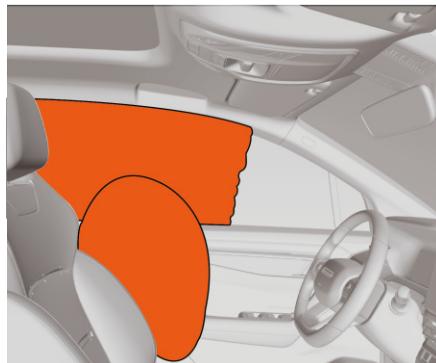
The front airbags expand in the event of a frontal collision with a solid wall at a speed of 25 km/h and above.

**!** In order to reduce the injury caused when the airbag is triggered, the seat belt must be fastened at all times while the vehicle is in motion. Keep safe distance between the driver and front passenger, and the airbags.



In the event of a collision, whether the airbag works depends on the collision object, the collision direction and the speed deceleration of vehicle caused by the collision. In case of severe frontal collision, the front airbag will deploy.

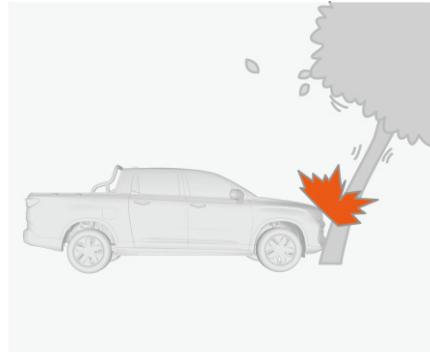
### Deployment of side curtain airbags (if equipped) and side airbags (if equipped)



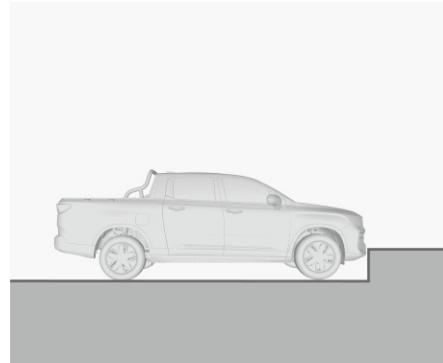
In the event of a moderate to severe side impact that meets the design criteria, the side curtain airbags and the front side airbags can be triggered.

The deployment of the side airbags and side curtain airbags in a side impact can significantly reduce the risk of injury to the upper body and pelvis.

### Front airbag non-deployment cases



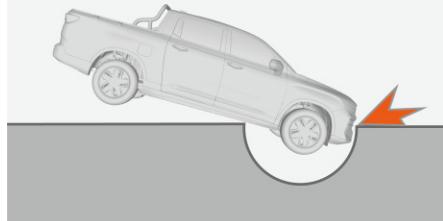
- Vehicles that are not started.
- Colliding with easily deformable objects such as trees.



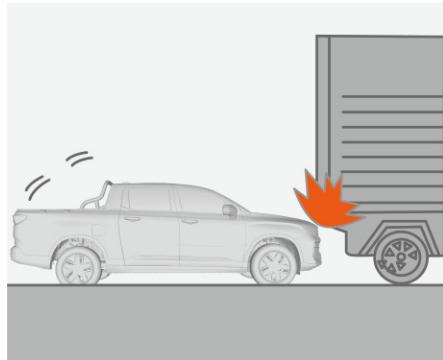
- Strong impact with low obstacle like curb while driving.

- In a side impact, rear impact, or minor frontal collision.
- Faulty airbag system.
- Other special circumstances.

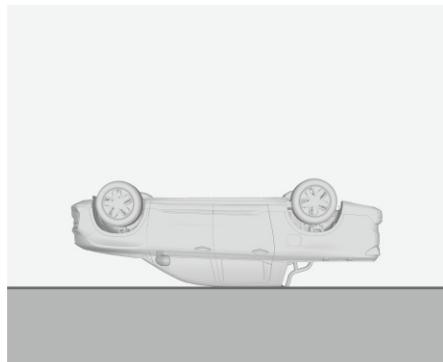
**Side curtain airbags (if equipped) and side airbags (if equipped) non-deployment scenarios**



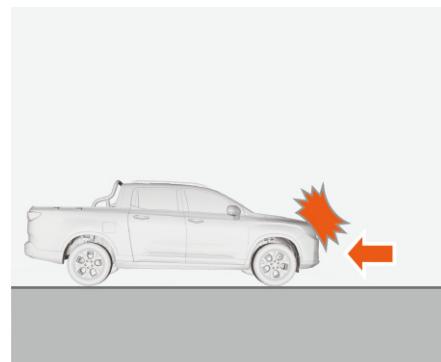
- Falling into a deep pit or ditch.



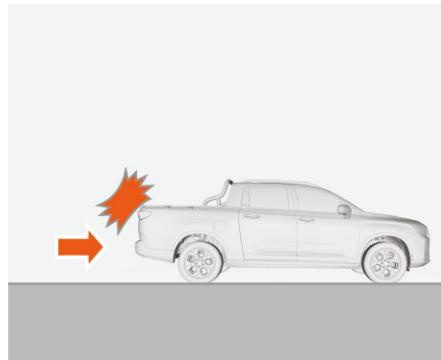
- Having a rear-end collision with a truck.



- Rollover.



- In a front or near-frontal collision.



- In a rear collision.



- Rollover.
- In a minor side collision.
- Faulty airbag system.
- Other special circumstances.

## Airbag maintenance and replacement

### Airbag malfunction indicator lamp



If the airbag malfunction indicator lamp stays on after the vehicle starts or lights up while driving, it indicates a malfunction in the airbag system. This can lead to improper airbag deployment or deployment at inappropriate times. To avoid injuries, contact a Riddara authorised service centre as soon as possible.

### Airbag replacement



The collision may damage the airbag system in the vehicle. After the collision, go to a Riddara authorised service centre promptly for airbag inspection and replacement.

5

### Disposal of vehicle

When selling the vehicle, ensure that the new owner is aware of the replacement date of the airbag installed in the vehicle and the airbag system. In case of car scrapping, the undeployed airbag is potentially dangerous, so before scrapping, it must be detonated by the professional personnel.

## Child restraint system

### Selecting child restraint system

The information about the applicability of child seats at different seats is shown below (child seats are fixed with safety belts):

| Group                    | Child's weight | Front passenger seat | Rear outer passenger seat | Rear middle passenger seat |
|--------------------------|----------------|----------------------|---------------------------|----------------------------|
| 0                        | <10 kg         | X                    | U                         | X                          |
| 0+                       | <13 kg         | X                    | U                         | X                          |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 9-18KG         | X                    | U                         | X                          |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 15-25KG        | X                    | U                         | X                          |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 22-36KG        | X                    | U                         | X                          |

The meanings of the keywords in the above table: U = The general-purpose child restraints certified for this group are applicable here; X = The child restraints certified for this group are not applicable here.

Information on the applicability of child safety seats on vehicle seats, on condition that the child safety seats are secured with an ISOFIX child restraint system:

| Group                    | Child's weight | Size category | Fixture module | Front passenger seat | Rear outer passenger seat | Rear middle passenger seat |
|--------------------------|----------------|---------------|----------------|----------------------|---------------------------|----------------------------|
| Portable baby crib       | -              | F             | ISO/L1         | X                    | X                         | X                          |
|                          |                | G             | ISO/L2         | X                    | X                         | X                          |
| 0                        | <10 kg         | E             | ISO/R1         | X                    | IL                        | X                          |
| 0+                       | <13 kg         | E             | ISO/R1         | X                    | IL                        | X                          |
|                          |                | D             | ISO/R2         | X                    | IL                        | X                          |
|                          |                | C             | ISO/R3         | X                    | IL                        | X                          |
|                          |                | D             | ISO/R2         | X                    | IL                        | X                          |
| <input type="checkbox"/> | 9-18KG         | D             | ISO/R2         | X                    | IL                        | X                          |
|                          |                | C             | ISO/R3         | X                    | IL                        | X                          |
|                          |                | B             | ISO/F2         | X                    | IUF                       | X                          |

| Group | Child's weight | Size category | Fixture module | Front passenger seat | Rear outer passenger seat | Rear middle passenger seat |
|-------|----------------|---------------|----------------|----------------------|---------------------------|----------------------------|
|       |                | B1            | ISO/F2X        | X                    | IUF                       | X                          |
|       |                | A             | ISO/F3         | X                    | IUF                       | X                          |

The meanings of the keywords in the table above: IL= this seat can accommodate ISOFIX child restraint system of semi universal category according to the vehicle list attached to the child seat; IUF= this seat can accommodate ISOFIX child restraint system which is of general category and fixed with the fixing belt TOPTETHER; X= this seat is not equipped with the fixing ring for the ISOFIX system.

## Using child restraint system

### Infants and older children

#### Infants

**!** If the shoulder belt crosses the neck of a child, the child will be severely injured and even killed when the seat belt is tightened gradually. Do not leave children in vehicle alone and do not allow them to play with seat belts.



Neither seat belt system nor airbag system in vehicles are designed to protect infants and children. Infants or children shall be always protected with corresponding child restraint system.



**!** Do not use rear-facing child restraint system in a seat protected by a front airbag (activated)! Do not allow infants and children to cling to or get too close to an airbag. This can cause serious injuries and death when the airbag inflates. Never install a rear-facing child restraint system in the front passenger seat. Rear-facing and front-facing child restraint systems should be secured to the rear seat.

**!** Do not hold an infant or child in your arms when riding in the vehicle. In the event of a collision, infants and children cannot be held due to the impact of the collision, and they should be fixed with appropriate child restraint systems.

**⚠** The neck of infants and children is not fully developed, and their head is heavier than other parts of the body. To reduce the risk of neck and head injuries in a crash, infants and children need comprehensive support.

In the event of accidents, infants seated in the rear-facing child restraint system will remain securely positioned, and the collision's impact force be dispersed to the sturdiest parts of the infant's body, i.e. the back and shoulder. The infant shall be always secured in the rear-facing child restraint system. Because infants have small hip bones, standard vehicle seat belts may not properly secure them around the hips, and instead tend to move upward, fastening across the infant's abdomen. This could result in severe injuries or death in the event of a collision. Hence, it is essential to always use the appropriate child restraint system for infants. It is recommended that children under four years old use rear-facing child restraint system.

### Older children

Older children to whom child safety seats are no longer suitable shall wear safety belts.



The instructions attached to the child restraint system state the weight and height limits for the child sitting in it. Children who meet the following applicable conditions are required to use a child seat in conjunction with a seat belt:

- Sit as far back in the seat as possible. Children cannot bend their knees at the edge of the seat.
- Fasten the seat belt. Shoulder belts cannot be placed on children's shoulders.
- The seat belt could not fit low and snug across child's hips.
- Failure to wear the seat belt properly while the vehicle is in motion.

Older children should fasten seat belts correctly. Do not put the seat belt across the child's face or neck. The seat belt must snug across the child's hip to provide additional protection in accidents.

Never wear a seat belt around the abdomen. This may cause serious injury in the event of accidents.

## Seat and protection device

In the event of a collision, children who are not wearing seat belts can hit others or be thrown out of the vehicle, resulting in serious injury or death.



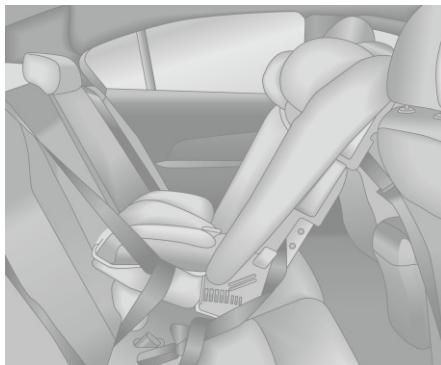
**⚠** Never let two children share a seat belt, otherwise, the seat belt will not be able to disperse the impact force correctly, which will cause serious casualties in the event of a collision.



**⚠** Never let a child put the shoulder belt behind the back, otherwise, it could cause severe injuries or death in a collision. The seat belt should go over the shoulder and across the chest.

## Instructions for child restraint system

### Rear-facing child seat



The rear-facing child seat has a backrest that fits closely with the children's back, thus providing optimum protection. The seat belt will hold the children in place so that they can stay in the child seat in a collision. It is recommended to install an ISOFIX fixed child seat that meets regulatory requirements or is recommended or certified by Riddara.

**⚠** Do not use a rear-facing child seat in a seat protected by a front airbag (activated)!

### Front-facing child seat



The front-facing child seat can protect the infant by binding the child with the restraint belt. It is recommended to use an ISOFIX fixed front-facing child seat that meets regulatory requirements or is recommended or certified by Riddara.

### Booster seat



The booster seat is a child restraint system designed to improve the applicability of the seat belt system.

### Installing child restraint system

Children and infants are safer when properly secured in child restraint system in the rear seat.

 When installing the child restraint system to the rear seat, please read the attached instructions to ensure that it is suitable for the vehicle and can be correctly installed.

### Sun visor retracted



5

### Extending sun visor (Type I)



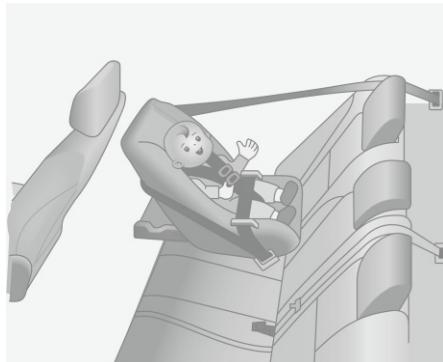
### Extending sun visor (Type II)



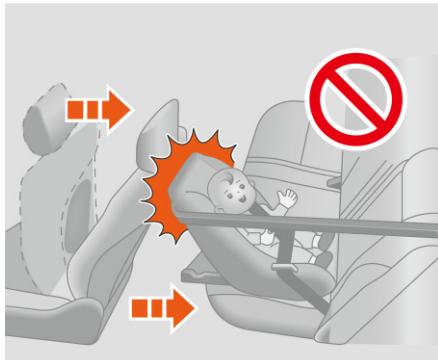
There are warning labels on the front and back of the front passenger's sun visor, indicating that the vehicle is equipped with a front airbag. Please observe the information on the labels.

### Installing seat belt

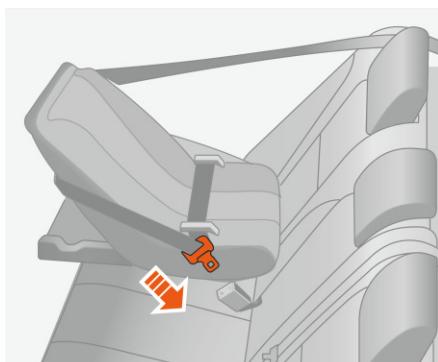
#### Installing rear-facing child seat



The rear-facing child seat should be installed in a rear-facing position.



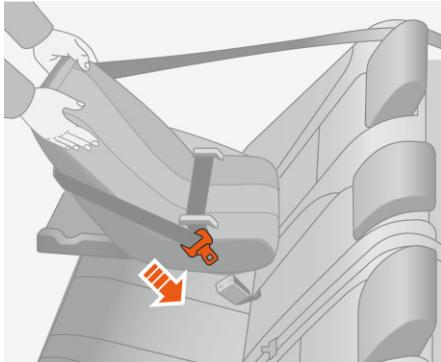
**!** Rear-facing child seat should not be installed in the rear seats if the installation of a rear-facing child seat would interfere with the adjustment of the front seats. Otherwise, during emergency braking or collision, it may cause serious injury even death to the child and front passenger.



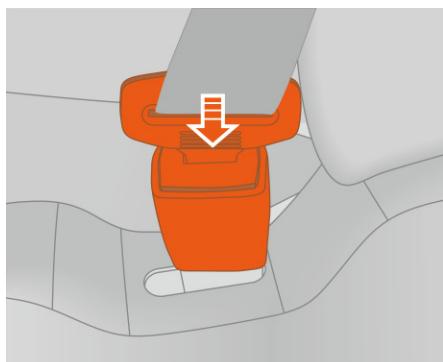
According to the instructions provided by the rear-facing child seat manufacturer, pass the seat belt through or around the rear-facing child seat, and insert the latch plate into the belt buckle, taking care not to twist the belt. Keep the seat belt tight.

**!** After inserting the latch plate, ensure that the latch plate and buckle are firmly locked and that the belt is not twisted. Do not insert coins, paper clips, and other objects into the belt buckle to prevent the obstruction of the latch plate and the belt buckle from latching properly.

If the belt buckle is not working properly, go to a Riddara authorised service centre for inspection and repair immediately. Do not occupy the seat until the lock is repaired.



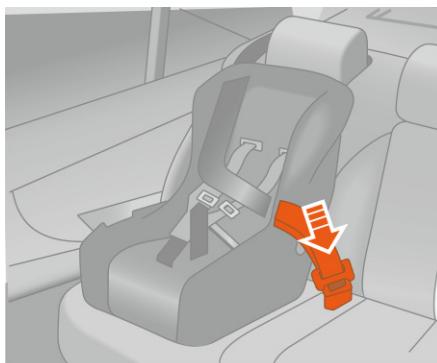
Push and pull the rear-facing child seat in different directions to ensure that it is secured.



To remove the rear-facing child seat, press the release button.

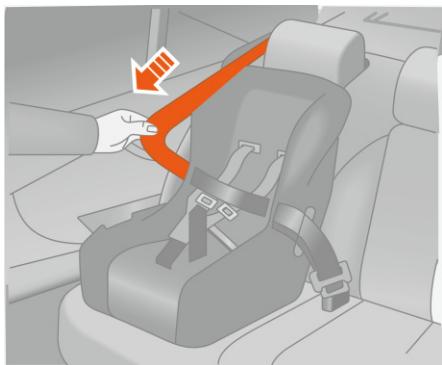
#### Installing front-facing child seat

When installing a front-facing child seat, it is recommended to install it on the ISOFIX fixed point of the rear seat.

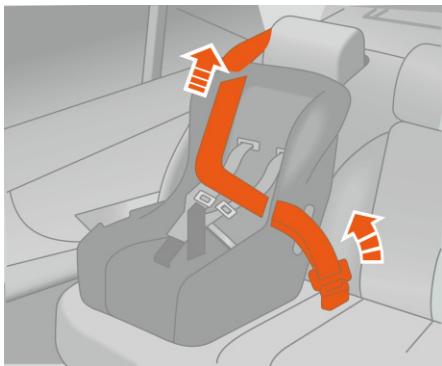


5

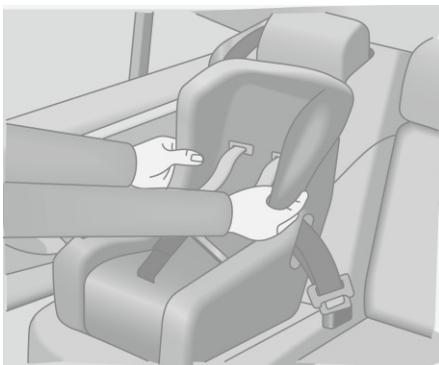
According to the instructions provided by the manufacturer, pass the seat belt through or around the front-facing child seat, and insert the latch plate into the belt buckle, please notice that the seat belt is not twisted, and pull the seat belt tight.



Pull the seat belt completely out to the locked position. When the seat belt retracts slightly, it cannot be pulled out again. Before it retracts, make sure it is locked so that the front-facing child seat is secured.

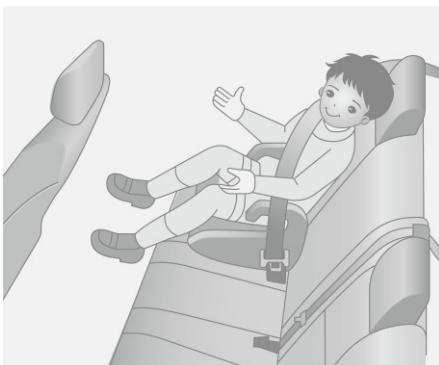


When pressing the front-facing child seat towards the seat cushion and seat backrest, allow the seat belt to fully retract and secure the front-facing child seat tightly.



Push and pull the front-facing child seat in different directions to ensure that it is secured.

### Installing booster seat



According to the instructions provided by the manufacturer, pass the seat belt around the child, and insert the latch plate into the belt buckle. Be aware that the seat belt shall not be twisted. Make sure that the seat belt crosses the child's shoulders and snug across the child's hips. For details, see the section "Seat Belt". To remove the booster seat, press the release button of the buckle.

**⚠** Make sure that the shoulder belt crosses the centre of the shoulder of the child. Keep the seat belt away from the child's neck, but do not place it underneath the child's shoulders and arms, as this could result in severe injury or fatality.

## Installing ISOFIX fixings



ISOFIX fixings are fitted between the seat cushions and backrests of the rear outer seats. These fixing interfaces are designed for securely attaching standard ISO-compliant child restraint systems to the rear seats. In this case, it is not necessary to secure the child restraint system with the seat belt. When installing and using a child restraint system, please follow the manufacturer's instructions to ensure optimal protection.

**⚠** It is essential to verify with the child restraint system manufacturer whether the seat is suitable for use in the specific vehicle model.

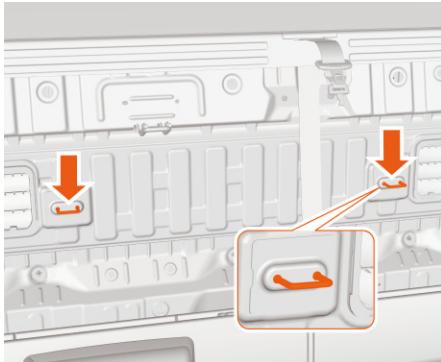
Install a child seat with a top tether (taking LACTH seat as an example) according to the following steps:

1. Put the child seat on the rear outer seat.
2. Find the ISOFIX fixings between the seat cushion and the backrest and manually widen the gap between the cushion and the backrest if necessary.



5

3. Align the ISOFIX connector of the child seat with the ISOFIX fixings on the seat and insert.
4. Hold the child seat by the sides and pull outwards to ensure that the clasps are properly locked.
5. Pull the headrest up to the highest position and then pass the upper fastening strap of the child seat through the middle area of the headrest guide.



6. Fold the corresponding side seat backrest slightly forward and lock the upper fastening strap of the child seat to the hooks in the back.
7. Tighten the upper fastening strap of the child seat.
8. Lower the head restraint to the lowest position and press down on the upper fastening strap of the child seat.
9. Make sure any unused seat belt within the reach of children is locked.

**i** Ensure that the upper fastening straps of the child seat are securely locked and check that they are fastened by pushing and pulling the child seat in different directions, following the instructions provided by the manufacturer.

If the child restraint system is not installed to the ISOFIX fixing points correctly, it may not work properly, resulting in serious injury or death to the child. Always observe the manufacturer's instructions when installing the child restraint system.

**i** Child restraint system fixing points are designed only to carry loads imposed by a properly installed child restraint system. Do not use them for securing seat belts, wiring harnesses or other items and equipment under any circumstances.

Be sure to install a child restraint system when the vehicle is stationary. When the ISOFIX child restraint system is properly fixed to the ISOFIX fixing points, a "click" sound will be heard.

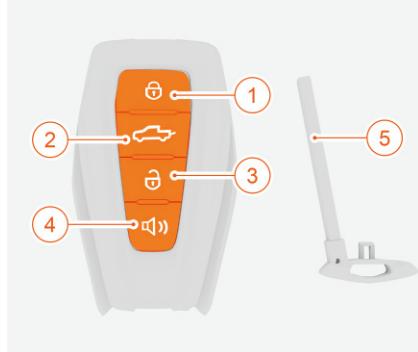
## Key

### Smart key

#### Introduction to key buttons

The smart key has been matched to the vehicle system. If the smart key is lost, damaged, or stolen, please contact a Riddara authorised service centre as soon as possible. Its control functions such as starting, locking and unlocking will be deactivated. If it is found back, the Riddara authorised service centre can reactivate its functions.

**i** The new smart key cannot be provided to you immediately. It takes some time for the Riddara authorised service centre to match a new smart key with your vehicle.



1. Lock button
2. Tailgate unlock button
3. Unlock button
4. Vehicle locating button
5. Mechanical key



Please carry the key with you when leaving the vehicle. If the key is left in the vehicle and the start switch is on, it may lead to danger or unauthorised or accidental use of the key.

Please keep a spare smart key in a safe place and do not leave it in the vehicle.

#### Taking mechanical key out



Press the release button on the back of the smart key to take out the mechanical key.

6

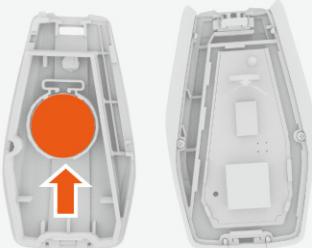
#### Replacing smart key battery

When the smart key is very close to the vehicle but cannot control the vehicle, or when the vehicle fails to recognize the smart key due to a low battery, the battery in the smart key needs to be replaced:

1. Take out the mechanical key, gently insert it into the middle of the opening, and then hold the handle to pry open the back cover of the key.



2. After opening the smart key case, replace with a new battery and make sure that the positive electrode of the battery is in the correct position.



3. Snap the two halves of the smart key case into place.
4. Model of battery for smart key: 3V, CR2032.

**⚠** The smart key is equipped with precise circuit that must be protected against shock, water, heat, humidity, direct sunlight, solvents, waxes and scrubbing agents.



Due to the inherent characteristics of the battery, it's advisable to avoid prolonged exposure to cold environments. Extended exposure to low temperatures can trigger a low battery warning, which may impact both the smart key's functionality and the vehicle's operation.



If the smart key is interfered with other signals, the vehicle may experience issues such as not detecting the key, being unable to start, unlock, or lock.

- The smart key is covered by metal objects, for example, when being placed together with mobile phones with metal protective cases.
- The smart key is placed next to the accessory power supply or within the range where it is disturbed when external devices and equipment are working with an accessory power outlet.
- The smart key is placed next to electronic products with strong interference, such as laptops, Bluetooth headsets, working power conversion heads with chargers, Bluetooth access cards, walkie-talkies, and other devices with strong interference.

## Immobiliser

### Immobiliser

The vehicle is equipped with a passive anti-theft system. The system does not need to be manually activated or deactivated. The immobiliser is automatically deactivated when the start switch is pressed and a valid smart key is found in the vehicle.

Start by placing the smart key in the designated position. For details, refer to "Start Operations". If the vehicle still fails to start, you need to contact a Riddara service centre for inspection and repair.



Do not leave the smart key in the vehicle.

If the smart key is interfered with by other signals, the vehicle may not start.

For detailed information, refer to "Smart Key".

When the immobiliser is activated but cannot be deactivated, the vehicle will issue an alarm notification.

## Vehicle locking and unlocking

### Locking and unlocking

#### Smart key



Smart keys only work within certain limits. For safety reasons, always verify the success of the vehicle locking operation.

When the start switch is in the OFF position and all doors are closed, the vehicle can be locked with the smart key.

If the unlocked vehicle is parked for a long time, it may cause the low-voltage battery of the vehicle to run out of power and prevent the vehicle from starting.



When the smart key or central lock fails, the left front door can be unlocked or locked with the mechanical key.

### Remote locking and unlocking

#### Unlocking

When you briefly press the unlock button on the smart key again, the four doors unlock and the turn signal lamp flashes three times.

 For vehicles with door unlocking and locking mode selection feature, if the driver door mode is selected, when the unlock button on the smart key is briefly pressed for the first time, only the driver door is unlocked, and the turn signal lamp flashes three times. When you briefly press the unlock button on the smart key again, the four doors unlock and the turn signal lamp flashes three times.

#### Locking

Briefly press the lock button on the smart key. Then, the four doors lock, and the turn signal lamp stay on for a few seconds. In the event that any of the four doors is not closed, when you press the lock button on the smart key, the vehicle sounds an alarm to remind the driver.

 Never leave smart keys inside the vehicle or where children can access them. Children might accidentally operate vehicle controls like parking brakes or window controllers, which could result in serious injuries or fatalities.

### Keyless access system



The keyless access function requires the start switch to be in the OFF position with all doors closed for use.

When the vehicle is in a substation, mobile phone base station, TV tower, charging pile and other interference environment, the keyless access function may fail. When the function fails, please use the mechanical key to lock or unlock.

When electronic devices such as mobile phones, laptops, Bluetooth headphones, and Bluetooth access cards are placed together with the smart key, the keyless access function may fail. When the function fails, keep the smart key at a certain distance from the electronic devices.

You can also lock or unlock the device with a mechanical key.

After repeatedly unlocking and locking the vehicle, the door lock system will automatically enter the protection state, and the operation will be unresponsive. After dozens of seconds, the door lock can respond to unlock or lock action again.

When the smart key battery is too low, the keyless access function may fail. It's necessary to use mechanical key to unlock or lock the door on the driver side, and promptly go to a Riddara authorised service centre to replace the smart key battery.

## Keyless unlocking

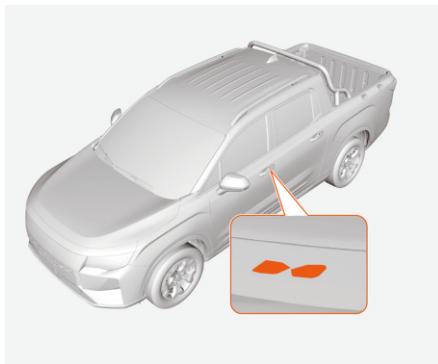


## Unlock sensor area

When you approach the vehicle with a valid smart key, simply place your hand in the unlock sensor area on the driver door handle. This action will trigger the automatic unlocking of all four doors. Pull the door handle, and the door will open effortlessly. Once all four doors are unlocked, the turn signal lamps will flash three times.

- i** If the vehicle remains unused for an extended period, approximately one week, this feature will automatically deactivate. To reactivate the system, simply restart the vehicle. Additionally, if the driver carries the smart key and remains in close proximity to the vehicle without any vehicle-related actions for several minutes, this feature will also automatically deactivate. In this case, alternative methods can still be used to unlock the vehicle.

## Keyless locking



## Lock sensor area

When you approach the vehicle with a valid smart key, simply place your hand in the lock sensor area on the driver door handle. This action will trigger the automatic locking of all four doors. When the vehicle is locked, the turn signal lamps will flash once.

- i** If the vehicle remains unused for an extended period, approximately one week, this feature will automatically deactivate. To reactivate the system, simply restart the vehicle. Additionally, if the driver carries the smart key and remains in close proximity to the vehicle without any vehicle-related actions for several minutes, this feature will also automatically deactivate. In this case, alternative methods can still be used to unlock the vehicle.

### Locking and unlocking using mechanical key

 In case the smart key or central control button fails, the door can be unlocked or locked by the mechanical key.

The door check needs to be greased regularly, or the opening and closing of the door may make an abnormal noise.



#### Locking and unlocking driver door using mechanical key

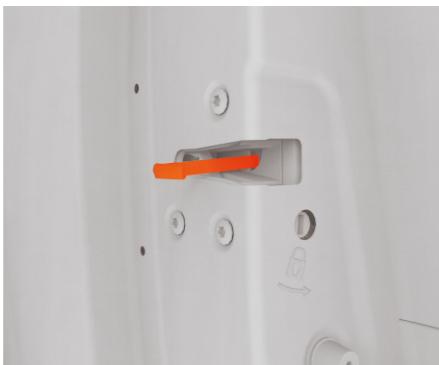
1. Take out mechanical key from smart key.



2. Lift the cover of the driver door lock and remove it, then insert the mechanical key into the keyhole.

3. Insert the mechanical key into the driver's door lock and turn the mechanical key to unlock/lock the door.

#### Locking front passenger door and rear doors using mechanical key



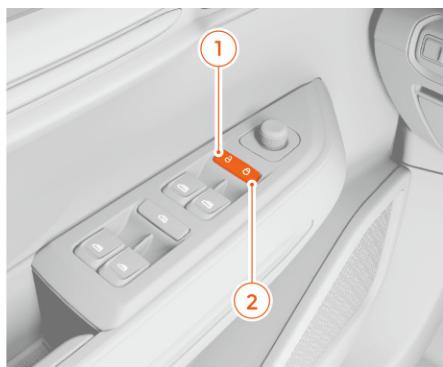
In case of vehicle power failure, the mechanical key can be used to lock the front passenger door and rear doors follow the steps below:

1. Take out mechanical key from smart key.
2. Insert the mechanical key into the groove at the door lock latch, and push it downward.

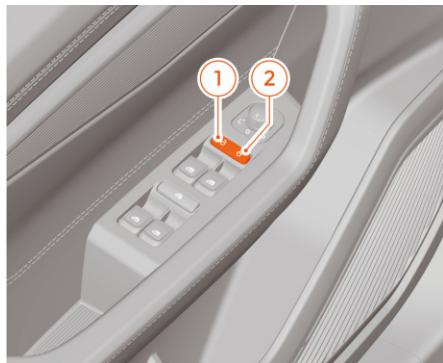
- Pull out the mechanical key and close the door to complete the locking process.

## Locking and unlocking from inside

### Type I



### Type II



- Unlock button
- Lock button

When all four doors are closed, press the lock button to lock all doors.

When all four doors are locked, press the unlock button to unlock all doors.



The unlocking of the central control button in the vehicle can only be executed in the anti-theft release state.

## Automatic locking and unlocking

### Automatic relocking

Unlock all four doors using smart key while the vehicle is locked. If the four doors are not opened within 30 seconds, the vehicle automatically locks.

### Automatic door locking while driving

When the start switch is in the ON position and the vehicle speed is greater than 20 km/h (Actual speed), the four doors will be automatically locked.

### Smart key left-in-vehicle reminder

When the start switch is in the OFF position, if the smart key remains inside the vehicle, the system will sound an alarm when locking doors via keyless entry. This reminds you the key was left inside.

### Automatic unlocking on power off

After the vehicle is automatically locked, if the vehicle is stopped and the start switch is turned off, the doors are automatically unlocked.

### Automatic unlocking on collision

In the event of a severe collision during driving, all four doors will automatically unlock, allowing occupants to quickly exit the vehicle.

## Vehicle locating function

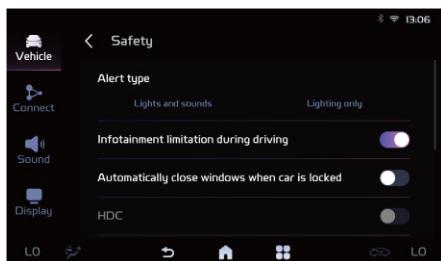
When you cannot confirm the location of your vehicle, you can use this function to find the specific location of your vehicle.

The start switch is in the OFF position and the door is closed and locked, quickly short-press the vehicle locating button on the smart key twice to activate the vehicle locating function and remind you of the vehicle's location.

### Alert type

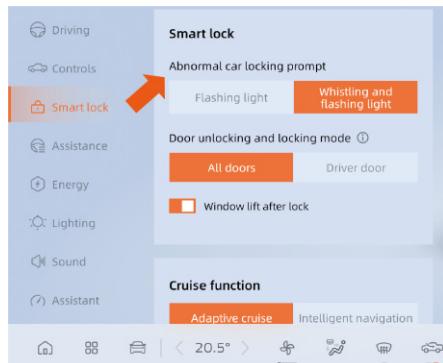
If special situations prevent normal door locking (e.g., doors not fully closed), the vehicle will sound an alarm. You can set the alert type through the multimedia display.

#### Type I



Tap: Settings → Vehicle → Safety in turn on the multimedia display, where alert type can be selected.

#### Type II



On the multimedia display, tap My car → Smart lock. You can select the alert type.

## Opening and closing cargo compartment tailgate

### Unlocking cargo compartment tailgate from inside (if equipped)



When the vehicle is stationary and the external anti-theft alarm system is disarming, short-press the tailgate opening switch to pre-unlock the tailgate, and press the tailgate

unlocking switch within 180 seconds to open the tailgate.

**Central unlocking of cargo compartment tailgate (Type I)**



**Central unlocking of cargo compartment tailgate (Type II)**



When the vehicle is stationary and the external anti-theft alarm system is disarming, press the central unlocking switch to pre-unlock the tailgate, and press the tailgate unlock switch to open the tailgate.

**⚠ There is no time limit after the central locking pre-unlocks the cargo compartment tailgate.**

**Unlock using smart key**



When the vehicle is stationary and the external anti-theft alarm system is disarming, briefly press the tailgate unlock button or vehicle unlock button on the smart key to pre-unlock the tailgate, and press the tailgate unlock switch within 180 seconds to open the tailgate.

**⚠ There is no time limit after the vehicle unlock button pre-unlocks the cargo compartment tailgate.**

6

**Deactivating pre-unlock**

During the pre-unlock timing period, central locking will stop the pre-unlock timing. Pressing the tailgate unlock switch cannot open the tailgate.

### Closing cargo compartment tailgate



Lift the edge of the tailgate, and force the tailgate forward to lock it.

After closing the cargo compartment tailgate, verify that it is fully locked by trying to push and pull the upper edge of the cargo compartment tailgate.

### Door handle

#### Type I



#### Type II



When the door is unlocked, you can open the door by using the inner or outer handle.

### Child safety lock



The vehicle is equipped with child safety locks on rear doors. When there are children sitting in the rear seats on either side, please use the child safety locks.

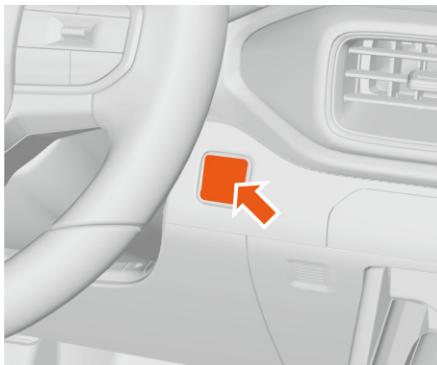
The child safety lock switch is located on the outer edge of the rear door. Insert the mechanical key into the child safety lock and rotate it in the

direction shown in the diagram. This will place the child safety lock in the "open" position, preventing the doors from being opened from the inside of the vehicle. For the safety of child passengers, the doors can only be opened from the outside.

**!** After setting the child safety lock, be sure to test whether you can open the door from inside the vehicle to ensure that the child safety lock is working properly.

## Vehicle start

### Start switch (keyless start)



The vehicle is equipped with a start switch for push-button start. To activate the system, the smart key that matches the vehicle must be in the vehicle and detected.

The status of the start switch includes:  
OFF: The vehicle is turned off when the start switch is in this position. When the start switch is in the OFF mode, the vehicle can be started by depressing the brake pedal and pressing the start switch.



If the push-button start does not work, it may be because the vehicle is near a strong electromagnetic field, which interferes with the keyless start.

ACC: This position allows the use of some of the electrical appliances when the vehicle is not started. When the vehicle is not started, pressing the start switch once without depressing the brake pedal will set the start switch to

## Starting and driving

the ACC position. When the start switch is in the ACC mode, by depressing the brake pedal and pressing the start switch, you can start the vehicle to turn it into a drivable state.

**ON:** When the start switch is in the ACC position, pressing the start switch once without depressing the brake pedal will set the start switch to the ON position. Pressing the switch again will set the start switch back to the OFF position.

**START:** This position starts the vehicle

and the **READY** indicator lamp on the instrument cluster illuminates.

**!** Do not leave the smart key in the vehicle or within the reach of children, as children may operate the vehicle with the key, resulting in serious injury or death.

### Start operation

Depress the brake pedal and press the start switch to start the vehicle. If the smart key is not inside the vehicle or is subject to some interference, the instrument cluster displays a reminder that the key has not been detected. If the battery in the smart key needs to be replaced, see the "Replacing Smart Key Battery" section in this chapter.



As long as all start conditions are met, the vehicle will start after the start switch is pressed. After the vehicle starts, the READY indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, and the vehicle is ready for driving.



When electronic devices such as mobile phones and laptops are placed together with the smart key, the keyless entry function may fail. When the function fails, keep the smart key at a certain distance from the electronic devices. Please try to place the smart key near the armrest box of the console.

### Backup start function

When the vehicle is in a strong signal interference area, the smart key battery is low, or the keyless start function fails, if you try to start the vehicle and press the start switch, the instrument cluster may have a text message indicating that the vehicle cannot be started through the push-button start procedure.

Please follow the steps below to start the vehicle:

1. Move the electronic shift lever to Park (P) or Neutral (N) position.



2. Place the smart key flat in the storage compartment beneath the front centre armrest, either in the illustrated area or at the position marked with the key symbol.
3. Depress the brake pedal.
4. Press the start switch.

## Vehicle start failure

Before carrying out the inspection, it is necessary to start the vehicle in accordance with the correct starting procedure, and confirm whether the high-voltage battery and low-voltage battery have enough power.

This vehicle is equipped with an electronic anti-theft system. System or smart key malfunctions may prevent normal engine starting. If you suspect a smart key or system malfunction, have your vehicle serviced at an authorised service centre as soon as possible.

If the vehicle occasionally fails to start:

1. Check whether the low-voltage battery terminals are tightened and clean.

2. If there is no problem with the terminals of the low-voltage battery, turn on interior lighting. When starting the vehicle, if the interior lighting do not light up, dim, or go out, it indicates that the low-voltage battery has run out of charge. You can try to jump-start the vehicle, please refer to the "Jump Start" section in "Faults on the Road".

**⚠** If the interior lighting is in normal condition, but the vehicle does not start, please contact a Riddara authorised service centre for inspection and repair.

## Driving

In the following cases, special attention should be paid to the lower positioned parts on the vehicle to avoid scratching the vehicle chassis.

- When driving on roads in poor conditions.
- When driving over the road edge.
- When driving on steep slopes.

**⚠** Special care should be taken when the vehicle is fully loaded.

## Breaking-in new vehicle

Breaking-in a new vehicle is mainly to improve the surface quality and friction and wear status of the moving parts, extend the service life and reduce the power or fuel consumption. During the break-in period of a new vehicle, the

## Starting and driving

following requirements should be complied with when using it:

- Avoid depressing the accelerator pedal to the bottom when starting and driving.
- In the break-in period, the vehicle should run on flat roads rather than muddy or sandy roads.
- Avoid idling the drive motor or engine.
- Avoid rapid acceleration.
- Avoid emergency braking within the first 300 kilometres.
- Do not drive at the same speed for a long time.

### When driving the vehicle

1. Depress and hold the brake pedal, shift the gear from N to D, and the shift position indicator on the instrument cluster will display D.
2. Release the electronic parking brake.
3. When you release the brake pedal, the vehicle begins to creep. After gently depressing the accelerator pedal, the vehicle officially begins its journey.
4. To accelerate the vehicle, gradually depress the accelerator pedal. To drive at a constant speed, depress and hold the accelerator pedal at a certain opening.
5. If braking, depress the brake pedal.
6. To reverse the vehicle, depress the brake pedal until the vehicle comes to a steady stop and remains

stationary, then move the electronic shift lever to the R position, release the brake pedal and lightly depress the accelerator pedal.

 To avoid losing control of the vehicle, do not depress the accelerator pedal during a gear shift.

 Do not depress the brake pedal and accelerator pedal at the same time.

 Avoid emergency braking during driving. Decelerate the vehicle as much as possible when turning a corner, and avoid sharp turns.

 When the vehicle is in READY state and the electronic shift lever is in D position, be sure to depress the brake pedal or use the parking brake; otherwise, the vehicle will creep. When parking and leaving the vehicle, always use the parking brake and move the electronic shift lever to P position.

### Eco driving

Vehicle driving range, high-voltage battery capacity and energy consumption are affected by driving habits, storage conditions, charging methods, high-voltage battery temperature, etc. Good usage habits and driving style can improve the vehicle's driving range.

1. Smooth start and acceleration: The energy consumption is high during

starting and acceleration. When driving, avoid starting and accelerating the vehicle by depressing the accelerator pedal sharply as much as possible. Smooth starting and acceleration are beneficial for saving energy.

2. Maintain economical speeds, i.e., 40-60 km/h on urban/suburban roads and 80-100 km/h on motorways. On the premise of safe driving, maintaining a constant economical speed consumes less fuel.

3. Avoid unnecessary braking: Control the following distance from the vehicle in front and try to avoid frequent braking. Slow down at red lights and allow the vehicle to slide to avoid sudden braking.

4. Make rational use of energy recovery system: To maximise the benefits of the energy recovery system while maintaining safety, adapt your braking intensity according to road conditions and vehicle dynamics. For optimal energy recovery, favour gentle braking to gradually reduce speed, avoiding harsh deceleration whenever possible.

5. Keep the vehicle's wind resistance low: Opening windows at high driving speeds can significantly increase the vehicle's wind resistance, leading to higher energy consumption. Keep the windows closed when the vehicle speed is above 80 km/h.

6. Maintain the correct tyre pressure: Check the tyre pressure regularly. Too low tyre pressure may increase the tyre rolling resistance and lead to increased energy consumption.

7. Make rational use of air conditioning: Utilize the air conditioning only as needed. Heating and cooling operations significantly increase energy consumption, thus reducing electric range or raising fuel consumption. Rational use of air conditioning can effectively lower power and fuel consumption. The recirculation mode enhances energy savings. Windows can be opened for ventilation at low speeds.

8. Reduce the vehicle load: Every extra kilogram of weight can increase energy consumption. Regularly clear unnecessary luggage and items on the vehicle.

9. Have vehicle service as scheduled. Have the vehicle serviced as scheduled to keep it in good operating condition. An engine in good operating condition not only helps to improve driving safety but also contributes to reducing fuel consumption.

10. Plan the driving route: Optimize the route and try to avoid congested roads. This saves time and reduces energy consumption.

11. Do not arbitrarily change the size of the tyres: Using larger or wider

tyres can lead to higher energy consumption.

12. Driving mode selection: Using ECO mode while driving can reduce the energy consumption of the vehicle and increase the driving range. On the contrary, choosing the SPORT mode will increase the energy consumption of the vehicle and shorten the driving range.

 When driving the vehicle, it is necessary to ensure safe driving and comply with traffic laws and regulations, and avoid disrupting others or the flow of public traffic.

### Parking on combustibles

 Do not park on paper, leaves, hay, or other flammable materials; otherwise, fire and accidents can be caused by the contact of combustible materials with high-temperature parts of the vehicle.

### Driving with care

First of all, fasten the seat belt.

 Defensive driving: The driver can accurately "foresee" the danger caused by other drivers, pedestrians, bad weather or poor road conditions during driving, and can take necessary, reasonable and effective measures in time to prevent accidents.



Pay special attention to pedestrian safety, as electric vehicles are less noisy and pedestrians may not be aware when the vehicle is approaching. Anticipate risks in advance and be prepared.



Before driving, please confirm that the charging port flap is fully closed and the charging cable is disconnected.



Before driving, please check the driving range on the instrument cluster to confirm whether the remaining SOC of the high-voltage battery can meet the driving demand. If the battery is low, please charge it in time.



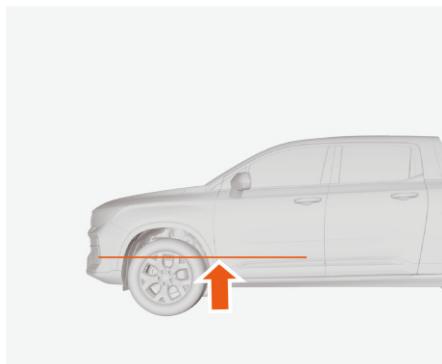
Keep a safe distance and concentrate on driving. Distracted drivers may cause a collision, leading to injury or death.

### Drunk driving



Drunk driving is very dangerous. Alcohol affects drivers' judgement, muscle coordination, vision and concentration. Drunk driving not only causes accidents but also leads to serious personal injuries and death. The traffic department will punish drunk driving in accordance with the provisions of the Road Traffic Safety Law.

## Driving through water



To avoid damage to the vehicle when driving through water (e.g. driving on flooded roads), observe the following points:

1. Determine the water level before driving through water. When driving through static waters, the water level must not exceed 500 mm (at the approximate position indicated by arrow).
2. Drive at a low speed. Excessive speed may create waves in front of the vehicle. The waves can force water ingress into the engine air intake system or other components of the vehicle.
3. Never stop, reverse, or switch the engine on/off in standing water.
4. Check the vehicle immediately after driving through water while ensuring safety:
  - Gently depress the brake pedal and check the brakes for proper functionality;
  - Check the horn for proper functionality;

- Check all lighting devices of the vehicle;
- Check for normal steering functionality;
- Visit a Riddara authorised service centre for routine inspection.



When driving through water or on muddy roads, the braking effect may be affected and the braking distance may be extended, increasing the risk of accidents! Avoid sudden emergency braking operations immediately after driving through water. The brakes must be cleaned and dried by intermittent braking after driving through water. Make a detour and never drive through forcibly in case of deep waterlogging, high flow rate or unidentified water level.

 The wave caused by the oncoming vehicle may exceed the vehicle's allowable water level. Potholes, mud puddles or stones may be hidden in the water. They can increase the difficulty in or obstruct driving through water. Driving through water for more than 1 km or staying in water for a longer period of time can damage the vehicle.

Do not drive through salt water. Salt can cause rust and corrosion in vehicles. Immediately flush all vehicle parts that have been in contact with salt water with fresh water.

It is recommended to go to a Riddara service centre for a comprehensive inspection of the vehicle after driving through water, in order to check for hidden dangers and ensure driving safety.

### Stopping or parking

- The vehicle should be parked on a road that is flat, solid, safe and does not affect the passage of other vehicles.
- To stop the vehicle, depress the brake pedal before using the electronic parking brake until the vehicle slowly comes to a stop and remains stationary, then move the electronic shift lever to P position.

 Never leave children or people with disability in the vehicle.

They may release the parking brake, manipulate the electronic shift lever and cause the vehicle to move, resulting in personal injury or death.

 For vehicles with turbocharged engines, avoid immediate shutdown after high-speed or high-load operation. Gradually reduce the speed and load first. Idle for 3-5 minutes before parking to prevent damage to the turbocharger due to lack of oil in the bearings or overheating of components. Avoid engine idling for prolonged periods of time (up to 20 minutes).

### Requirements for use of vehicle left unused for too long

If the vehicle is left unused for a long time, always have it serviced regularly. If you fail to do so, the performance of the high-voltage battery may degrade.

- In summer, park the vehicle in a cool place, try to avoid direct sunlight, and keep the vehicle away from heat sources.
- If the vehicle is left standing for a long time, the SOC should be maintained at 50% - 80% (about 50% is optimal).
- Full charging maintenance must be carried out every three months. After full charging, run the vehicle or directly turn on the air conditioner or other high-power appliances for power consumption until the SOC decreases to 50% - 80% before continuing to store the vehicle.
- The vehicle has an intelligent charging function. When the start switch is in the OFF position and the

- low-voltage battery is low, the vehicle will automatically charge it.
- When using a vehicle that has not been used for a long time (more than two weeks) for the first time, please confirm whether the instrument cluster gives an alarm. If there is an alarm, please contact a Riddara authorised service centre for maintenance as soon as possible.

## Noise and vibration

When driving a hybrid vehicle, you will hear or feel noises and vibrations different from those of a conventional fuel vehicle. The following noises and vibrations are normal:

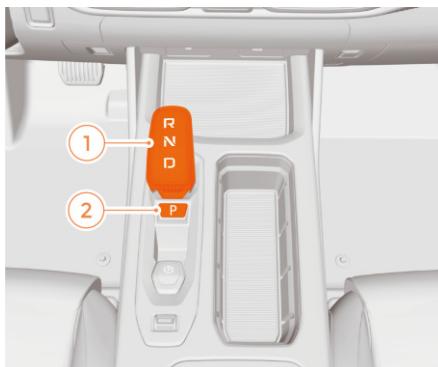
- Noise during operation of drive motor and reducer.
- Noise generated when the compressor and cooling fan of the electric air conditioner are running.
- Noise and vibration generated by opening and closing of relay when switching on/off the high-voltage system.
- The sound of the pedestrian warning system when the vehicle is moving at a low speed.
- Noise from the water pump and cooling fan during charging.

## Automatic shifting operation

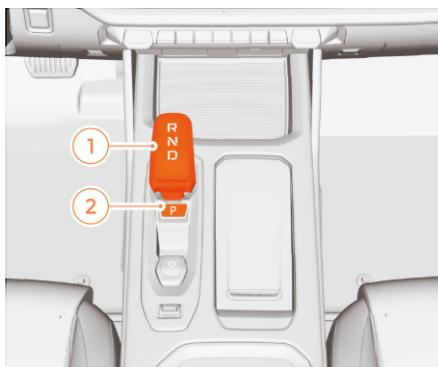
### Electronic shift lever

#### Electronic shift lever

##### Type I



##### Type II



1. Electronic shift lever
2. Gear P button

## Gears

### P (Parking)

Assisted parking function is activated when the gear is in Parking (P) position. When the vehicle is stationary, press the P button to engage the parking (P) gear.

To shift Parking (P) into Neutral (N), you must depress the brake pedal and push the electronic shift lever forward or backward to shift into Neutral (N). To shift from Parking (P) into Drive (D) when the vehicle is started, you must shift into Neutral (N), then depress the brake pedal and pull the electronic shift lever backward to shift into Drive (D).

- i** When the vehicle shifts from the starting state to the non-starting state and the electronic parking brake is applied, the reducer will automatically shift into Parking (P).

### D (Driving)

This gear position is applied for normal driving.

When the electronic shift lever is in Drive (D) position, if the brake pedal is released and the parking brake is disengaged, the vehicle, if unloaded, will begin to creep at a speed of approximately 5 km/h on a flat road. When the vehicle is stationary and already started, if you want to shift

Drive (D) into Parking (P), you only need to press the P button without pushing the electronic shift lever. To shift from Drive (D) into Neutral (N), simply push the electronic shift lever forward.



If the slope is steep, the vehicle may not be able to creep or even reverse.

### R (Reverse)

This position stands for moving backwards.

When the electronic shift lever is in Reverse (R) position, if the brake pedal is released and the parking brake is disengaged, the vehicle, if unloaded, will begin to creep at a speed of approximately 5 km/h on a flat road. When the vehicle is stationary and already started, if you want to shift from Reverse (R) to Neutral (N), you only need to pull the electronic shift lever backward.

### N (Neutral)

When the electronic shift lever is in Neutral (N), the drive motor is unable to output power.

When the vehicle is stationary and already started, if you want to shift from Neutral (N) into Reverse (R) or Drive (D), you must depress the brake pedal and push the electronic shift lever forward to shift into Reverse (R) or

pull the electronic shift lever backward to shift into Drive (D).

 The instrument cluster indicates the current gear position.

## Instructions for use

### Gear shifting

#### Parking

When it is necessary to park: When the vehicle is completely stopped, switch the electronic shift lever to Neutral (N) and press the P button.

#### Drive

To start the vehicle, depress the brake pedal, switch the electronic shift lever to Drive (D), then release the brake pedal and lightly depress the accelerator pedal.



Engage the gear first before depressing the accelerator pedal. Do not depress the accelerator pedal while engaging the gear or engage the gear after depressing the accelerator pedal.

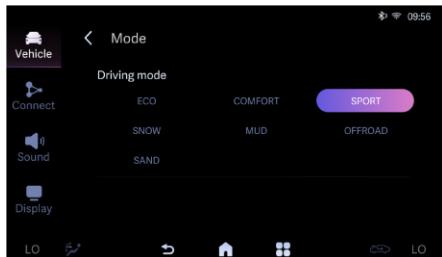
#### Reverse

When the vehicle is completely stopped, depress the brake pedal, switch the electronic shift lever to Reverse (R), then release the brake pedal and lightly depress the accelerator pedal.

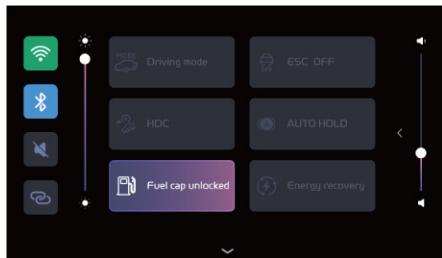
# Starting and driving

## Driving modes

### Selection using multimedia display (Type I)

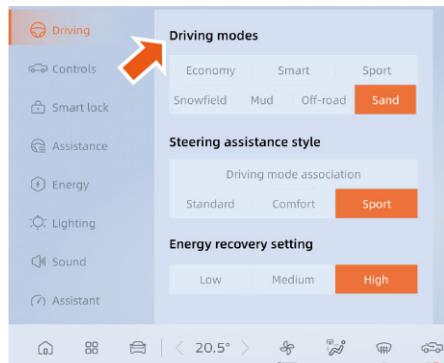


On the multimedia display, tap Settings → Vehicle → Mode. You can select from Eco, Comfort, Sport, Snow, Mud, Off-road or Sand.



Alternatively, swipe down from the top edge of the display to open the Control Centre, where you can configure driving modes.

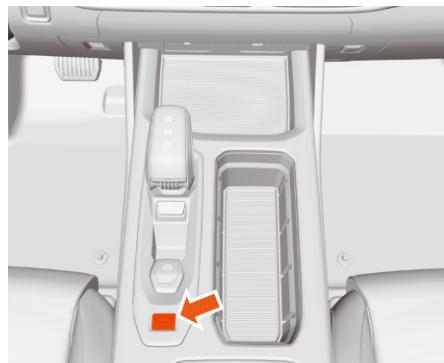
### Selection using multimedia display (Type II)



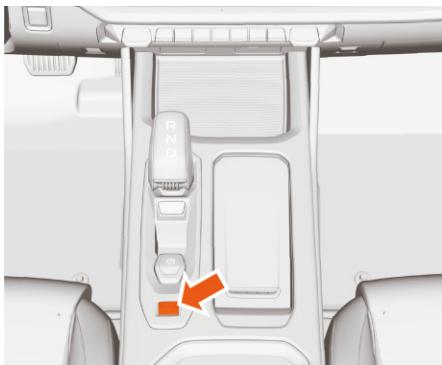
On the multimedia display, tap My car → Driving → Driving modes. You can select from Eco, Comfort, Sport, Snow, Mud, Off-road or Sand.

Alternatively, swipe down from the top edge of the display to open the Control Centre, where you can configure driving modes.

### Selection using driving mode switch (Type I)



## Selection using driving mode switch (Type II)



By pushing forward or backward the driving mode switch on the console, you can switch the driving mode among ECO, COMFORT, SPORT, SNOW, MUD, OFF-ROAD and SAND.

### Comfort mode

The Comfort mode tries to balance between economy and driving power.

### ECO mode

In the ECO mode, priority should be given to the economy of power usage, ensuring driving quality while reducing power consumption.

### Sport mode

In the Sport mode, the control system will provide the vehicle with better power performance and optimize acceleration performance by rapidly increasing output power. However, this is accompanied with increased power consumption and shortened driving range.

### Snow mode

The Snow mode applies to slippery roads with hard texture but soft surface, such as roads covered with thin snow, icy roads, hard roads covered with gravel or thin sand layers. It can reduce the slippage tendency, intervene in the attitude of vehicle as appropriate, and provide a relatively stable torque output. A stability control strategy for snow-covered terrain improves the driving and riding experience under such road conditions.



Snow mode is recommended to be used with snow tyres in order to attain better performance. This mode can achieve the performance-enhancing effect only on the above-mentioned special roads. It is not recommended to drive on worse roads. Do not drive at high speeds or without caution on the above-mentioned roads. Please drive carefully.

6

### Mud mode

The mud mode applies to muddy roads with ruts or hard base. Strong power and insensitivity to braking in this mode are conducive to high-speed rotation of wheels. The stability control strategy for muddy terrain endows the vehicle with higher capability of traction (getting unstuck) while driving on such roads so that the vehicle can be prevented from getting stuck in the mud.

**i** The vehicle working in this mode is not sensitive to stability control and traction control. Emergency braking or acceleration on low-adhesion roads is not recommended because there is a potential risk of drifting. Starting on soft sandy roads in this mode is not recommended. Slamming on the accelerator pedal to start the vehicle may pose a risk of getting stuck. Hill descent control (HDC) is recommended to be enabled when driving on long downhill road sections in this mode. Replacing with all terrain (AT) tyres is recommended in the mud mode. This allows to the vehicle to have better performance in this mode. This mode can achieve the performance-enhancing effect only on the above-mentioned special roads. It is not recommended to drive on worse roads. Do not drive at high speeds or without caution on the above-mentioned roads. Please drive carefully.

### Off-road mode

The off-road mode applies to light-duty off-road conditions such as loose gravel, bumpy surface, sandy soil, shallows of river channels, and hard uphill/downhill slopes. Strong power and sensitivity to braking are conducive to the vehicle's power control. A stability control strategy for off-road conditions is applied to this mode. This mode optimizes the responsiveness of accelerator pedal

and traction and stability control, thereby improving the performance of the vehicle in off-road conditions.

**i** The vehicle working in this mode is sensitive to traction control and stability control. There are potential risks of outputting too much power or moving too far forward. Please be cautious of operations such as rapid acceleration. Brake wheel locking and dragging may occur when driving on slippery downhill slopes. Please be cautious of emergency braking, emergency steering, and other dangerous operations.

**i** Driving below 40 km/h is recommended in the off-road mode. Even lower speed is recommended when driving on bad roads. Replacing with all terrain (AT) tyres is recommended in the off-road mode. This allows to the vehicle to have better performance in this mode. Hill descent control (HDC) is recommended to be enabled when driving on long downhill road sections in this mode. This mode can achieve the performance-enhancing effect only on the above-mentioned special roads. It is not recommended to drive on worse roads. Do not drive at high speeds or without caution on the above-mentioned roads. Please drive carefully. The off-road mode does not apply to grounds with deep sand layer where the vehicle has a risk of getting stuck.

## Sand mode

Sand mode is designed for unconsolidated, low-traction surfaces such as beaches or desert terrain. This mode optimises the power output to enhance the vehicle's passability and capability of getting unstuck on such surfaces.

 When parking on a slope, it is recommended to position the vehicle facing downhill to reduce rollover risk.

It is recommended not to stop in soft sand unless tyre pressure is reduced to an appropriate level.

After driving through a sand ground, it is recommended to check and confirm the brake system is normal. It is necessary to remove sand and other debris from the bottom of the vehicle to avoid malfunctions.

It is recommended to reduce the tire pressure to 0.8-1.0 bar to increase the contact area between the tyres and the ground and improve friction.

After getting unstuck, some components (including electric fans, tyres, lights, brake pads and discs, air filters, air conditioning filters, and door hinges) should be checked, and sent for maintenance or repair if necessary.

 Sand mode applies only to unconsolidated, low-traction surfaces.

## Brake and electric assist system

### Service brake

The braking distance of the vehicle in motion may vary depending on road conditions, vehicle weight and braking force imposed. Maintain an adequate distance from the vehicle ahead and do not perform cadence braking and emergency braking.

 Do not add non-genuine accessories, which may affect vehicle performance and cause traffic accidents.

 If a high-pitched screech is heard at the brake of the vehicle, you should contact a Riddara authorised service centre immediately for service.

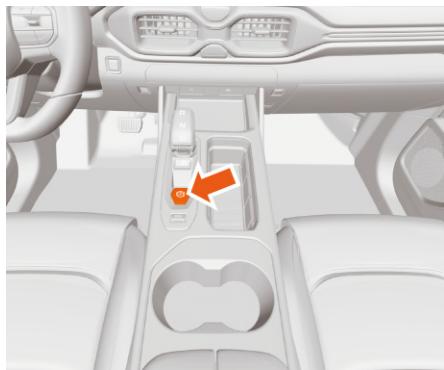
 Do not place your foot on the brake pedal while driving normally. Otherwise, it will cause wear and tear and overheating of the brake parts, as well as extended braking distance.

 When driving downhill on long or steep slopes, simply use the brake pedal to maintain a safe and constant speed. Do not depress the brake pedal too frequently; otherwise, the brake is likely to fail.

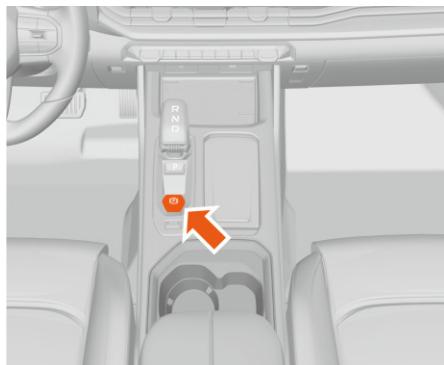
### Parking brake

#### Electronic parking brake (EPB)

##### Type I



##### Type II



##### Manual release of EPB

When the start switch is in the ON position and the electronic shift lever is not in the P position, depress the brake pedal and simultaneously press the EPB switch to release the EPB. The EPB switch indicator lamp on the instrument cluster will go off.

##### Automatic release of EPB

Start the vehicle, close the driver door, and fasten the seat belt. Depress the accelerator pedal when the vehicle is in Drive (D) position, the EPB will be automatically released and the EPB switch indicator lamp on the instrument cluster will go off.

##### Manual parking by EPB

When the start switch is in the ON position, pull up the EPB switch as the vehicle is stationary, and the EPB switch indicator on the instrument cluster is turned on. At this point, the manual parking is completed.



Once the EPB is enabled, the parking brake warning lamp on the instrument cluster is on. If the warning lamp doesn't illuminate, please contact a Riddara service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

##### Automatic parking by EPB

When the vehicle is stationary, shift the start switch to the OFF position or power off the vehicle, or shift it to the P position, and the EPB automatically parks the vehicle.

##### Disabling the EPB automatic parking function (car washing mode)

In the process of Tunnel Automatic Car Washing, because the vehicle needs to follow the tow chain of the car washing equipment, it is necessary to put the vehicle in Neutral (N), manually release the EPB and release the brake pedal.

**⚠** If the EPB malfunction indicator lamp is on, it indicates that the electronic parking brake system is faulty. Please contact Riddara authorised service centre for inspection and repair.

**⚠** If the EPB fails to be enabled, the rear wheels should be locked if necessary to prevent the vehicle from moving.

**⚠** Improper use of electronic parking brake may cause accidents and serious personal injuries and death.

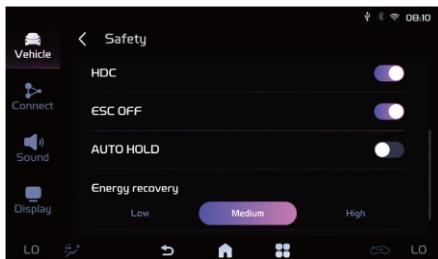
Never use the EPB as the service brake of the vehicle, except in emergencies. Because only the rear wheels are braked, the braking distance becomes longer, which affects the braking effect and may cause danger. When the EPB is enabled, do not depress the accelerator pedal when the vehicle is in the D position and the READY indicator is on.

**⚠** When the EPB is released, the parking function of the vehicle will be disabled. To avoid vehicle damage, serious injury or even fatal accidents, do not release EPB on roads with slopes.

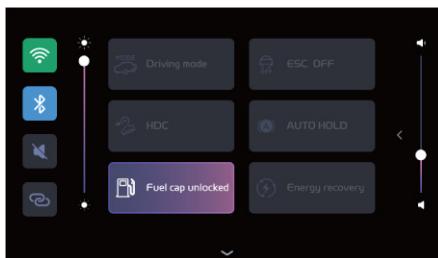
**⚠** Before receiving an automatic car wash that requires the movement of the vehicle, it is necessary to put the start switch in the ON position, switch the electronic shift lever into Neutral (N), and manually release the EPB.

## AUTO HOLD

### Type I

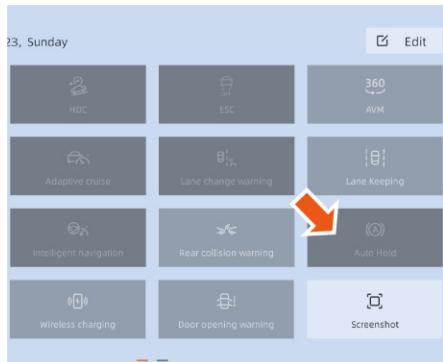


Tap: Settings → Vehicle → Safety in turn on the multimedia display, where auto hold can be switched on or off.



Alternatively, swipe down from the top edge of the display to open the Control Centre and toggle the AUTO HOLD button to activate or deactivate the auto hold function.

## Type II



Swipe down from the top edge of the display to open the Control Centre and toggle the AUTO HOLD button to turn on or off Auto Hold.

The AUTO HOLD function can help drivers start the vehicle more comfortably on slopes. When the vehicle stops on a slope, after the brake pedal is released, AUTO HOLD will keep the vehicle braked for a while, providing sufficient time for the driver to depress the accelerator pedal for starting, thus reducing sliding.



Depending on the force, the vehicle may also move when AUTO HOLD function is on.

### Enabling AUTO HOLD

When the vehicle starts, close the driver door and wear the seat belt, the AUTO HOLD function can be switched on via the multimedia display screen.

### Disabling AUTO HOLD

The Auto Hold function can be switched off through the multimedia display.

### Activating and deactivating AUTO HOLD

1. When the READY indicator lamp on the instrument cluster is on, close the driver door and fasten the safety belt. When the AUTO HOLD function is enabled and the vehicle speed is zero, depress the brake pedal, if the electronic shift lever is not in Reverse (R), the AUTO HOLD is activated.



The AUTO HOLD function cannot be activated when the vehicle is in Reverse (R).

2. Shift the electronic shift lever into Drive (D)/Reverse (R), and lightly depress the accelerator pedal. Then, the AUTO HOLD will be automatically deactivated.
3. When the AUTO HOLD function is activated, if the accelerator pedal is not pressed for more than 10 minutes, it is switched to EPB mode, and the parking brake warning lamp illuminates in red.

### Force-deactivating AUTO HOLD

When the AUTO HOLD function is activated, unfastening the seat belt or opening the driver door will activate EPB automatically.

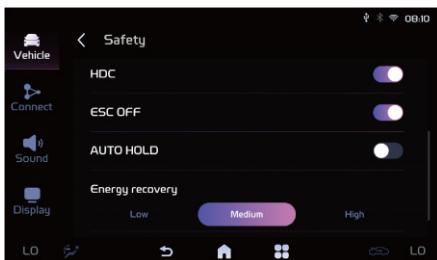
## Electronic stability control (ESC)

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) is an active safety technology that assists the driver in controlling the vehicle, including an anti-lock brake system (ABS), which can automatically correct the instability of the body of the vehicle and help prevent accidents. The ESC estimates the driver's intention in the direction of travel with the sensing technology. When the vehicle begins to deviate from the road, the system will apply targeted braking force to the wheels or reduce the torque of the drive motor to guide the vehicle back to the correct route.

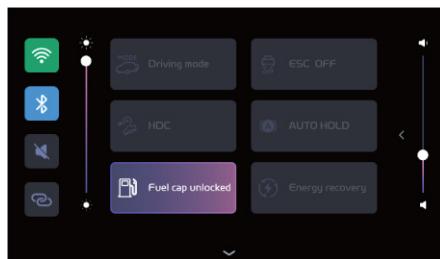
The ESC malfunction indicator lamp on the instrument cluster flashes when the ESC is on. This also happens when the Traction Control System is enabled. You may hear some noise or feel a vibration in the brake pedal, which is normal. In this case, continue to steer the vehicle following your expected direction. If an ESC failure is detected, the ESC malfunction indicator lamp will illuminate and the system cannot work properly. In this case, adjust the driving mode accordingly, and contact a Riddara authorised service centre as soon as possible. The ESC is automatically activated when starting the vehicle. To maintain the direction control of the vehicle, always keep this system activated.

### ESC off

#### Type I

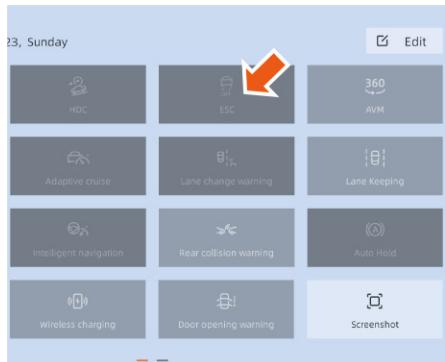


Tap: Settings → Vehicle → Safety in turn on the multimedia display, where ESC can be switched on or off. When ESC is off, the ESC OFF indicator lamp on the instrument cluster lights up.



Alternatively, swipe down from the top edge of the display to open the Control Centre and toggle the ESC OFF button to enable or disable the electronic stability program (ESP).

## Type II



Pull down the multimedia display screen from the top to open the control centre and click "Electronic Stability Control" to turn on or turn off ESC. When ESC is turned off, the ESC OFF indicator lamp on the instrument cluster lights up.

**⚠** Disable the ESC function in the following special cases:

- When driving with snow chains;
- When driving on deep snow or soft roads;
- When the vehicle is stuck and needs to move back and forth to get unstuck.

## ESC on

Switch on the electronic stability program (ESC) via the multimedia display. The ESC off-indicator lamp on the instrument cluster is extinguished when the ESC is on.

Every time the power switch is turned from ACC to ON.

When the vehicle speed is higher than or equal to 85 km/h, the ESC function is automatically enabled.

## Anti-lock brake system (ABS)

The anti-lock brake system (ABS) can prevent slipping during braking. When starting the vehicle and driving away, the anti-lock brake system performs a self-check. When the self-check is carried out, you will hear a momentary motor running noise or "click", and even notice a slight movement of the brake pedal, which is normal.

**⚠** Too high or too low tyre pressure or mixing different sizes of tyres on a vehicle can lead to a loss of braking effectiveness.

**⚠** Do not manually cut off or change the anti-lock brake system control mode, otherwise it may cause the vehicle to lose control.

## Activating ABS

Do not perform cadence braking. As long as the brake pedal is firmly pressed, the anti-lock function will be automatically enabled. You may hear the running noise of the ABS brake pump or motor and feel a brake pulsation, which is normal.

## Braking in emergency

The ABS allows the driver to steer and brake simultaneously. In most

emergencies, steering is more effective than braking.

## Electronic brake assist (EBA)

During emergency braking, the EBA increases the driver's braking force and reduces the braking distance. Most drivers can brake in time in hazardous situations, but they do not depress the brake pedal with enough force, so the brake system does not generate maximum braking force, resulting in increased braking distance.

The EBA is enabled when the brake pedal is depressed quickly while the vehicle is in motion. At this point, the EBA will generate a greater brake pressure than normal braking, allowing the brake system to generate the pressure required for the maximum deceleration of the vehicle in the shortest possible time. The EBA utilizes the rapidly generated pressure within the brake system to help drivers achieve shorter braking distances in emergencies. When the brake pedal is released, the EBA will be automatically disabled and the brake system is restored to normal operation.

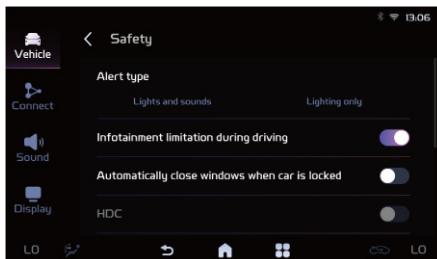
**!** The EBA is only intended to help the driver increase the braking force, but cannot protect against every possible accident. The driver shall always keep an appropriate distance from other vehicles and drive carefully.

## Hill descent control (HDC)

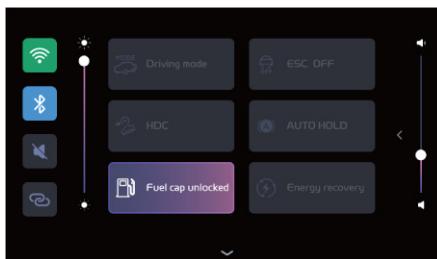
The vehicle is equipped with a HDC function. The function can automatically brake the vehicle to limit the driving speed without driver intervention during the downhill process and assist the driver in going downhill.

### System on and off

#### Type I

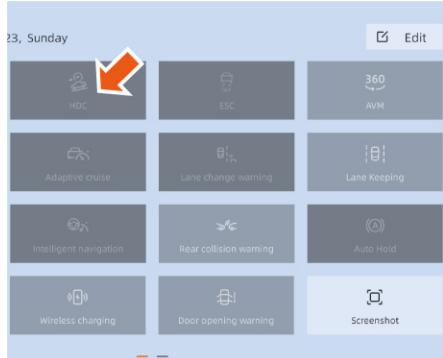


Tap: Settings → Vehicle → Safety in turn on the multimedia display, where hill descent control (HDC) can be switched on or off.



Alternatively, swipe down from the top edge of the display to open the Control Centre and toggle the HDC button to turn on or off the hill descent control (HDC) function.

## Type II



Pull down the multimedia display screen from the top to open the control centre and tap "Hill Descent Control (HDC)" to turn on or off the hill descent control.

**!** HDC can only be activated when the vehicle speed is less than 35 km/h.

When driving downhill, the driver can control the speed via the accelerator pedal or brake pedal; The adjustable speed range is 4 ~ 35 km/h; When the driver depresses the accelerator pedal to increase the speed to greater than 35 km/h and less than 60 km/h, this function is temporarily disabled, and is enabled again when the speed is decreased to 4 ~ 35 km/h; This function can be disabled by the HDC switch or by accelerating to greater than 60 km/h.

**!** When the HDC function is temporarily unavailable due to high brake temperature, the following situations will occur:

- In the HDC-on state, the HDC indicator lamp on the instrument cluster goes off and the system shuts down.
- In the HDC-off state, when turning on the HDC function on the multimedia display screen, the HDC indicator lamp on the instrument cluster does not illuminate, and the system cannot be turned on.

## Hill hold control (HHC)

The HHC allows the driver to prevent vehicles from sliding downhill after releasing the brake pedal. It maintains the brake pressure applied by the driver, allowing the driver up to two seconds to move his/her foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal, and the brake pressure will be automatically released afterwards. As reversing uphill (with the front of the vehicle facing downwards) is also considered an uphill behaviour, the HHC function is enabled at this point.

**!** The HHC function can only be activated when the ESC system is enabled and the parking brake is fully released.

 The HHC function only maintains the pressure for a short time when the driver releases the brake pedal. If the accelerator pedal is not depressed or the parking brake is applied, the vehicle may slide down the slope after 2 seconds. Therefore, you should drive carefully when starting on the slope!

## Traction control system (TCS)

The TCS prevents the driving wheels from slipping during acceleration and ensures stable driving. The TCS optimizes the target slip rate of the driving wheels according to the vehicle's demand for the longitudinal and lateral forces on the driving wheels. By controlling the driving torque of the drive system and the braking torque on the driving wheels, the slip rate of the driving wheels is controlled to improve the vehicle's acceleration and stability performance under various driving conditions. The control forms include ETCS and BTCS: ETCS prevents the vehicle from sideslip by reducing the torque of the drive motor; BTCS improves the vehicle's acceleration performance by applying braking force to slipping wheels. When the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system is disabled, the TCS will also be disabled, and the ESC off-indicator lamp on the instrument cluster will illuminate. When the ESC

system is enabled again, the TCS will also be enabled.

 When the start switch is in the ACC/ON position, the system performs a self-check, during which the ESC off-indicator lamp on the instrument cluster illuminates; if there is no fault, it will go out after a few seconds. When the TCS fails, the ESC malfunction indicator lamp on the instrument cluster will illuminate, and remain on if the fault is not removed. In this case, contact a Riddara authorised service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

## Acoustic vehicle alerting system (AVAS)

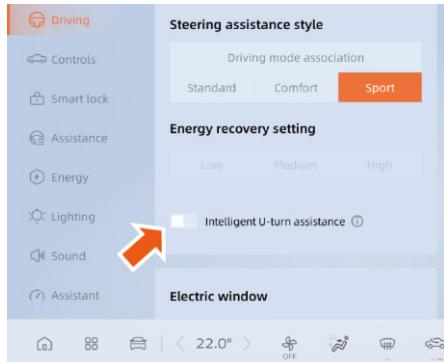
In battery electric driving mode, when the vehicle is in Drive or Reverse (D/R) and the speed is less than 30 km/h, the acoustic vehicle alerting system will be activated to remind pedestrians of approaching vehicles.

### Intelligent U-turn assistance system (If equipped)

When the vehicle is driving on low adhesion roads, the intelligent U-turn assistance system can assist the driver in turning with the minimum turning radius.

Please follow the following steps to use the intelligent U-turn assistance system function:

1. Fasten the seatbelt and close the door.
2. Place the vehicle in READY and stationary state, and shift to P.



3. On the multimedia display, tap My car → Driving, then select to turn on or off Intelligent U-turn Assistance on the screen, learn about the pop-up function instructions and select the appropriate terrain.
4. Shift into D and turn the steering wheel.
5. Slowly depress the accelerator pedal and pay attention to the surrounding environment.



Instructions for intelligent U-turn assistance system function

- Before using the intelligent U-turn assistance system, please check the vehicle condition to ensure the safety of the surrounding environment and keep the vehicle stationary.
- Please fasten your seatbelt, shift into D gear, turn the steering wheel to the maximum limit, and slowly depress the accelerator pedal to make a turn.
- The steering wheel should be turned to its maximum limit and avoid significant shaking during the turning process.
- It is recommended to use this function on roads with low adhesion such as grass, snow, mud, and sand. Do not use this function on roads with high adhesion such as cement and asphalt.
- Intelligent U-turn assistance can only be used on flat roads. Do not use it on uneven roads, slopes, potholes, and other road surfaces;
- Cargo may fall when the truck bed is loaded. Please drive carefully.
- ABS and ESC will be turned off after turning on the function, and there may be some instability in the body. Please drive carefully.
- Do not use this function when connected to the trailer.

- Long-term use of intelligent U-turn assistance will increase tyre, power, brake system loss, please avoid long-term use or reduce the frequency of use;
- The intelligent U-turn assistance system can only be turned off when the vehicle is stationary.

## Parking assist system

### Parking distance control (PDC)

The PDC system helps drivers avoid colliding with objects during the parking process.

The sensors on the rear bumper can be used to detect objects up to 1.5 meters behind the vehicle.

The PDC system cannot replace the driver's observation.

- The PDC system cannot detect objects under the bumper and the vehicle, or objects that are too close or too far from the vehicle.
- PDC may fail to detect objects in blind spots between two radars.
- PDC may falsely detect objects at vehicle sides.
- The PDC system may not be able to detect children, pedestrians, cyclists, or pets.
- The PDC system cannot detect very small objects.
- If you do not pay attention to the surrounding conditions of the vehicle before or during reversing, it may lead to personal injury and property damage. Even if the PDC system is equipped, the driver must carefully observe whether there are obstacles and pay attention to the rearview mirror of the vehicle before reversing.

### How the system works

When the PDC system is working, if any obstacles appear within the detection range, the buzzer will sound to alert. The buzz indicates an obstacle behind the vehicle. The closer the vehicle gets to the obstacle, the faster the buzzer sounds. When the distance is less than 30 cm, a continuous buzz will be heard. The object must be within 1.5 meters of the rear bumper. In hot or humid weather, the distance at which objects are detected may decrease.

### System on and off

#### Enabling

Move the shift lever into Reverse (R), and then the system is enabled.

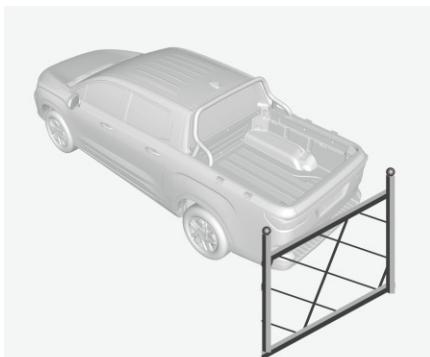
#### Disabling

Move the shift lever out of Reverse (R), and then the system is disabled.

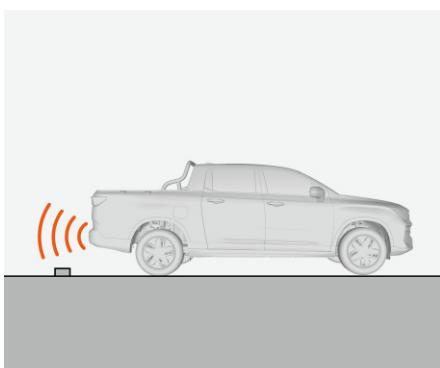
### When the system fails to work properly

The PDC system may fail to alarm or give a false alarm in the following situations:

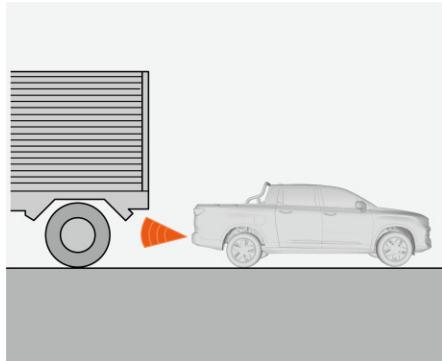
#### Inability to detect obstacles



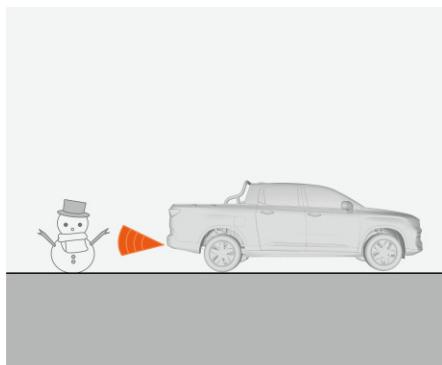
- The PDC sensors cannot detect mesh objects such as wires, cables and blockages.



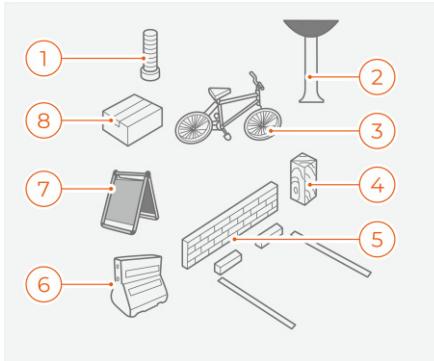
- The PDC sensors cannot detect low objects such as rocks and wooden blocks.



- The PDC sensors cannot detect vehicles with a higher chassis.



- The PDC sensors cannot detect loose snow, cotton, sponges and other objects that tend to absorb ultrasound.

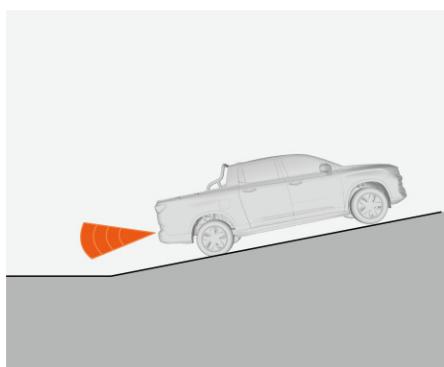


- The PDC sensors may not be able to detect certain obstacles with particular shapes.
  1. Pillar
  2. Small trees
  3. Bicycles
  4. Angle bar
  5. Cornerstone
  6. Road barrier
  7. V-shaped parking sign
  8. Corrugated paper

#### Possible situations of false alarms



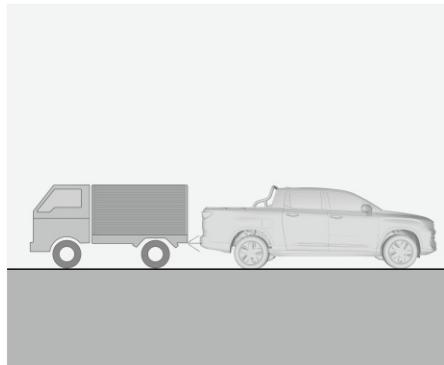
- The surface of the PDC sensors is icy.



- The vehicle is on a steep slope.

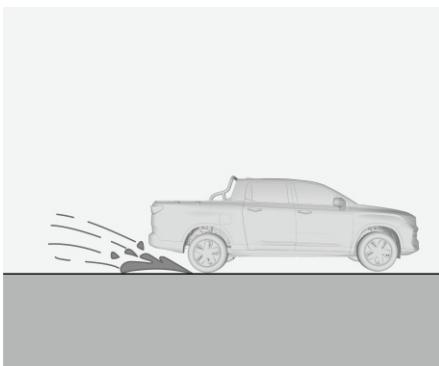


- High-frequency radios or aerials are installed on or near the vehicle.



- Sound sources, such as the horn, engine and exhaust of other

vehicles, are too close to the PDC sensors.



- When driving in snow or rain.

If the vehicle approaches an obstacle and the system still does not alarm, please contact a Riddara authorised service centre for inspection when it is confirmed that this is not caused by the above situations.

**⚠** When there are multiple obstacles, the PDC sensors can only detect the nearest obstacle.

**⚠** Do not use high-pressure water such as a water gun to directly spray, or use other methods to squeeze or impact, the surface of the PDC sensors. The system could otherwise malfunction.

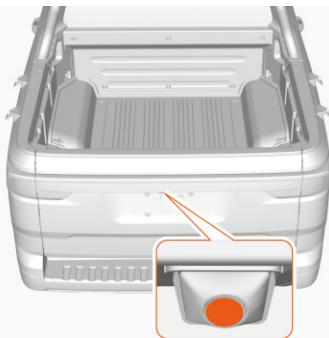
### Rear view camera (RVC) system (if equipped)

The RVC system assists the driver in reversing by displaying the image behind the vehicle.

**!** Drivers must carefully observe whether there are obstacles around the vehicle before reversing, otherwise it may lead to personal injury and property damage. The RVC system is not a substitute for the driver's observation. Do not rely solely on the RVC system to reverse your vehicle.

- The distance displayed on the multimedia display screen is different from the actual distance.
- The rear view camera cannot detect objects outside the camera's visual range, such as objects under the bumper or vehicle.
- The RVC system may not be able to detect children, pedestrians, cyclists, or pets.
- It is prohibited to use the RVC system during long-distance and fast reversing or in areas where there is cross traffic.

### Rear view camera position



The rear view camera is located on the cargo compartment tailgate. The rear view camera has a limited range and cannot capture objects near corners or under the bumper. The images displayed will vary depending on the vehicle's travelling direction or road conditions. There is a difference between the distance in the image displayed on the screen and the actual distance.

### Reversing guide lines



Reversing guide lines are dynamic trajectory lines that adjust the indicated direction according to the angle changing along with the rotation of the steering wheel. During reversing, the reversing guide lines cover the road surface behind the vehicle and move to the left or right according to the rotation of the steering wheel. The indicated direction is the same as the actual trajectory of the vehicle, helping the driver plan the reversing route. The dynamic trajectory line can be displayed or hidden by pressing the dynamic trajectory line button on the top left corner.

### System on and off

When the vehicle shifts into R gear, it can access the Rear View Camera (RVC) interface.

- When the electronic shift lever is moved into R gear, the RVC system is enabled, and the image will be automatically displayed on the multimedia display screen.
- When the electronic shift lever is moved out of R gear, the RVC system is disabled, and the multimedia display screen is delayed for a while before switching back to the interface previously displayed.

### Rear view camera connection interruption

When the rear view camera does not work properly or the connection is interrupted, a message box will pop up on the multimedia display screen.

Please contact Riddara authorised service centre for inspection and repair.

### Around view monitor (AVM) (if equipped)

By showing the images captured by cameras on the multimedia display, AVM enables the driver to monitor the situation in front of, behind, and on the left and right of the vehicle in real time while he or she stays in the vehicle, thus assisting the driver in parking.



Observe your surroundings when the AVM is in use. This system can be used only as an auxiliary means for the vehicle. Do not rely solely on it.

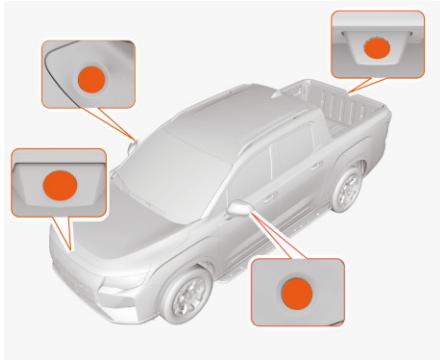
- AVM cameras are susceptible to environmental factors, such as fog, rain and snow, and low-visibility environments at night. Please use the AVM with caution and make sure the surrounding environment is safe before use.
- The existence of visual blind spots may disable the AVM from detecting all obstacles around the vehicle.



The image model of the wide-angle fisheye camera in this vehicle is bowl-shaped structure, which makes it easy for 3D stereo images to form stretching deformation at the splicing point, and there will be ghosting at the far edge of the object.

## AVM camera

AVM cameras are located around the vehicle body.



## Entering the AVM screen

When the vehicle speed is less than or equal to 30 km/h, enter the AVM screen in the following ways:

- Directly enter the AVM rear view screen by shifting to R.
- Press the AVM button on the multimedia display.
- Turn on the turn signal lamp when the steering linkage function is activated, the selector lever is not in position R, and the navigation is not working in the foreground.
- Activate the AVM by using voice commands such as "Hello Riddara, activate AVM".

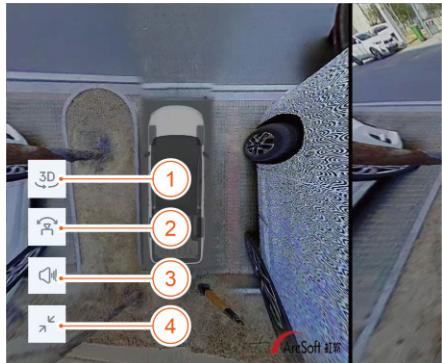
## Exiting the AVM screen

- If you entered the AVM screen by shifting to R, the AVM screen will exit when the vehicle speed exceeds 15 km/h after shifting out of R.

- If you entered the AVM in other ways, the AVM screen will exit when the gear is not in R and the vehicle speed exceeds 30 km/h.
- Click the Back button on the multimedia display to exit the AVM screen.
- After you shift from another gear to P, if the AVM is not operated within 5 seconds, the AVM screen will exit.
- If you entered the AVM by operating the turn signal lamp and didn't perform other operations to switch the AVM view, the AVM screen will automatically exit when you turn off the turn signal lamp.
- Exit the AVM by using voice commands such as "Hello Riddara, activate AVM".
- Enable the steering linkage function, and turn the steering wheel at a certain speed when the gear is not in R, the vehicle speed is less than or equal to 10 km/h, and the navigation is not working in the foreground.

## AVM screen

You can click on the designated area of the screen to display the image you need.



### 1. 2D/3D switch button

It can switch between 2D and 3D view effects, and supports touching and sliding in the 3D image area to change the viewing angle of the 3D view.

### 2. View button

Click to expand the 4 views switching modes.

### 3. Radar warning volume adjustment button

Enable or disable the radar warning volume.

### 4. Unfold/Fold button

Unfold/fold the function.

## 3D Surround

You will enter the 3D surround view (the 3D car model turns a circle) when the AVM is activated for the first time through system button or voice control, provided that all of the following conditions are met: the start switch is in the ON position, the 3D surround function is enabled, the shift lever is not in Reverse (R), and the vehicle speed is less than or equal to 4 km/h. In this view, you have 5 seconds to see what is around the vehicle.

During each power-on cycle of the vehicle, this function can only be used once and will be interrupted by shifting gear, clicking/tapping buttons, turning on/off turn signal lamp, and some other operations.

## Vehicle Transparent

Click the vehicle transparent option in the settings to turn on/off the transparent car model function. When turned on, the car model (2D/3D car model) in the AVM screen immediately changes to a transparent state, and the blind spot at the bottom of the car model changes to a transparent state after the vehicle moves for a certain distance.

## Steering Linkage

Enable the steering linkage function. When the gear is not in Reverse (R), the navigation is not working in the foreground, and the vehicle speed is less than 30 km/h, turn on the left/right

turn signal lamp to activate the AVM and enter the left/right steering linkage view screen.

Enable the steering linkage function, and turn the steering wheel at a certain speed when the gear is not in R, the vehicle speed is less than or equal to 10 km/h, and the navigation is not working in the foreground.

### AVM connection interrupted

When the connection to the AVM is interrupted, a message box will pop up on the multimedia display, indicating a malfunction of the system. Please contact Riddara authorised service centre for inspection and repair.

## Driver assist systems

### Introduction to driver assist systems

#### Medium-range radar (if equipped)



The mid-range radar is installed under the front bumper.

The mid-range radar is the core component for achieving Intelligent Cruise Control (ICC), Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC), and Automatic Emergency Brake (AEB). While it brings great comfort and safety to the driver, please pay attention to: Keep the mid-range radar free from foreign objects such as ice, snow, water, and dust, other obstacles (such as licence plate frames) are not allowed in the sensor's field of view and it is strictly prohibited to paint or install bumpers without authorization, otherwise it will affect the performance of ICC/ACC/AEB.

The mid-range radar needs to have special performance to detect relevant targets. The detection will be affected and performance will decrease when affected by the environment.

Do not change its position without authorization, as the calibration of mid-range radars that are subjected to strong vibrations or slight impacts will be affected.

If the field of view of the mid-range radar is dirty or blind, there will be a text prompt on the instrument cluster display and an audible alarm to remind the driver to pay attention. When foreign objects are found attached to the surface of the radar, please wipe it with a soft cloth or clean it with water (low water pressure) before wiping. Avoid using a high-pressure water gun to flush the radar directly, and do not use abrasive or sharp objects to clean the radar.

 Mid-range radar blindness is a normal reaction of vehicles under specific road conditions. If the vehicle is driven under normal road conditions for a period of time with the surface of the mid-range radar clean, the mid-range radar can automatically return to normal. If it fails to do so, please go to a Riddara authorised service centre for inspection and repair.

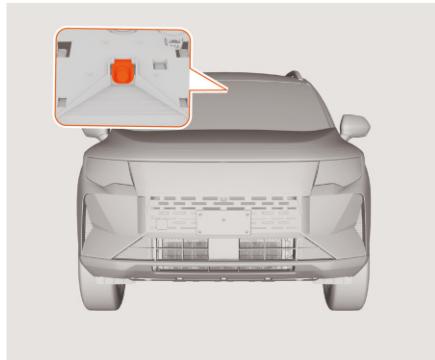
Radar has detection blind spots and cannot function properly in all driving scenarios, weather, traffic, and road conditions. When the vehicle is in a complex or poor environment, you should drive with caution and always be responsible for driving safety.

In case of the following situations, please go to a Riddara authorised service centre for professional calibration of the mid-range radar:

- The mid-range radar has been removed and installed.
- The toe-in and/or rear axle wheel camber have been adjusted during the wheel alignment.
- After a collision with the vehicle.
- ICC/ACC/AEB system degradation or abnormality.

 After removing the plastic installation buckle of the mid-range radar, it is necessary to replace the buckle to ensure the accuracy of the installation of the mid-range radar.

## Front monocular camera (if equipped)



The front monocular camera is installed behind the windscreen of the vehicle.

Front monocular camera is the core component of Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC), Intelligent Cruise Control (ICC), Automatic Emergency Brake (AEB), and Lane Keeping Assist (LKA).



In daily use, keep the front monocular camera clean, and the field of view of the front monocular camera should not be obstructed by pollutants (such as rain, snow, mist, water vapour, frost, leaves, bird droppings, etc.) or disturbed by strong light, otherwise it will affect the performance of ACC/ICC/AEB/LKA.

The detection of the front monocular camera will be interfered when it is affected by the environment. For example, the recognition ability of the front monocular camera will be affected in severe weather conditions such as rainstorm, snowstorm, dense fog, etc., which may lead to the decline of system performance.

If there is a system malfunction with the front monocular camera, there will be a text prompt on the instrument cluster display. Please contact a Riddara authorised service centre for inspection and repair. When the front monocular camera is in extremely high temperature, the system function will be temporarily unavailable to protect the electronic components, and there will be a text prompt on the instrument cluster display. When the temperature drops enough, the front monocular camera unit will automatically restart and the system function will return to normal.

If the field of view of the front monocular camera is blocked, or enters a dark environment, or is interfered by strong light, there will be a text prompt on the instrument cluster display.

Do not change the position of the front monocular camera without authorization, as the calibration of the front monocular camera may be affected by vibration or collision. In this case, it may be necessary to recalibrate the front monocular camera.

**i** Blindness of the front monocular camera is a normal reaction of the front monocular camera in special environments. Drivers can avoid dark environments and strong light under the condition that the field of view of the front monocular camera is not blocked, and the system will recover by itself. If it cannot be recovered, please contact a Riddara authorised service centre for inspection and repair.

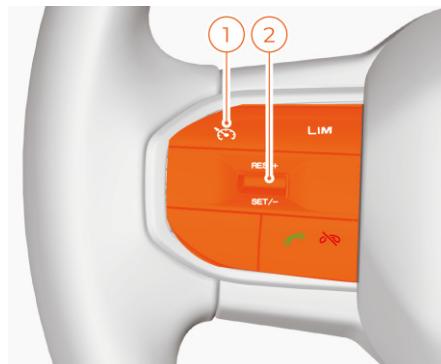
### Cruise control (CC) (if equipped)

With cruise control system, the speed can be maintained at any value between 30 and 150 km/h without constantly depressing the accelerator pedal.

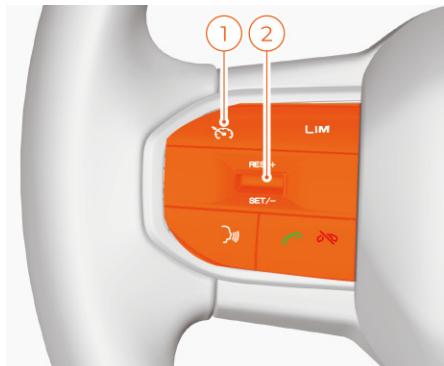
**!** Where cruise control is used, it may be dangerous if you cannot safely travel at a constant speed. Therefore, do not use cruise control on winding roads or in heavy traffic. Cruise control is also dangerous when driving on slippery roads. On such road surfaces, sharp changes in tyre traction can lead to unnecessary idling of the wheels, and the vehicle may lose control. Never use cruise control on slippery roads.

### Control using steering wheel

#### Type I



## Type II



The cruise control button is on the left side of the steering wheel.

1. Cruise control button:

Cruise control can be turned on/off by pressing the cruise control button.

2. RES/+SET/- switch:

- Push this button up to restore the cruise speed to the original setting or increase the cruise speed.
- Push this button down to set the current speed as the cruise speed or reduce the cruise speed.



If you leave the cruise control on all the time, you may accidentally push the button and enter the cruise state. In this case, you may be frightened and the vehicle may go out of control. Therefore, turn off the cruise control switch when you do not need to use cruise control.

## Setting speed

- Press the cruise control button to turn on the cruise control.
- Push the RES/+SET/- switch down, then release it, and the current speed will be set as the cruise speed.
- Push the RES/+SET/- switch up or down to set the desired cruise speed.

## Restoring the set speed

If the cruise control has already set to the desired speed, depress the brake pedal. This cancels the cruise control and the stored speed remains in the memory. To restore to preset speed, push the RES/+SET/- switch up when the vehicle speed is 30 km/h or higher. In this way, the vehicle reaches the preset speed.

## Acceleration when using cruise control

Acceleration can be realized with either of the following two methods:

- Depress the accelerator pedal to increase speed. To store the increased speed as the cruising speed, push the RES/+SET/- switch down.
- If the cruise control has been enabled, push up the RES/+SET/- switch and hold it. The cruise speed will increase continuously at a rate of 1 km/h. If you want to accelerate slightly, push up the RES/+SET/-

switch and release it. The first push adjusts the speed to an integer multiple of 5, and the subsequent push increases the speed at a rate of 5 km/h.

### Deceleration when using cruise control

If the cruise control has been enabled, push down the RES/+/SET/- switch and hold it. The cruise speed will decrease continuously at a rate of 1 km/h. If you want to decelerate slightly, push down the RES/+/SET/- switch and release it. The first push adjusts the speed to an integer multiple of 5, and the subsequent push decreases the speed at a rate of 5 km/h.

### Overtaking when using cruise control

Depress the accelerator pedal to increase the speed. Vehicle speed will decrease to the preset cruise control speed when the foot leaves the accelerator pedal.

### Using cruise control on ramps

The performance of the cruise control on a ramp depends on the vehicle speed, load and the gradient of the ramp. When climbing up a steep hill, you may need to depress and hold the accelerator pedal to maintain the vehicle speed. When going downhill, it may be necessary to brake to maintain

the speed. Cruise control is turned off when brake is applied.

### Ending cruise control

The cruise control can be ended using the following methods:

- Depress the brake pedal, but the cruise status indicator does not go off.
- Select the neutral gear (N).
- Press the cruise control button to turn off the cruise control completely.

### Clearing speed memory

When the cruise control is turned off or the start switch is set to the OFF position, the cruise control set speed memory is cleared.

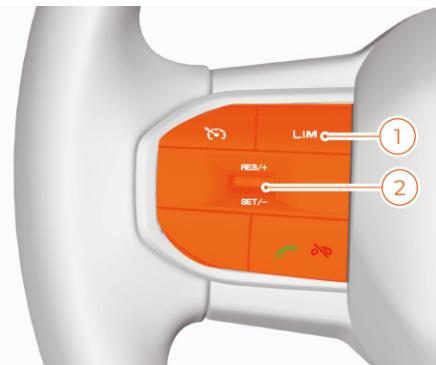
## Automatic speed limit control system (LIM)

The automatic speed limit control system (LIM) can keep the vehicle speed within the pre-set limit.

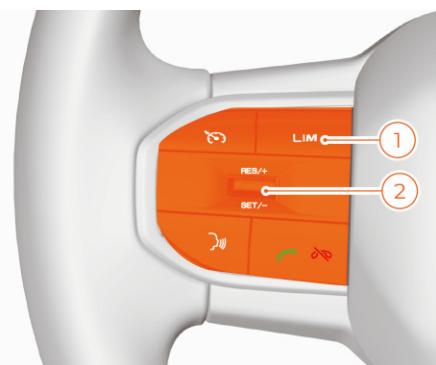
Even if the vehicle has an automatic speed limit control system, the driver must control the speed as the case may be and shall not depress the accelerator pedal deeply unless necessary.

### Control using steering wheel

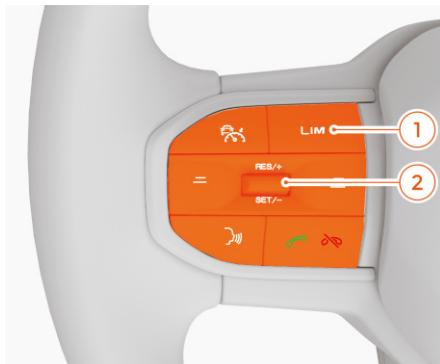
#### Type I



#### Type II



#### Type III



The LIM button is on the left side of the steering wheel.

##### 1. LIM button:

Pressing the LIM button to switch the automatic speed limit control on/off.

##### 2. RES/+SET/- switch:

- Push this key upwards to increase the speed limit.
- Push this button down to set the current speed as the speed limit or reduce the speed limit.

6

### Setting speed limit

The speed limit setting range is 30-150 km/h. If you need a wider range, you can set the speeds closer to the limits for the current speed range.

- Pressing the LIM button to switch the automatic speed limit control on. The automatic speed limit control system enters the standby mode, and the automatic speed limit status indicator lights up white.

2. Push down and release the RES/+/SET/- switch to set current speed as limit. The automatic speed limit status indicator lights up green.
3. Push the RES/+/SET/- switch up or down to set the desired limit speed.

### Resuming speed limit

Fully depressing accelerator pedal during driving transfers automatic speed limit control to driver. When the speed is 3 km/h beyond the limit, people in the vehicle can hear an audible warning. When the accelerator pedal is released, LIM resumes control.

### Using LIM on slopes

LIM cannot precisely limit the speed when the vehicle is moving uphill or downhill. Under the effect of its dead weight, the vehicle may not reach the set speed or slightly exceed the set speed. Once the set speed is exceeded, the speed should be reduced by depressing the brake pedal.

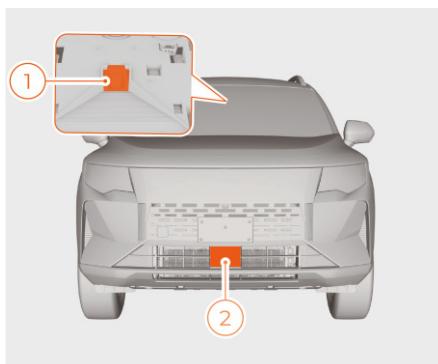
### Deactivating LIM

Pressing the LIM button deactivates the automatic speed limit control system completely.

### Adaptive cruise control (ACC) (if equipped)

The Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) can control the vehicle speed according to the set speed and headway within the speed range of 0 - 150 km/h.

The ACC mainly provides driving assistance for drivers on highways or elevated roads with good road conditions, and the driver needs to control the vehicle at all times.



The sensors used in the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) include:

1. Front monocular camera
2. Mid-range radar

The ACC detects vehicles ahead with the mid-range radar and automatically adjusts the vehicle speed to maintain the headway set by the driver. The driver can control the vehicle at any time based on the driving conditions.

 The Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) is a comfort system, not a warning and collision avoidance system in emergency situations. The driver must always maintain control of the vehicle and bear full driving responsibility for vehicle handling. The driver needs to drive in accordance with laws and regulations.

 The Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) doesn't respond to vehicles or objects that cross the driving lane.

 The change in vehicle posture caused by loading too many items in the cargo compartment can lead to a decrease or failure in the target recognition performance of the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC).

 The Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) may not respond timely when other vehicle change lanes to travel in front of the vehicle at low speed, the driver should brake timely.

 When your vehicle suddenly accelerates and approaches the vehicle ahead at high speed (with a significant speed difference from the vehicle ahead), the driver needs to brake timely.

 The driver should adjust the following distance to set the ACC system properly based on the traffic flow ahead and current weather condition, such as rain, snow. The driver should be able to actively control the vehicle at all times to ensure safe driving.

 It is the driver's responsibility to maintain distance from the vehicle ahead.

 When driving in a steep downhill road, it is hard for the function to control the vehicle to maintain a correct distance from the vehicle ahead. In these situations, you should be particularly careful and be ready to brake at any time. Do not use Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) under heavy loads.

 The Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) is unable to recognize pedestrians, two-wheeler, tricycles, and vehicles loaded with irregularly shaped objects.

 The Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) cannot recognize stationary or slowly moving vehicles, nor can it recognize oncoming vehicles.

 If the ACC is activated with the vehicle stationary, the system will recognize the stationary obstacle in front of the vehicle as a vehicle and keep still to ensure a safe starting and avoid collisions with the stationary target due to unexpected starting. Stationary targets include but are not limited to speed bumps at intersections, trees, people and railings.

 The Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) can assist the driver, but it cannot replace the driver in driving. Even if the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) is activated, the driver must drive with caution and comply with traffic rules.

 When ACC system is active, if the driver depresses the accelerator pedal, the vehicle will be taken over by the driver to respond to the demand of speeding up. The ACC system's control function will not work.

 When entering or exiting a curve, target selection may be delayed or disturbed. The ACC system may brake unexpectedly or brake late.

 In certain situations (such as when the speed of the vehicle ahead is too low compared to the speed of your vehicle and when the vehicle ahead cuts in the lane of the vehicle with a small distance), the ACC system does not have enough time to reduce the relative speed. In this situation, the driver must respond promptly.

 If the vehicle ahead suddenly brakes (emergency stop), the ACC system may fail to respond timely or react too slowly. In this situation, the driver will not receive a takeover request and needs to actively brake.

 When the vehicle is driving on roads with sharp curves, such as S-shaped roads, as the mid-range radar's field of view is limited, the ACC system cannot properly detect the vehicle ahead, which can cause the ACC-equipped vehicle to accelerate. In this case, the driver needs to react according to real situations.

 If the distance between the vehicle controlled by ACC and the adjacent lane is too small (or if the vehicle in the adjacent lane is too close to the lane of the vehicle controlled by ACC), the ACC system may react to the vehicle and brake.

 When the vehicle ahead in the adjacent lane cuts in the driving trajectory of the vehicle controlled by ACC, the detection may be affected or delayed in certain environments, such as low reflection intensity of the target (pedestrians, two-wheeled vehicles, tricycles), electromagnetic interference, resulting in the ACC system unable to recognize the target or accurately calculate the distance from the vehicle ahead. In this situation, there may be no response from ACC or delayed braking, and the driver needs to actively control the vehicle.

 The field of view of mid-range radar shall not be obstructed by pollutants. Especially when it is covered completely by snow, it will cause the ACC system to be exited, and then the system exit message will be displayed on the instrument cluster to the driver.

 The fitting of mid-range radar may be affected by vibration or collision, which will degrade the system performance. At this time, it is necessary to recalibrate the mid-range radar.

 Drivers must be particularly vigilant when encountering the following situations:

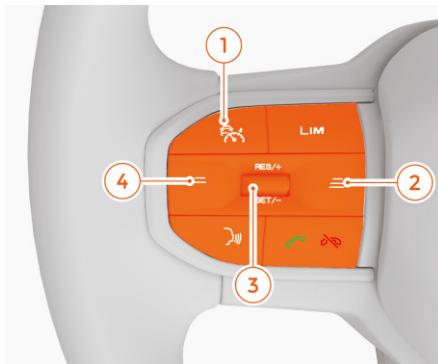
- When the ACC system is activated with the vehicle stationary and confirms to start, if there are pedestrians, children, animals, two-wheeled vehicles, tricycles or obstacles in front of the vehicle, the ACC system cannot detect and identify them, causing a serious risk of collision. The driver must confirm the area in front of the vehicle is safe before activating the ACC system to control the vehicle to start off.
- When overtaking on the left, if the turn signal is turned on, the ACC system automatically accelerates the vehicle to reduce the distance from the vehicle in front. If the vehicle enters the overtaking lane and there is no vehicle ahead, the ACC system will automatically accelerate to the set cruise speed.
- The ACC system cannot detect the items loaded or accessories mounted on the target vehicle that protrude from its side, rear end or roof. If the vehicle ahead is equipped with the above special loads or equipment, the ACC system must be turned off when overtaking such a vehicle.

- Metal objects such as tracks or metal plates used for road construction may interfere with mid-range radar, making it unable to function properly.
- When towing a trailer, ACC and AEB functions cannot be activated due to safety considerations, and the functions exit.
- For safety reasons, do not use the ACC system when the visibility is poor, or when driving on ramps and roads with many curves or on slippery roads (such as roads covered by ice and snow, wet roads or waterlogged roads).
- After the system requires the driver to take over the vehicle, if the vehicle continues to move, the driver must depress the brake pedal to brake.
- If the instrument cluster display prompts the driver to take over the vehicle, the driver must immediately control the distance between the vehicle and the vehicle ahead.
- Drivers must always be prepared to control the vehicle by accelerating or braking.
- The mid-range radar is installed under the front bumper. If the mid-range radar is covered by dirt, the ACC system cannot work normally and text prompts will be displayed on the instrument

cluster. Please clean up timely or visit the Riddara authorised service centre for inspection and maintenance.

- There should be no other objects (such as licence plate bracket) blocking the front and surrounding area of the mid-range radar, otherwise, it may affect the ACC system.
- Structural modifications to vehicles, such as lowering the chassis height or changing the front licence plate mounting plate, may affect the ACC system.

### Control using steering wheel



The ACC button is on the left of the steering wheel.

1. ACC button  
Briefly press this button to turn on, off or exit ACC system.
2. Increase Headway button  
Briefly press this button to increase the following distance of the ACC system.
3. RES+/SET- switch

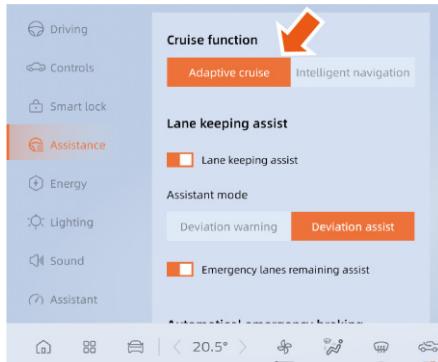
- RES/+ (Restore/Accelerate)  
Push this button in the RES/+ direction to restore the cruise speed to the original setting or increase the cruise speed.
- SET/- (Set/Decelerate)  
Push this button in the SET/- direction to set the current speed to the cruise speed or reduce the cruise speed.

4. Decrease Headway button  
Briefly press this button to decrease the following distance of the ACC system.

**i** To activate the ACC, the following conditions must be met:

- Press the ACC button to turn on the ACC.
- The gear is in the drive position (D).
- The READY indicator lamp on the instrument cluster is on.
- The doors are closed.
- The brake pedal is not depressed while the vehicle is driving.
- There is no fault with the brake disc.
- No over-temperature, fouling or malfunctioning of mid-range radar.
- ESC function is enabled.
- Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is released.
- The driver's seat belt is buckled up.

## Function selection



Click on the multimedia display step by step: My car → Driving assistance → Cruise function, and select Adaptive Cruise Control on this screen.

## Activating and setting vehicle speed

1. When the vehicle is stationary, activate the system and set the vehicle speed as follows:
  - Turn on ACC, and the ACC status indicator lamp on the instrument cluster lights up grey.
  - Depress the brake pedal or activate the AUTO HOLD function.
  - Activate ACC by pushing the RES/+SET/- switch. The set cruise speed is 30 km/h, and the ACC status indicator lamp on the instrument cluster lights up green.

## Starting and driving

- The ACC can keep the vehicle stationary after releasing the brake pedal.
- By pushing the RES/+/SET/- switch again in the RES/+direction or depressing the accelerator pedal, the ACC can control the vehicle to start off.
- The ACC controls the vehicle according to the set cruise speed.

2. When the vehicle is in motion, activate the system and set the vehicle speed as follows:

- Turn on ACC, and the ACC status indicator lamp on the instrument cluster lights up grey.
- Activate ACC by pushing the RES/+/SET/- switch, and the ACC status indicator lamp on the instrument cluster lights up green. When the speed of your vehicle is below 30 km/h, the set cruise speed is 30 km/h. When the speed of your vehicle is above 30 km/h, the set cruise speed is the current speed of your vehicle.
- The ACC controls the vehicle according to the set cruise speed.

3. Push the RES/+/SET/- switch to set the desired cruise speed.

During the cruise process, as the relative vehicle speed changes, the instrument cluster will display different

states of the distance from the previous vehicle to the current vehicle to remind the driver.



In the Active safety interface, the distance between the vehicle ahead and your vehicle is displayed in real-time on the instrument panel, and the size of the vehicle 1 ahead of you will change with the distance. If the vehicle ahead is detected, vehicle 1 is grey. If the vehicle ahead is the target followed by ACC, vehicle 1 is blue; If the distance between the vehicle ahead and your vehicle is relatively close, vehicle 1 is yellow. If the distance between the vehicle ahead and your vehicle is too close, vehicle 1 turns red. If the ACC malfunctions, vehicle 1 is not displayed. If ACC is not activated, the ACC status indicator lamp 2 is grey. If ACC is activated, the ACC status indicator lamp 2 is green. If ACC malfunctions, the ACC malfunction indicator lamp 2 is red.

If ACC is not activated, the set speed 3 is grey.

If ACC is activated, the set speed 3 is green.

If ACC malfunctions, the set speed 3 will not be displayed. In addition, if ACC is activated and the ACC button is pressed, the set speed 3 will be shown as “— —km/h” in grey after pressing the main switch.

## Setting headway

 The driver is responsible for choosing a safe headway.

The driver can adjust the headway for ACC based on the current road environment. Headway refers to the time it takes for the vehicle to travel to the current position of the vehicle ahead at the current speed, that is, the following distance divided by the vehicle speed.

The driver can reduce or increase the time interval between their vehicle and the vehicle ahead by pressing the headway control button. The headway is divided into three levels: 1.0 s, 1.5 s, and 1.9 s. Each time the ACC button is activated, the system defaults to a time interval of 1.9 s.



When the headway is 1.9 s, the instrument cluster interface displays three squares.



When the headway is 1.5 s, the instrument cluster interface displays two squares.



When the headway is 1.0 s, the instrument cluster interface displays one square.

**!** In any case, the driver must maintain sufficient braking distance from the vehicle ahead and pay attention to the local highway traffic regulations that have corresponding requirements for minimum distance or shortest time. It is the driver's responsibility to comply with the law.

Each short push will increase the vehicle speed by 1 km/h; If pushed for a long time, the vehicle speed will continue to increase by 5 km/h until the button is released, with a maximum set speed of 150 km/h.

### Start-stop mode

In cruise following mode, if the vehicle ahead gradually stops, your vehicle will gradually stop and maintain a safe distance between the two vehicles.

- When your vehicle follows a vehicle and stops within 3 seconds, If the vehicle ahead resumes driving, ACC automatically resumes.
- When your vehicle follows a vehicle and stops for more than 3 seconds, if the vehicle ahead resumes driving, you should depress the accelerator pedal or push the RES/+/SET/- switch in the RES/+direction to resume cruising.
- In ACC start-stop mode, the maximum time to keep the vehicle stationary is 3 minutes. 3 minutes later, the EPB is activated and the ACC is deactivated.
- In ACC start-stop mode, if the driver deactivates the ACC, the vehicle starts up and the driver should take over the vehicle.

ACC is unable to recognize stationary vehicles and perform brake control on stationary vehicles.

### Accelerating under ACC

Acceleration can be realized with either of the following two methods:

- Depress the accelerator pedal for active acceleration. In the case of active acceleration, the driver takes control of the vehicle and the instrument cluster shows the effect of active acceleration. When the driver releases the accelerator pedal, ACC continues to control the vehicle for cruising.
- If ACC has been activated, push the RES/+ button to accelerate slightly.

 After stopping, ACC can still control the vehicle's movement. The vehicle may move without human intervention, which can cause serious injury or death.

 ACC may experience unexpected acceleration in the following situations. Please remain highly alert and actively apply brakes:

- When ACC follows the target vehicle, the target vehicle gradually stops. ACC will ignore the stationary vehicle and continue to cruise at the speed set by the driver.
- At the intersection, follow the vehicle ahead to turn at low speed. As the vehicle ahead turns, the following target disappears, and ACC will accelerate according to the set speed.

## Decelerating under ACC

If ACC has been activated, push the SET/- button to decelerate slightly. Each short push will decrease the vehicle speed by 1 km/h. If pushed for a long time, the vehicle speed will continue to decrease by 5 km/h until the button is released, with a maximum set speed of 30 km/h.

## Restoring the set speed

If the driver has set the ACC speed before depressing the brake pedal or pressing the ACC button, after which

the ACC will be deactivated, the set speed will be stored and the instrument cluster display will continue to display the set speed. To activate the ACC and retain the speed set last time, push the RES/+/SET/- switch towards RES/+.

## Deactivating ACC

The following methods can deactivate the ACC:

- Depress the brake pedal to exit the ACC mode.
- Press the ACC button to exit the ACC.
- When the ACC is activated, press the ACC button twice to turn off the ACC.
- Press and hold the ACC button to turn off the ACC.

ACC relies on the operation of other systems, such as stability control/anti-slip function ESC. If any of these systems stop working, the ACC automatically turns off.

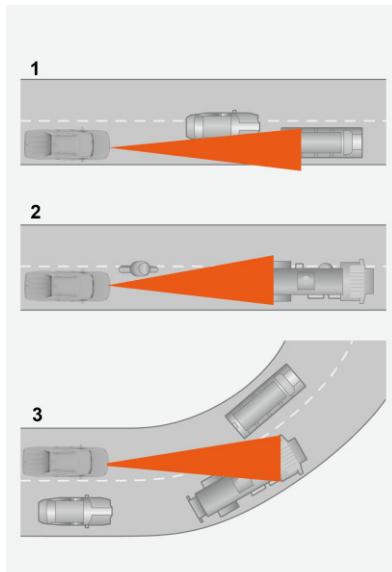
In the case of automatic deactivation, an audio signal will be emitted and text information will be displayed on the instrument cluster display. The driver must intervene to match the speed and headway with the vehicle ahead. Possible reasons of deactivating ACC, including but not limited to:

- The driver door is open.
- The driver unfastens the seatbelt.
- The wheel loses grip.

- The braking temperature is too high.
- The parking brake is applied.
- Mid-range radar is covered by wet snow or heavy rain.

### Detection problem

The detectable range of mid-range radar is limited. In some situations, mid-range radar may fail to detect vehicles or delay the detection time.



Detection problems may occur if:

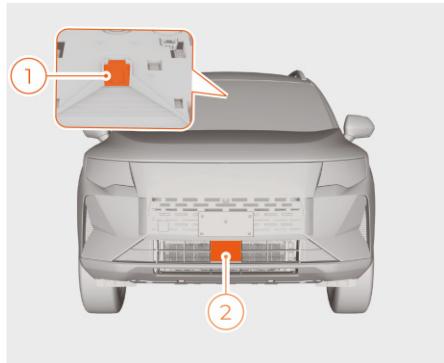
1. There is a vehicle moving slowly along your lane. ACC can only detect the corresponding vehicle that is completely in your lane.
2. When the vehicle ahead is a large truck, the time to detect the vehicle may be delayed.
3. When you enter or exit a curve on the road, detection problems

concerning the vehicle ahead of you may occur.

In these situations, you as a driver should keep alert, take emergency measures if necessary, and turn off the ACC system temporarily.

### Intelligent cruise control (ICC) (if equipped)

The Intelligent Cruise Control (ICC) can simultaneously perform cruise control and direction assistance control at a vehicle speed of 0-150 km/h. The system can control the vehicle speed according to the set vehicle speed and headway, and control the vehicle to drive in the middle of the lane or follow the vehicle ahead for trace control based on the lane lines on both sides. The Intelligent Cruise Control (ICC) is mainly designed to provide driving assistance for drivers on roads with good road conditions, such as highways and elevated roads, and the driver needs to control the vehicle at all times.



The sensors used for Intelligent Cruise Control (ICC) include:

1. Front monocular camera
2. Mid-range radar

The Intelligent Cruise Control (ICC) detects the vehicle ahead and the lane lines on both sides by using mid-range radar and front monocular camera and automatically adjusts the vehicle speed to maintain the speed or headway set by the driver, while maintaining the vehicle in the lane through direction assistance control.

The premise of the Intelligent Cruise Control (ICC) to provide lane keeping assist is that the system simultaneously detects the lane lines on both sides. If it can not detect lane lines or the lane lines are unclear, the Intelligent Cruise Control (ICC) will downgrade to cruise control only and no longer perform direction assistance control; when the system recognizes the lane lines on both sides again, it will automatically restore direction assistance control.



The ICC system is a comfort system, not an emergency warning and anti-collision system. It can assist the driver, but cannot replace the driver. Even if the ICC system is activated, the driver must maintain a distance from the vehicle ahead, control the vehicle at all times and always be responsible for vehicle manoeuvring. The driver needs to drive in accordance with laws and regulations.



Under the following conditions, the recognition performance of the ICC system may decrease or the system may not recognize, in which case the driver needs to actively control the vehicle and brake in time.

- There are some changes in vehicle posture due to excessive load in the luggage area and other reasons.
- The system is unable to recognize pedestrians, two-wheeled vehicles, tricycles and vehicles loaded with irregularly shaped cargo.
- The system is unable to recognize stationary or slow-moving vehicles or oncoming vehicles.
- The system cannot recognize vehicles or objects that cross the driving lane.
- The Intelligent Cruise Control (ICC) may not respond timely if another vehicle jumps the line to the front of the vehicle at low speed.

- When accelerating suddenly and approaching the vehicle ahead at high speed (with a significant speed difference from the vehicle ahead).
- In certain situations (such as when the speed of the vehicle ahead suddenly becomes too low compared to the speed of the vehicle and when the vehicle ahead cuts in the lane of the vehicle with a small distance), the ICC system does not have enough time to reduce the relative speed.
- If the vehicle ahead suddenly brakes (emergency stop), the ICC system may fail to respond timely or react too slowly. In this case, the driver will not receive a takeover request.
- On roads with sharp curves, such as S-shaped roads, as the mid-range radar's field of view is limited, LCC system cannot properly detect the vehicle ahead, which can lead the vehicle controlled by ICC to accelerate.
- When the vehicle ahead in the adjacent lane cuts in the driving trajectory of the vehicle controlled by ICC, the detection may be affected or delayed in certain environments, such as low reflection intensity of the target (pedestrians, two-wheeled vehicles, tricycles), electromagnetic interference, resulting in the ICC system unable to recognize the target or accurately calculate the distance from the vehicle ahead. In this case, there may be no response from the ICC system or delayed braking.
- When the ICC system controls the vehicle to pass through an intersection by following the vehicle ahead, the vehicle will follow the vehicle ahead to perform lateral movement, and there is a risk of side impact with adjacent lanes.
- When the lane lines in the road are close to the road edge.



The driver should adjust the following distance to set the ICC system properly based on the traffic flow ahead and current weather conditions, such as rain and snow. The driver should be able to actively control the vehicle at all times to ensure safe driving.



Do not use the Intelligent Cruise Control (ICC) system under heavy loads.



If the ICC is activated with the vehicle stationary, the system will recognize the stationary obstacle in front of the vehicle as a vehicle and keep still to ensure a safe starting and avoid collisions with the stationary target due to unexpected starting. Stationary targets include but are not limited to speed bumps at intersections, trees, people and railings.

**⚠** When ICC system is active, if the driver depresses the accelerator pedal, the vehicle will be taken over by the driver to respond to the demand of speeding up. The ICC system's control function will not work.

**⚠** When entering or exiting a curve, target selection may be delayed or disturbed. The ICC system may brake unexpectedly or brake late.

**⚠** If the distance between the vehicle controlled by ICC and the adjacent lane is too small (or if the vehicle in the adjacent lane is too close to the lane of the vehicle controlled by ICC), the ICC system may react to the vehicle and brake.

**⚠** The field of view of mid-range radar shall not be obstructed by pollutants. Especially when it is covered completely by snow, it will cause the ICC system to be exited, and then the system exit message will be displayed on the instrument cluster to the driver.

**⚠** The fitting of mid-range radar may be affected by vibration or collision, which will degrade the system performance. At this time, it is necessary to recalibrate the mid-range radar.

**⚠** Drivers must be particularly vigilant when encountering the following situations:

- When the ICC system is activated with the vehicle stationary and confirms to start, if there are pedestrians, children, animals, two-wheeled vehicles, tricycles or obstacles in front of the vehicle, the ICC system cannot detect and identify them, causing a serious risk of collision. The driver must confirm the area in front of the vehicle is safe before activating the ICC system to control the vehicle to start off.
- If the vehicle enters the overtaking lane and there is no vehicle ahead, the ICC system will automatically accelerate to the set cruise speed.
- The ICC system cannot detect the items loaded or accessories mounted on the target vehicle that protrude from its side, rear end or roof. If the vehicle ahead is equipped with the above special loads or equipment, the ICC system must be turned off when overtaking such a vehicle.
- Metal objects such as tracks or metal plates used for road construction may interfere with mid-range radar, making it unable to function properly.
- For safety reasons, when towing a trailer, the ICC function cannot be activated, so this function is

exited.

- For safety reasons, do not use the ICC system when the visibility is poor, or when driving on ramps and roads with many curves or on slippery roads (such as roads covered by ice and snow, wet roads or waterlogged roads).
- After the system requires the driver to take over the vehicle, if the vehicle continues to move, the driver must depress the brake pedal to brake.
- If the instrument cluster display prompts the driver to take over the vehicle, the driver must immediately control the distance between the vehicle and the vehicle ahead.
- Drivers must always be prepared to control the vehicle by accelerating or braking.
- There should be no other objects (such as a licence plate bracket) blocking the front and surrounding area of the mid-range radar, otherwise, it may affect the ICC system.

- The mid-range radar is installed under the front bumper. If the mid-range radar is covered by dirt, the ICC system cannot work normally and text prompts will be displayed on the instrument cluster. Please clean up timely or visit the Riddara authorised service centre for inspection and maintenance.
- Structural modifications to vehicles, such as lowering the chassis height or changing the front licence plate mounting plate, may affect the ICC system.

 Under the following road conditions, the performance of ICC direction assist will degrade or fail to work. The driver should keep alert.

- The ICC system is not suitable for roads with a small curve radius.
- The ICC system is not suitable for roads with invisible lane lines.
- The ICC system is not suitable for fork roads.
- The ICC system is not suitable for roads with vehicle marks (such as tyre marks).
- The ICC system is not suitable for roads with increased or decreased lane numbers.
- The ICC system is not suitable for roads with large deviations between the original lane and the new lane.
- The ICC system may recognize road edges (such as walls, guardrails, curbs, lawns, green belts, and asphalt joints) as lane lines.
- The ICC system is not suitable for pothole roads, bumpy roads and uneven roads.
- The ICC system cannot recognize road signs (cones) and is therefore not suitable for roads under construction.
- The ICC system is not suitable for situations with sudden changes in light, including but not limited to entering/exiting the tunnel.

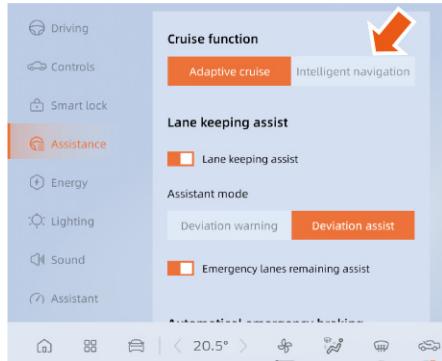
- The ICC system is not suitable for roads that are too wide or too narrow.
- The ICC system is not suitable for roads on which the lane line turns.
- The ICC system is not suitable for steep downhill roads.
- The ICC system is not suitable for poor weather conditions with reduced visibility.
- The ICC system is not suitable for roads that have curbs on both sides, without lane lines.
- The ICC system is not suitable for roads with a lane line on one side and a curb on the other.

When driving through the entrance of highways or main roads, the ICC system is unable to change lanes and may experience function downgrade due to changes in the road, and only ACC is available.

The ICC system is unable to operate under complex road conditions, such as road conditions with heavy traffic, complex and varied traffic conditions, crossings, intersections, ramps, lane line loss, etc., so the driver needs to supervise and be ready to take over.

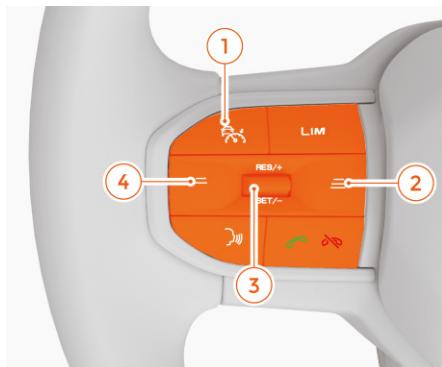
The ICC system only provides a comfortable experience under suitable road conditions, and the driver is fully responsible for safe driving.

## Function selection



Click on the multimedia display step by step: My car → Driving assistance → Cruise function, and select Intelligent Cruise Control (ICC) on this screen.

## Function activation



The ICC control button is on the left of the steering wheel.

### 1. ICC button

Briefly press this button to turn on, off or exit the ICC system.

### 2. Increase Headway button

Briefly press this button to increase the following distance of the ICC system.

### 3. RES/+/SET/- switch

- RES/+ (Restore/Accelerate)  
Push this button in the RES/+ direction to restore the cruise speed to the original setting, increase the cruise speed or increase the speed limit value.

- SET/- (Set/Decelerate)  
Push this button in the SET/- direction to set the current speed to the cruise speed, reduce the cruise speed or decrease the speed limit value.

### 4. Decrease Headway button

Briefly press this button to decrease the following distance of the ICC system.

 To activate the ICC, the following conditions must be met:

- Press the Intelligent Cruise Control (ICC) button to enable the Intelligent Cruise Control (ICC) system.
- The gear is in the drive position (D).
- The READY indicator lamp on the instrument cluster is on.
- The doors are closed.
- The brake pedal is not depressed while the vehicle is in motion.
- There is no fault with the brake disc.
- No over-temperature, fouling or malfunctioning of mid-range radar.
- The ESC system is on.
- Electric Parking Brake (EPB) is released.
- The driver's seat belt is buckled up.

1. When the vehicle is stationary, activate the ICC system as follows:

- Enable the Intelligent Cruise Control (ICC) and the Intelligent Cruise Control (ICC) status indicator on the instrument cluster turns on in grey;
- Depress the brake pedal or activate the AUTO HOLD function.

- Push the RES/+/SET/- switch to activate the Intelligent Cruise Control (ICC);

- The ICC system can keep the vehicle stationary after releasing the brake pedal;
- Push the RES/+/SET/- switch again towards RES/+ or depress the accelerator pedal to enable the Intelligent Cruise Control (ICC) to control the vehicle for starting off.

2. When the vehicle is in motion, activate the ICC system as follows:

- Enable the Intelligent Cruise Control (ICC) and the Intelligent Cruise Control (ICC) status indicator on the instrument cluster turns on in grey;
- Push the RES/+/SET/- switch to activate the Intelligent Cruise Control (ICC) system.

When the vehicle follows the vehicle ahead at low speed, the lane line is blocked by the vehicle ahead or the system cannot detect any lane line temporarily. The system can perform lateral control based on the driving trajectory of the vehicle ahead to maintain longitudinal and lateral operations. In this case, the driver should always keep alert.



Vehicle ahead 1: Grey when the ICC system is not activated; when the ICC system is activated, it is in blue; when the ICC system is activated and the vehicle ahead is close to the vehicle, it is in yellow; when the ICC system is activated and the vehicle ahead is too close to the vehicle, it is in red.

Lane line 2: When the system does not detect lane lines, no lane lines are displayed; when the Lane Keeping Assist (LKA) system is not activated, the lane lines are displayed in grey; when the Lane Keeping Assist (LKA) system intervened with steering wheel control, the lane lines are displayed in blue; when the Lane Keeping Assist (LKA) system gives an alarm, the lane lines are displayed in red.

The curvature of lane lines may be displayed inaccurately due to sensor performance limitations, such as displaying straight lanes as curves.

Intelligent Cruise Control (ICC) status indicator 3: When the ICC system is not activated, the indicator is in grey ;

when ICC system performs cruise control and lane keeping assist simultaneously, the indicator is in

green ; when ICC system has a fault or the driver takes over the steering wheel temporarily, the indicator is in yellow .

Set vehicle speed 4: If the ICC system function is not activated, the set vehicle speed 4 is in grey; if the ICC system function is activated, the set vehicle speed 4 is in white; in addition, if the ICC system is enabled, the set vehicle speed 4 is “— —km/h” in green after pressing the main switch.

### Cruise control

The cruise setting speed adjustment method and headway adjustment method of the Intelligent Cruise Control (ICC) are consistent with that of the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC). The relevant cruise control function modes and precautions of the ICC system are consistent with those of the ACC system. Please refer to the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) section for details.

### Curve deceleration

When the vehicle enters a curve with clear lane lines, the ICC will control the vehicle to slow down appropriately.



- On roads with unclear lane lines (such as roads at night/in rainy or snowy weather), the curve deceleration function may not be activated. The driver needs to pay attention to the road conditions and control the vehicle.
- The curve deceleration function is limited by the lane line conditions and recognition ability and may be triggered incorrectly. Therefore, the driver needs to control the vehicle at all times.

#### Direction assistance control

The Intelligent Cruise Control (ICC) system recognizes the lane lines on both sides when it is activated and keeps the vehicle in the middle of the lane. In this case, the lane pattern in the instrument will be highlighted. If the Intelligent Cruise Control (ICC) system cannot detect the lane lines on either side or both sides, it will no longer maintain the lane centring control but will continue to perform cruise control. At this time, the ICC will give a prompt sound indicating the function is exited, the lane pattern will turn grey, and the colour of the lane lines will turn grey; if the Intelligent Cruise Control (ICC) system recognizes the lane lines on both sides again, it will automatically restore the lane centring

control, and the ICC status indicator will illuminate in green.

When the vehicle follows the vehicle ahead at low speed and the lane line is blocked by the vehicle ahead or temporarily lost, the ICC can perform direction control based on the driving trajectory of the vehicle ahead and the vehicle moves slowly sideways following the vehicle ahead. Therefore, the Intelligent Cruise Control (ICC) system can continue to maintain cruise control and direction control. At this time, the driver should pay special attention to the traffic conditions on both sides.

#### Hand off warning



Please hold the steering wheel firmly

Confirm

6

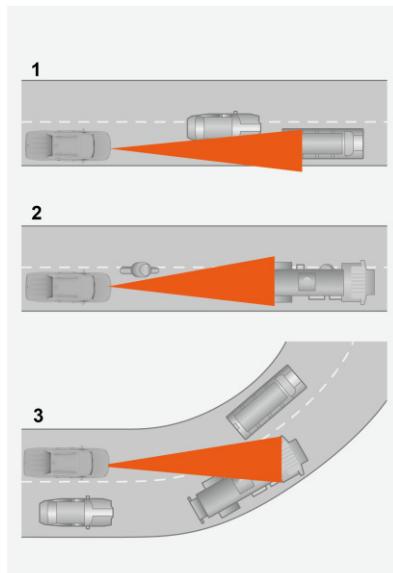
The prerequisite for the Intelligent Cruise Control (ICC) system to work is that the driver holds the steering wheel with both hands. The ICC continuously monitors this, and if the hand-off time exceeds a certain period of time, the instrument cluster will display a hand-off warning message, reminding the

driver to hold the steering wheel tightly with both hands. If the driver does not react, the Intelligent Cruise Control (ICC) system will be exited after the hand-off warning message is displayed again.

If the driver lightly rests his/her hands on the steering wheel for a long time, there may be a hand-off warning prompt. At this time, the driver should hold the steering wheel tightly.

### Detection problem

The detectable range of mid-range radar is limited. In some situations, mid-range radar may fail to detect vehicles or delay the detection time.



Detection problems may occur if:

1. There is a vehicle moving slowly along your lane. The system can

only detect corresponding vehicles that have fully entered the driver's lane.

2. When the vehicle ahead is a large truck, the time to detect the vehicle may be delayed.
3. When you enter or exit a curve on the road, detection problems concerning the vehicle ahead of you may occur.

In these situations, the driver should keep alert, take emergency measures if necessary, and turn off the ICC system temporarily.

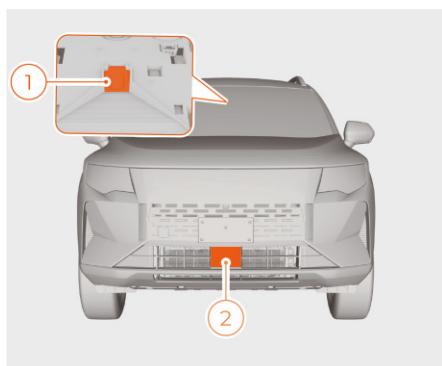
The detectability of the front monocular camera is limited. In certain situations, the front monocular camera may not be able to accurately detect lane lines and is susceptible to interference from the environment. Lane line detection problems may occur if:

- The lane lines are not painted according to national standards and cannot be recognized.
- The clarity and contrast of lane lines are low and cannot be recognized.
- The surface of the lane lines is covered by sand, dust, water, snow, etc., and cannot be recognized.
- The wheel marks caused by the vehicle ahead on rainy and snowy days, as well as those caused by the braking of the vehicle ahead, may be recognized as lane lines due to high contrast.

- Road boundaries, curbs, etc. may be recognized as lane lines.
- Continuous lane-line-shaped shadows on the road, such as the shadow of railings, may be recognized as lane lines.

## Lane keeping assist (LKA) (if equipped)

Lane Keeping Assist (LKA) System consists of Lane Departure Prevention (LDP) and Lane Departure Warning (LDW). This system recognises lane lines via the front monocular camera and calculates the distance between the vehicle and the lane lines on both sides. When the system recognises that the vehicle is departing from the lane, the system will provide auxiliary correction force to prevent the vehicle from departing from the lane or warn the driver to control the vehicle within the lane.



The sensors used for Lane Keeping Assist (LKA) system include:

1. Front monocular camera
2. Mid-range radar

## Function type

### Lane Departure Prevention (LDP)

Lane Departure Prevention (LDP) will assist the driver in controlling the vehicle back to the lane by applying torque to the steering wheel when the vehicle approaches the lane line and there is a risk of deviation.

### Lane departure warning (LDW)

Lane Departure Warning (LDW) alerts the driver in the event of an unintentional lane departure of the vehicle. Unintentional lane departure includes the lane departure that has already occurred and the lane departure that is about to occur.

### Emergency Lane Keeping Assist (ELKA)

The vehicle equipped with Emergency Lane Keeping Assist (ELKA) can help the vehicle return to its own lane in the following situations:

- The vehicle is about to collide with the curb.
- Unintentional lane departure and collision with opposing vehicles occur.
- Unintentional lane departure and collision with the pedestrians in the adjacent lane occur.

**⚠** ELKA cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.

**⚠** This function cannot detect fences, railings or similar obstacles on the roadside.

**⚠** ELKA is enabled only when there is a high risk of collision, so do not wait for this function to intervene.

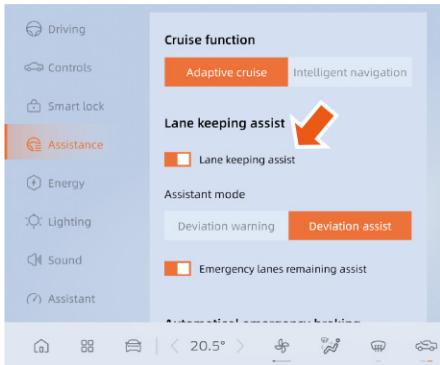
**⚠** The driver should stay attentive and alert at all times to ensure that the vehicle is driven safely at a vehicle speed of 65 km/h, while keeping an appropriate distance from other vehicles and observing current traffic laws and regulations.

After either Lane Departure Warning (LDW) or Lane Departure Prevention (LDP) function is enabled, the Lane Keeping Assist (LKA) system status indicator on the instrument cluster illuminates in green.

- Departure warning: Only Lane Departure Warning (LDW) function is enabled.
- Lane departure assist: Turn on both Lane Departure Warning (LDW) and Lane Departure Prevention (LDP).

**⚠** Emergency Lane Keeping Assist (ELKA) is enabled by default each time the vehicle is started. Lane Departure Warning (LDW) and Lane Departure Prevention (LDP) will memorize the driver's selection status.

### Function on



On the multimedia display, tap My car → Assistance → Lane keeping assist. You can turn on or off Lane Keeping Assist. You can also turn on or off Emergency Lanes Remaining Assist as needed, and select an appropriate assist mode.

**⚠** Lane keeping assist (LKA) is only a driver assist function. It is not a common solution in all driving situations or traffic, weather and road conditions. The driver should always take full responsibility for ensuring safe driving and comply with applicable laws and road traffic regulations.

**⚠** Abnormal tyre pressure, incorrect wheel alignment parameters, inconsistent tire usage, incorrect tyre models or other reasons can all lead to malfunction of lane keeping assist. The driver should use this assist function under normal vehicle conditions.

 Under the following road conditions, the performance of lane keeping assist (LKA) may degrade or fail to work. The driver should keep alert.

- The LKA system is not suitable for roads with a small curve radius.
- The LKA system is not suitable for roads with invisible lane lines.
- The LKA system is not suitable for fork roads.
- The LKA system is not suitable for roads with vehicle marks (such as tyre marks).
- LKA system is not suitable for roads with increased or decreased lane numbers.
- The LKA system is not suitable for roads with large deviation between the original lane and the new lane.

- LKA system may recognize road edges (such as walls, guardrails, curbs, lawns, green belts, asphalt joints) as lane lines to maintain lane centring control according to this boundary. Therefore, there may be a certain deviation between the actual control and the actual lane.
- The LKA system is not suitable for pothole roads, bumpy roads and uneven roads.
- The LKA system is unable to recognize road signs (cones) and is therefore not suitable for roads under construction.
- The LKA system is not suitable for situations with sudden changes in light, including but not limited to when entering/exiting tunnels.
- The LKA system is not suitable for roads that are too wide or too narrow.
- The LKA system is not suitable for roads on which the lane line turns.
- The LKA system is not suitable for poor weather conditions with reduced visibility.

### Display of lane Keeping Assist (LKA)

**i** The curvature of lane lines may be displayed inaccurately due to sensor performance limitations, such as displaying straight lanes as curves. The LKA system will display the information related to the working status of the system on the instrument cluster.

The operating status and relevant information of Lane Keeping Assist (LKA) are displayed on the instrument cluster.

If LKA is activated, the indicator lamp  lights up green; if the system malfunctions, the indicator lamp  turns yellow.



If LKA has not detected any lane line, no lane line is displayed.

When the Lane Keeping Assist (LKA) system is not activated, the lane line is displayed in grey.

When the Lane Keeping Assist (LKA) system is on standby, the lane line is displayed in white.

When the Lane Keeping Assist (LKA) system gives an alarm, the lane line is displayed in red.

When the Lane Keeping Assist (LKA) system detects the intervention of steering wheel torque control, the lane line is displayed in blue.

### Hand off warning



**Please hold the steering wheel firmly**

**Confirm**

The prerequisite for the lane keeping assist (LKA) system to work is that the driver holds the steering wheel with both hands. The system continuously monitors this. If the hands-off time exceeds a certain threshold value, it will give a hands-off warning, reminding the driver to hold the steering wheel tightly with both hands.

If the driver does not take over the vehicle for a long time, causing the system to issue a hand off warning again, the lane keeping assist function will automatically be exited, and this function will be unable to be used until the driver controls the vehicle again.

If the driver lightly rests his/her hands on the steering wheel for a long time, there may be a hand-off warning prompt. At this time, the driver should hold the steering wheel tightly.

## Lane departure warning (LDW) (if equipped)

**!** This system is a driver assistance tool. It is not a substitute for human caution and judgment in driving. The driver still needs to drive carefully. This function can be set through the multimedia display.

**i** When the vehicle speed increases to above 60 km/h, the lane departure warning (LDW) function is automatically activated. When the vehicle speed drops below 55 km/h, this function is deactivated.

When the front camera detects unintentional lane departure, the system will alert you to stay in the original lane through a warning. The system uses the camera installed behind the interior rearview mirror to automatically detect lane lines. LDW can use any combination of visual and auditory sense to warn the driver.

## Warning screen



### Lane departure warning (LDW)

When LDW detects the vehicle departing from the lane, the instrument cluster will display a warning.

The lane line indicates that LDW detects this lane. If this lane is not detected, no lane line is displayed.

If the colour of the lane line is white, it indicates LDW detects lane lines, but the vehicle does not depart from the lane. When the vehicle approaches the lane line, the lane line turns red.

### Warning conditions

When the system detects the following conditions, the system will issue a warning (including warning screen and warning sound) to remind the driver:

1. When driving along the boundary of the lane, there is a risk of deviating from the lane. If no turn signal lamp is turned on, left or

right side warning is issued, reminding the driver to correct the direction.



2. If only lane line on one side is detected and no turn signal lamp is turned on when driving along the boundary of the lane, only issue a warning for the side with lane line.



### Conditions for warning suppression

Lane width  $\leq$  2.5m or  $\geq$  5.5m

Hazard warning lamps are turned on

Emergency brake is applied

ABS and ESP are activated

The steering angle of the steering wheel is large

The steering wheel is turned faster

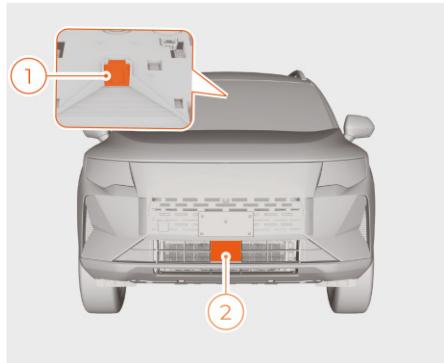
A turn signal lamp is turned on

### Automatic emergency brake system (AEB) (if equipped)

The automatic emergency brake system will take corresponding measures to assist the driver in avoiding or mitigating the collision by monitoring the distance and relative speed of the target ahead when the driver brakes too late, applies too little braking force or does not brake at all. The automatic emergency brake system includes the Automatic Emergency Brake System (AEB) and Forward Collision Warning (FCW) system.

## Warning suppression

After a warning is triggered, if the wheel on the warning side is still within the warning area, a new warning will be suppressed. In addition, the following operations can also suppress the warning:



The sensors used for the automatic emergency brake system include:

1. Front monocular camera
2. Mid-range radar

**⚠** No automatic system can guarantee 100% normal operation under any circumstances. Therefore, do not intentionally drive the vehicle toward people or objects to test the FCW/AEB performance. Otherwise, it may cause traffic accidents, resulting in serious injury or death.

**⚠** The system is for assistance only and cannot detect all pedestrians (if equipped with a front camera), cyclists (if equipped with a front camera) or vehicles under all conditions. The driver is always responsible for driving safely and keeping a safe distance.

**⚠** The system only provides warning and brake assistance, so the driver should always keep alert, be responsible for driving safely and abide by the current laws and traffic regulations.

**⚠** For safety concerns, the system cannot function without the driver seat belt fastened.

**⚠** Usually, the system operates in the background and is not detected by the driver. When the system detects a danger, it will warn or brake to protect the passengers. False triggers may occur due to system performance limitations, and the driver must always pay close attention to the surrounding environment.

**⚠** Please note that the front camera (if equipped) and mid-range radar cannot detect dangerous obstacles ahead in all situations. Bad weather like rain, snow or fog may degrade the system performance and in such cases, some targets may not be detected or detected too late by the system.

**⚠** Certain scenarios will affect the detection of mid-range radar, such as roads with guardrails, tunnels, vehicles ahead driving in/out, and roads with sharp curves.

**⚠** The system will not react to animals, small vehicles (such as tricycles), irregular vehicles, pedestrians (if not equipped with a front camera), cyclists (if not equipped with a front camera), oncoming and crossing vehicles.

 For safety concerns, the implementation of the AEB system needs support from the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system. When the driver switches off the ESC system, the AEB system will not work.

 When the vehicle is subject to impact or strong vibration, the position of the radar may shift, which will degrade the system performance. In severe cases, the system will provide a fault alert. In this case, the driver should contact a Riddara authorised service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

 Please keep the exterior surface of the radar and camera (if equipped with a front camera) clean, otherwise it will affect system performance and in severe cases, AEB cannot work.

 In complex driving conditions, the system may brake unnecessarily. For example, in construction sites, at rails, on road manhole covers, in underground garages, or when the vehicle ahead sprays or splashes water.

 The performance of the system in detecting effective targets may vary depending on vehicles, pedestrians (if equipped with a front camera), cyclists (if equipped with a front camera), scenes and road conditions.

 If the driver depresses the accelerator pedal or performs steering intervention during the automatic emergency braking, the system will exit the automatic emergency braking even if a collision cannot be avoided.

 If the AEB is triggered, the driver still needs to depress the brake pedal forcibly.

 Strong sunlight, reflections and extreme light contrast may make it difficult for the driver to see the visual warning signal, and may also affect the detection ability of the front camera (if equipped).

 The front camera (if equipped) and mid-range radar have a limited field of view. In some situations, the system may detect vehicles or pedestrians (if equipped with a front camera) or cyclists (if equipped with a front camera) later than the expected time or not detect them at all.

 Please keep the front camera (if equipped) and mid-range radar and their surrounding areas clean to ensure the system works properly. Do not place or stick any objects around the front of the front camera (if equipped) and mid-range radar. Otherwise, the system will not work properly.

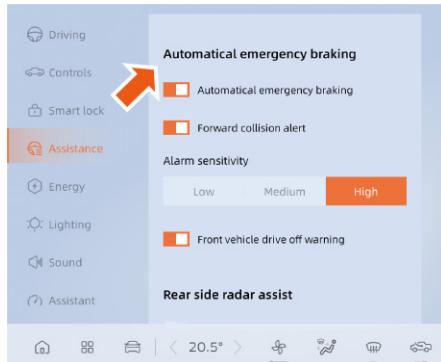
**!** When the front camera (if equipped) is blocked or its function is limited, the automatic emergency braking performance may be degraded or even unavailable.

**!** The braking distance will be extended on slippery roads, which may reduce the anti-collision performance of the AEB.

**i** If the temperature inside the vehicle is very high, the front camera may be temporarily turned off and the system may not issue a warning (if equipped with a front camera).

**i** This function will not be enabled when the driving speed is low, so the system will not intervene and brake when the vehicle is approaching the vehicle or pedestrian ahead at a low speed, for example, when parking.

## Function on



Click on the multimedia display step by step: My car → Driving assistance →

Automatic emergency brake, and then turn on or off the automatic emergency brake function on this screen.

The automatic emergency brake system is a safety system. It is activated by default in every power-on cycle. After being turned on, it allows activation of the alarm function and selection of its sensitivity. The system will save the driver's selection, and it is unnecessary to select each time when getting on the vehicle.

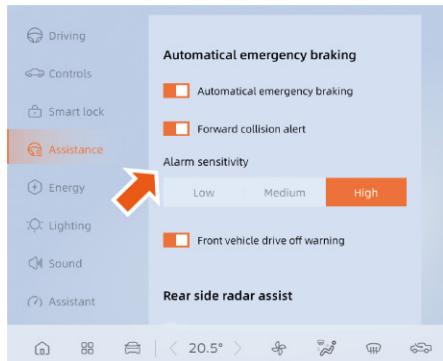
The alarm sensitivity is divided into three levels: low, mid, and high.

Low sensitivity: indicates the alarm distance is shorter and the alarm is relatively late.

Mid sensitivity: indicates the alarm distance is moderate and the alarm is between early and late.

High sensitivity: indicates the alarm distance is longer and the alarm is relatively early.

If the driver thinks the alarm is too frequent, a lower sensitivity can be selected to reduce the total alarms.



The system will assist the driver in the following ways when it detects that there is a danger:

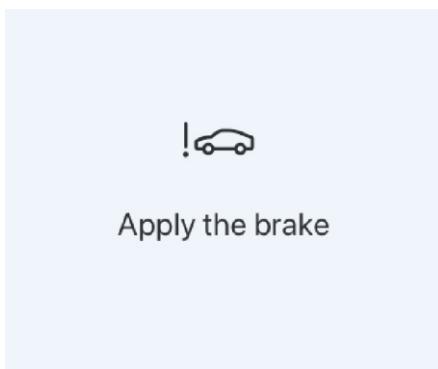
- Safe distance alarm  
The safe distance alarm function operates in a non-emergency state. When the vehicle speed reaches 65 km/h or higher, it is used to remind the driver that the distance following the vehicle ahead is too small. The driver should adjust the driving behaviour and keep a proper distance.
- Predictive collision warning (PCW)  
When the vehicle speed reaches 30 km/h or higher and the system judges there is a potential collision risk, it will remind the driver of the potential collision risk by providing an alarm sound and displaying alarm images on the instrument cluster.
- Emergency brake assist (EBA)  
When the vehicle speed reaches 30 km/h or higher, if a danger occurs, but the driver's current braking force is too small, the system will

assist the driver in increasing the braking force to avoid or mitigate the collision.

- Automatic emergency brake (AEB)  
When a danger occurs and the driver fails to brake effectively, the system will intervene promptly and perform an automatic emergency brake to avoid or mitigate the collision. Automatic emergency brake can reduce the speed by up to 60 km/h.

### Function activation

When the AEB system is triggered, picture and text prompts will be displayed on the instrument cluster with an acoustic alarm.



### Emergency brake function for pedestrians and two-wheeled vehicles

The purpose of the emergency brake function for two-wheeled vehicles is to avoid or mitigate the collision with

two-wheeled vehicles crossing the lane.

The emergency brake functions for two-wheeled vehicles include:

- Pre-filling: pretreatment of the brake system to achieve faster deceleration and decompression.
- Two-wheeled vehicle warning: When the system detects a collision risk with the two-wheeled vehicle ahead, it sends an acoustic and image alarm to remind the driver to respond.
- Automatic emergency brake - partial braking: trigger the automatic partial braking in case of emergency collision with two-wheeled vehicles and no response from the driver.
- Automatic emergency brake - full braking: trigger full braking in case of emergency collision with two-wheeled vehicles and no response from the driver.
- When the emergency braking function for two-wheeled vehicles in the AEB system is triggered, picture and text prompts will be displayed on the instrument cluster with an acoustic alarm.
- This function is activated at a vehicle speed of 4-90 km/h.

## Target detection

The targets that can be detected by the Automatic Emergency Brake System (AEB) include vehicles

(passenger cars, trucks, buses, etc.), pedestrians and cyclists.

### Vehicles

Automatic Emergency Brake System (AEB) can detect most stationary vehicles or vehicles moving in the same direction.

The vehicles can be detected within a certain range at night only when the front combination lamp turns on normally.

### Pedestrians

The system can work best only when it detects clear and accurate information about the body shape of the pedestrian. This means that the system can identify the head, arms, shoulders, thighs, upper body, lower body and other parts of the person clearly when standard human movements are detected.

The system can detect pedestrians that contrast with the background, such as pedestrians whose clothing colour has a sharp contrast with the surrounding environment colour.

If the contrast is low, pedestrians will be detected later or not detected at all, which means that warnings and braking will be delayed or unavailable. If the pedestrians are partially blocked, their body shapes cannot be easily identified based on their clothing, and if they are less than 0.8 m tall or carrying large objects, they cannot be

detected, which means the braking cannot be achieved.

### Cyclists

The system can only identify adult cyclists riding bicycles designed for adults. The system can work best only when it detects clear and accurate information about the human body and bicycle contours. This means that the system can clearly recognize the bicycle, head, arms, shoulders, thighs, upper body, lower body, etc., in combination with standard human movement.

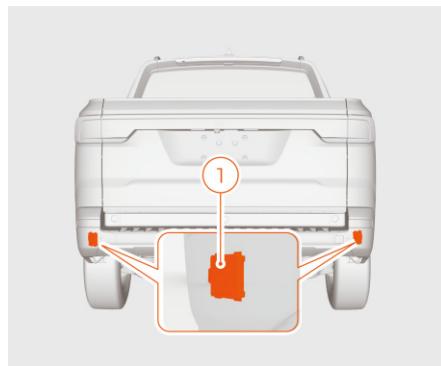
The cyclists who are blocked partially with low background contrast or with large cargo loaded cannot be detected by the system, which means the braking cannot be realized.

### Shutdown and fault

The AEB OFF indicator on the instrument cluster lights up when the AEB is turned off. When AEB fails, the AEB malfunction indicator lamp on the instrument cluster lights up.

### Rear side radar system (RSRS) (if equipped)

Rear Side Radar System (RSRS) detects the rear side area of the vehicle with the millimetre wave radar sensors mounted on both sides inside the rear bumper and provides Lane Change Assist (LCA), Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA), Rear Collision Warning (RCW) and Door Open Warning (DOW).



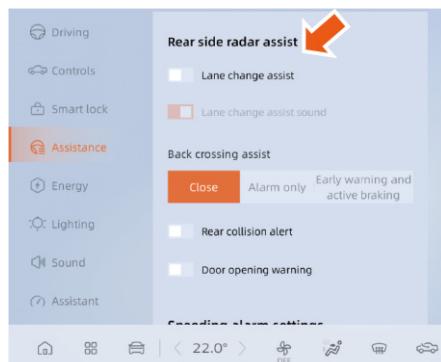
#### 1. Rear side millimetre wave radar

 If the temporary fault is not resolved or the system has a fault, please contact a Riddara authorised service centres for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

 Please keep the surface on both sides of the rear bumper clean.

- Do not place any objects, tapes or labels in the sensor area.
- Do not remove or replace the sensor without authorization.

### Function on



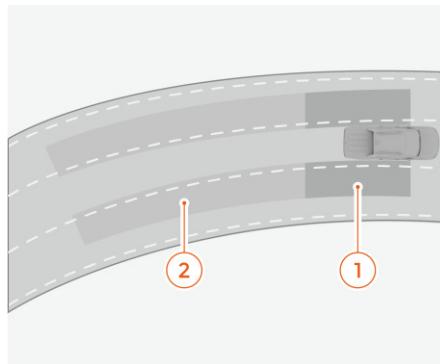
On the multimedia display, tap My car → Assistance → Rear side radar assistance. You can turn on or off individual functions. All function switches will maintain the last set status.

The system reminds the driver to drive safely through the illumination/ flashing of the blind spot warning lights in the exterior rearview mirror, prompts on the instrument cluster, acoustic alarms and flashing of hazard warning lights.

With the start switch in the ON position, when the rear side radar system status indicator  on the instrument cluster is in green, the system functions properly and when this indicator  is in yellow, the system has a fault.

## Lane Change Assist (LCA)

Lane Change Assist (LCA) covers blind spot areas and the rear side area where vehicles approach fast. It helps the driver to be more alert to the approaching vehicles from blind spots and the rear side, especially when turning or changing lanes. The Lane Change Assist (LCA) functions at a vehicle speed of 15-155km/h.



1. Blind spot areas
2. Area with fast-approaching vehicles

When the warning conditions are met, the exterior rearview mirror warning light turns on or flashes. If the sound of Lane Change Assist (LCA) is turned on, there is a sound alarm.



LCA may not function in the following situations:

- In bad weather, such as rainy and snowy days.
- For stationary targets, etc.
- For pedestrians, bicycles, etc.
- In sharp curves, open areas, etc.

- When the driver quickly changes the lane within a short period.

**⚠** The Lane Change Assist (LCA) function does not work in all situations and is not a substitute for the interior rearview mirror and exterior rearview mirror.

**⚠** The Lane Change Assist (LCA) function is only a driver assistance function, and it cannot avoid collisions. The driver must always control the vehicle, pay attention to alarm reminders and take corresponding measures, and bear full driving responsibility for vehicle control. The driver needs to drive in accordance with laws and regulations.

### Rear Collision Warning (RCW)

It displays a warning message on the instrument to remind the driver of a fast-approaching vehicle from behind while the hazard warning lamp flashes to remind the vehicle behind.



The Rear Collision Warning (RCW) function is on in non-R gear and the

vehicle does not roll backwards. It detects the approaching targets from behind, including the following:

- Motor vehicles.
- Electric vehicles or motorcycles.

RCW may not function properly in the following situations:

- The vehicle behind changes the lane at the last minute.
- In bad weather such as rainy and snowy days.
- In sharp curves, on slopes or in other scenes, the detection of vehicles behind is too late.
- The vehicle speed exceeds 150 km/h or the relative speed to the vehicle behind is less than 10 km/h.

**⚠** Rear Collision Warning (RCW) function is only a driver assistance function and cannot work in all situations.

- Rear Collision Warning (RCW) function cannot avoid collisions and the driver should pay attention to the reminder and take corresponding measures, always taking safe driving as his or her responsibility.

### Door open warning (DOW)

When the vehicle is stationary, the sensor detects moving targets approaching from the rear side. When there is a potential risk of collision when opening the door, the blind spot warning light in the exterior rearview

mirror turns on and emits an acoustic warning, reminding the driver to pay attention to the risk when opening the door.

Door Open Warning (DOW) function mainly detects the following targets:

- Motor vehicles.
- Electric vehicles or motorcycles (two-wheeled vehicles).
- Bicycles.
- Pedestrians.

DOW may not function properly in the following situations:

- In bad weather, such as rainy and snowy days.
- For stationary targets or slow-moving targets.
- For fast-approaching or moving-away vehicles.
- The radar beam is blocked by surrounding obstacles or parked vehicles.

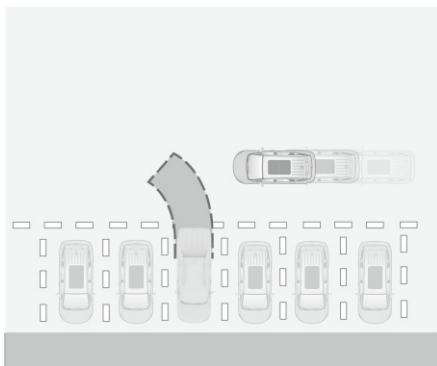
**i** The Door Open Warning (DOW) function stops operating after the vehicle is powered off for 3 minutes or the vehicle is locked and powered off.

**!** The Door Open Warning (DOW) function is only a driver assistance function and it does not work in all situations and is not a substitute for the interior rearview mirror and exterior rearview mirror.



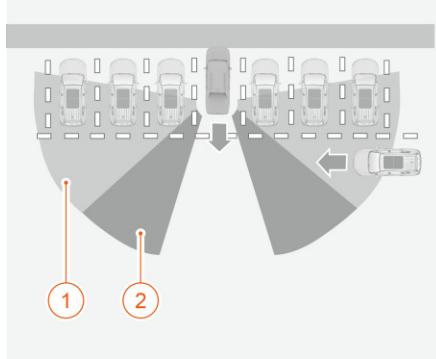
Door Open Warning (DOW) is not a substitute for cautious judgment of the driver and passengers. It is always the responsibility of the driver and passengers to open the door and get out of the vehicle safely.

## Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA)



When the system detects a collision risk between a moving vehicle approaching laterally from the rear side and the vehicle during reversing, the blind spot warning light in the exterior rearview mirror flashes and emits an acoustic warning, reminding the driver to pay attention to the traffic behind the vehicle.

If the risk of collision is high and the driver does not take avoidance measures, it will actively apply the brake to stop the vehicle.



1. Blind spot
2. Detectable area

RCTA may not function properly in the following situations:

- The radar is blocked by surrounding obstacles.
- In bad weather, such as rainy and snowy days.
- For stationary targets or slow-moving targets.
- For fast-approaching or moving-away vehicles.



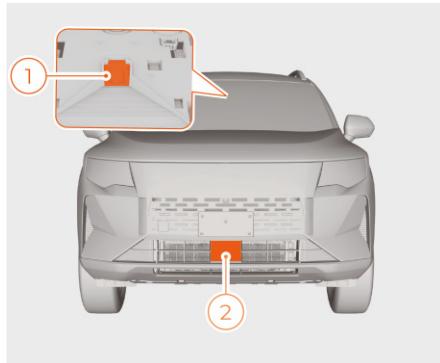
The Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) function is only a driver assistance function and it does not work in all situations and is not a substitute for the interior rearview mirror and exterior rearview mirror.



Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) does not in any way mean that the driver can be inactive and lax, and it is always the responsibility of the driver to reverse correctly and safely. Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) function cannot prevent collisions from occurring, the driver needs to pay attention to the alarm and take appropriate measures, always taking safe driving as his or her responsibility.

### Forward car leaving warning (FCLW) (if equipped)

When the vehicle stops following the vehicle ahead, the vehicle ahead starts off to leave. When the vehicle ahead has driven a certain distance and reached a certain speed, and there are no other suppression conditions, the Forward Car Leaving Warning (FCLW) function will be triggered. It reminds the driver by displaying a text "forward vehicle leaving" in current interface of the instrument and emitting an alarm sound; when the reminder exceeds a certain period of time or the vehicle starts off, or one of the suppression conditions is met, the warning function stops.



Sensors for Forward Car Leaving Warning (FCLW) include:

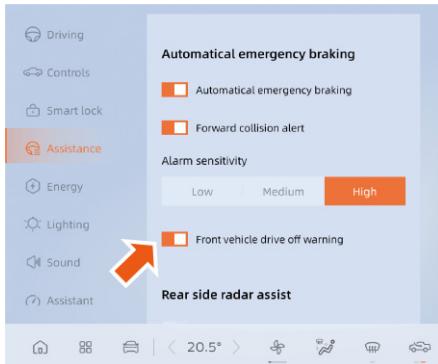
1. Front monocular camera
2. Mid-range radar

## Conditions for warning suppression

- The gear is not in D;
- Doors, bonnet and cargo compartment tailgate are not closed completely;
- EPB is pulled up;
- The driver slams on the accelerator pedal;
- The driver seat belt is unfastened;
- The relevant sensor has a fault;
- The distance between the vehicle and the vehicle ahead is too far;
- The time of your vehicle and the vehicle ahead being stationary is short.

**⚠** Forward Car Leaving Warning (FCLW) function is only a driver assistance function, but not a substitute for the observation and judgment about traffic conditions as well as the responsibility of the driver for safe driving. Due to the complex driving environment of vehicles such as real-time traffic, roads and weather, the sensors cannot ensure accurate detection under various conditions. If the sensor cannot detect the vehicle ahead, the start off reminder will not work.

## Function on



On the multimedia display, tap My car → Assistance → Automatic emergency braking. To enable or disable the Forward Car Leaving Warning (FCLW) function, turn on or off Front Vehicle Drive Off Warning.



Front vehicle has left

After the function is activated, a text  
“The vehicle ahead has departed,  
please resume cruise” on the  
instrument with an alarm sound.

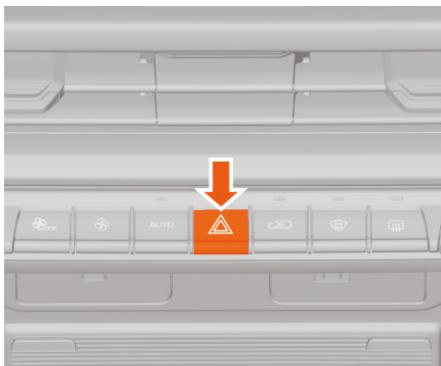
## Hazard warning device

### Hazard warning lamp

#### Type I



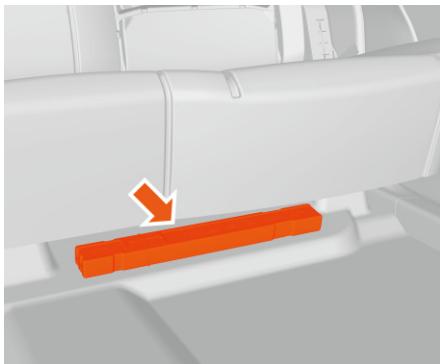
#### Type II



In special cases where the vehicle needs to be decelerated or stopped in an emergency, press the hazard warning lamp switch. The indicator lamp on the switch will flash with the exterior left & right turn signal lamps to warn other road users. Press the switch again to turn off the hazard warning lamp.

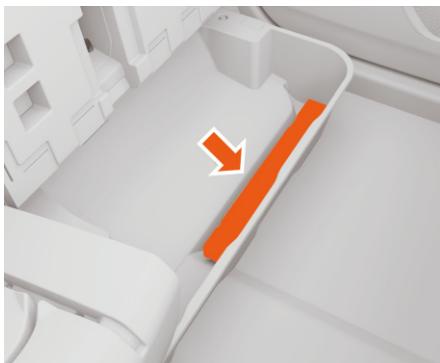
### Warning triangle

#### Type I

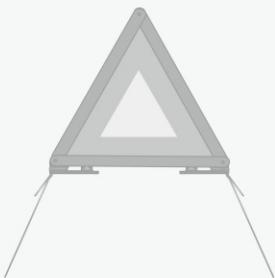


The warning triangle is stored under the rear seat.

#### Type II



The warning triangle is stored under the rear seat and can be seen by turning back the seat cushion.



On an ordinary road, set the warning triangle 50 m to 100 m behind the vehicle; on an expressway, set it 150 m behind the vehicle, or 200 m in case of rain or fog.

### Reflective vest

#### Type I



#### Type II

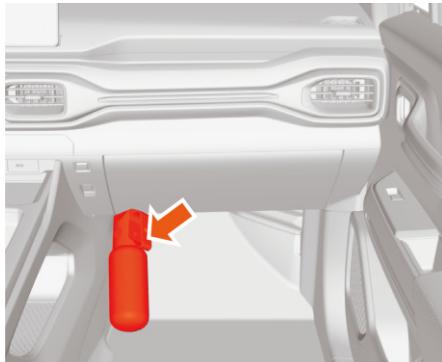


The reflective vest is stored in the glove box and can be seen by opening the box.

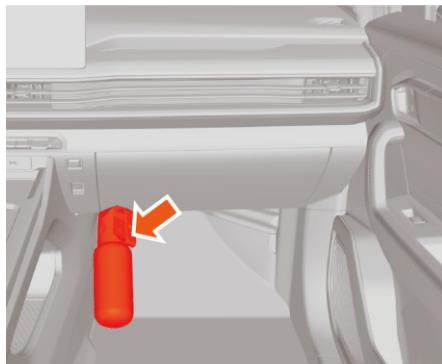
 In an emergency, the driver should wear a reflective vest in the vehicle before exiting the vehicle to protect personal safety.

### Fire extinguisher

#### Type I



## Type II



The fire extinguisher is placed in front of the front passenger seat.

**!** In case of emergency, on the premise of ensuring your own safety, organize firefighting, and contact the fire service for professional handling.

## Jump start

## Jump start

The vehicle is equipped with an intelligent recharge function, which recharges the low-voltage battery automatically from the high-voltage battery when the low-voltage battery is depleted. If the low-voltage battery is depleted for other reasons and the vehicle needs to be jump-started, perform the following operations to ensure safety.

 Improper use of jump lead may lead to a low-voltage battery explosion, resulting in serious injury or death! To reduce the risk of accidents, observe the following points:

- When working in the front compartment, always carefully read and observe the related safety warning instructions.
- Always carefully read and observe the safety warning instructions related to low-voltage battery operations.
- The voltage of the low-voltage power supply battery must be the same as that of the depleted low-voltage battery (12V), and the capacities of the two low-voltage batteries should also be the same as far as possible (see the specifications marked on the low-voltage battery); otherwise, it may cause an explosion!
- If the low-voltage battery freezes, do not use the jump lead to start the vehicle; otherwise, it is very easy to cause an explosion! Even after the low-voltage battery is thawed, the electrolyte in it may leak, resulting in chemical ablation. Therefore, frozen low-voltage batteries must be replaced!
- Strictly observe the operating instructions provided by the jump lead manufacturer.

- Do not connect the negative cable directly to the negative terminal of the depleted low-voltage battery; otherwise, the gas generated by the low-voltage battery may be ignited by the electric spark, causing an explosion!
- There should be no static electricity near the low-voltage battery, because the gas in it may be ignited by the electric spark generated by static electricity, causing an explosion!
- Do not connect the negative cable to the brake hose/line.

The uninsulated parts of the wire clamp should not contact each other. In addition, the jump lead connected to the positive terminal of the low-voltage battery must not be in contact with the metal parts of the vehicle. Otherwise, it may cause a short circuit.

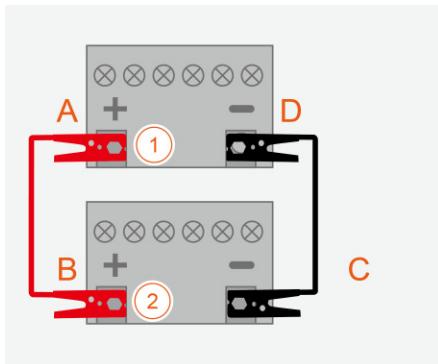
Place the jump lead properly, taking care to avoid contact with the moving parts in the front compartment.

Never lean over the low-voltage battery during operation, and be careful not to be burned by acid fluid!

### Connecting jump lead

1. Turn the start switch to the OFF position and turn off all lights and electrical accessories of the vehicle except the hazard warning lamp (if necessary).

**!** Using an open flame near the low-voltage battery may cause the gas in the low-voltage battery to explode, resulting in serious injury or death. The acid fluid in the low-voltage battery may cause burns, so do not let the acid fluid splash on your body. If the acid fluid spills into your eyes or on the skin, rinse with water and seek medical attention immediately.



1. Depleted low-voltage battery
2. Charged low-voltage battery
2. Connect one end of the red positive cable to the positive (+) terminal (A) of the depleted low-voltage battery.
3. Connect the other end of the red positive cable to the positive (+) terminal (B) of the charged low-voltage battery.
4. Connect one end of the black negative cable to the negative (-) terminal (C) of the charged low-voltage battery.
5. Connect the other end of the black negative cable to the negative (-) terminal (D) of the depleted low-voltage battery.

6. Try starting the vehicle with a depleted low-voltage battery. Please contact a Riddara authorised service centre if it doesn't start after several attempts.

**!** Connect or remove the jump leads in the correct order, and ensure that the leads do not contact each other or other metals. If the jump leads are connected or removed in the wrong order, an electrical short circuit may occur, and the vehicle may be damaged, resulting in repairs that are not covered by warranty.

### Removing jump lead

Disconnect the jump leads in the order of terminals D-C-B-A.

### Towing vehicle

#### Towing tips

This is a hybrid vehicle and you can choose a platform device to tow the vehicle. The operator loads your vehicle onto the truck. This is the best way to transport your vehicle.



Both the towing vehicle and the towed vehicle shall turn on the hazard warning lamps.



Do not tow the vehicle yourself, otherwise it will be seriously damaged.

#### Towing eye

The towing eye is stored in the tool kit under the rear seat and can be used to tow a vehicle that has been broken down.

When using the towing eye, follow the instructions in "Towing Tips" and "Precautions When Using the Towing Eye" in this section.



#### Precautions when using the towing eye

- Ensure that the towing eye is firmly and reliably screwed into the mounting hole.
- It is recommended to install a licensed tow bar or rope on the towing eye.
- Do not use the towing eye to tow the vehicle to the platform rescue vehicle.
- Do not use the towing eye to rescue a trapped vehicle.



Keep a safe distance from the vehicle when using the towing eye.

- Do not use a towing chain/belt on the towing eye. The towing chain/belt may break, resulting in personal injury or death.
- Failure to follow the correct instructions for the use of the towing eye may result in a rupture of the component, which may result in personal injury or death.

**⚠** The towing eye is only for road rescue and shall not be used for other purposes.

- When using the towing eye, be sure to use the corresponding equipment (such as a rigid tow bar or towing rope) in accordance with road traffic regulations to tow the vehicle over a short distance to the nearest maintenance point.
- The towing eye must not be used to tow vehicles on off-highway or road surface with obstacles.
- When using the towing eye, the towing vehicle and the towed vehicle must be kept on the same centre line as much as possible. Failure to follow the above instructions may result in damage to the vehicle.

## Fitting the front towing eye

### Type I

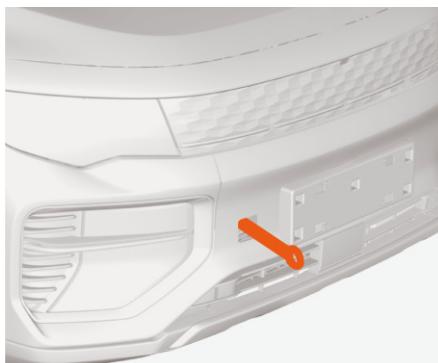


### Type II

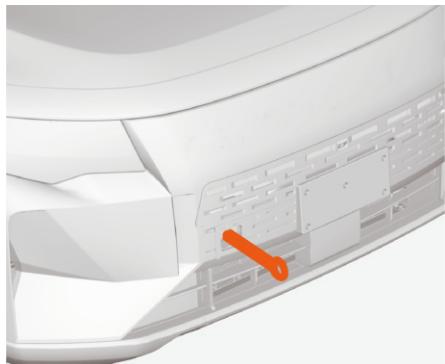


The mounting hole for the front towing eye is located on the right side of the front bumper.

### Type I



### Type II



When installing the front towing eye, pry up the towing hole cover plate at its lower edge, and then screw the towing eye into the mounting hole to ensure that the towing eye is fully tightened.

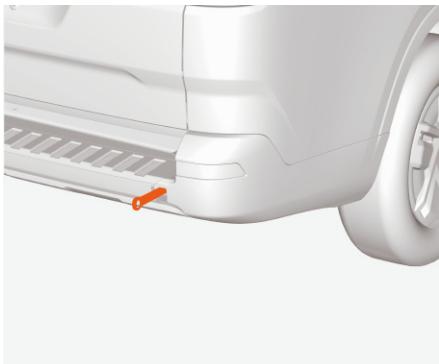


Drive the vehicle slowly, as too much traction will damage the vehicle.

### Fitting the rear towing eye



The mounting hole for the rear towing eye is located on the right side of the rear bumper.



When installing the rear towing eye, pry up the towing hole cover plate at its lower edge, and then screw the towing eye into the mounting hole to ensure that the towing eye is fully tightened.

### Towing mode (if equipped)

The vehicle is equipped with the function of towing RVs. After the towing function is activated, the following comfort and safety assist functions will be temporarily restricted and stop working, and will be restored when the towing function is switched off:

- Parking distance control (PDC)
- Rear view camera (RVC) system
- Adaptive cruise control (ACC)
- Automatic emergency brake system (AEB)
- Lane keeping assist (LKA)
- Intelligent cruise control (ICC)
- Blind spot detection (BSD)
- Door open warning (DOW)

- Parking assist
- Smart U-turn assist

When towing a recreational vehicle (RV), the driver is required to have the relevant qualifications. Before using the towing function, check the regulations about relevant motor vehicles in the local region. Because the regulations vary in regions, you need to select the RV that meets the specifications, and you can consult the Riddara authorised service centre before towing.



Be sure to make a smooth start-off and avoid rapid acceleration or emergency braking on slippery surfaces, which may result in loss of vehicle control due to skidding. Side wind and rough roads may cause the vehicle to swing, seriously affecting the manoeuvring of the vehicle. In any case, if you notice slight vehicle sway, hold the steering wheel with both hands and slowly reduce the speed. When towing a vehicle, the vehicle's braking distance will be increased. Therefore, you should increase the distance from the vehicle ahead.

When overtaking, the towing vehicle needs a longer overtaking distance before returning to the original driving lane.

When towing a vehicle, be sure to turn smoothly, try to avoid bumps or sudden manoeuvring of the steering wheel, and turn on the turn signal lamps in advance.

The towing vehicle should slow down in advance when driving towards a steep or long slope. The speed is controlled according to the weight of the towed vehicle and the slope of the road.

Avoid parking on slopes as much as possible. If this is unavoidable, place a stopper under the tyres of the towing vehicle and the towed vehicle, and apply the parking brake. To avoid the trailer function failure, do not tow a heavily-loaded RV.

The trailer socket should be checked and cleaned promptly after contacting water to ensure it is dry and clean inside the socket.

When installing and using the trailer socket, do not twist the shell at will to avoid socket failure.

Do not remove and reassemble the trailer socket without permission to avoid the failure of the trailer socket.

**⚠** Before driving, make sure the tyre pressure, lighting and connection devices of the towing vehicle and trailer are normal.

- When towing an RV, please comply with relevant local laws and regulations and never modify the vehicle without permission.
- Make sure that the cargo is securely attached to the trailer and that the trailer is level.
- Do not use a new vehicle to tow an RV within its break-in period.
- Do not tow an RV equipped with an electric service brake.

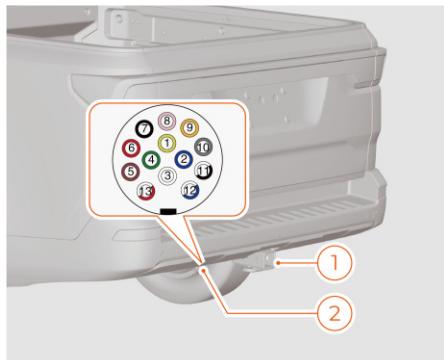
**⚠** When the electrical connector is not connected to the port of the RV to be towed, do not use a high-pressure water gun to clean the electrical connector directly, which may cause water to enter into the connector and cause damage to it.

The electrical connector equipped on the vehicle is a 13-core coil, and the corresponding standard of the electrical outlet is ISO 11446:2004. The specific pin functions are as follows:

| Pin number | Function               |
|------------|------------------------|
| 1          | Left turn signal lamp  |
| 2          | Rear fog lamp          |
| 3          | General ground wire    |
| 4          | Right turn signal lamp |
| 5          | Right position lamp    |
| 6          | Brake lamp             |
| 7          | Left position lamp     |
| 8          | Reversing lamp         |
| 9          | Connecting battery     |
| 10         | Switch power           |
| 11         | Switch GND             |
| 12         | Vacant                 |
| 13         | Power GND              |

### Electrical connector

The electrical connector is installed at the central left position on the rear bumper and can be used after the protective cover is opened.



1. Towing hook
2. Electrical connector

## Towing mode on and off

When the vehicle is in P gear, the towing mode is actively turned on after the electrical connector is connected, and the towing mode is turned off when the connector is disconnected.

 Before turning on the towing mode, ensure the vehicle is in P gear.

## Technical parameters

The towing capacity of the vehicle depends on vehicle specifications, load, road conditions, trailer specifications, etc. Please refer to the table below for specific parameters.

| Item   | Parameters  |
|--|---|
| Maximum authorised towed mass (with braking) (kg):       | 2500  |
| Maximum authorised towed mass (without braking) (kg):    | 750   |
| Size limit for allowable towed centre axle trailer (mm): | Not exceeding its body width ( $\leq 1900$ )                          |
| Connecting ball joint:                                   | Comply with the size requirements of ECE R55 A CLASS for ball joints. |

## Replacing tyres

### Tyres

#### Overview

If you have any questions about the tyre warranty and repair points, please see the vehicle's Warranty and Maintenance Manual for details. For additional information, please contact the tyre manufacturer.

 Tyres lack maintenance and used incorrectly are very dangerous. Tyre overload or underinflation can cause tyre deformation, leading to serious injury or death.

Be sure to check all tyres frequently to maintain the recommended pressure values. Check the tyre pressure when the tyres are cold. Please see "Tyre Pressure (Cold)" in "Technical Data". Overinflated tyres are more likely to be scratched, punctured or burst by sudden impact. Therefore, the tyre should maintain the recommended pressure value.

Old or damaged tyres can lead to accidents. If a tyre's tread is seriously worn or the tyre has been damaged, replace it in time.

### Tyre pressure

The tyre cannot work effectively unless it has the correct inflation pressure.

 Underinflation or over-inflation of the tyre may affect the tyre and the vehicle driving.

If the tyre is underinflated, the following may occur:

- Excessive deformation
- Overheating
- Tyre overload
- Premature or irregular wear
- Poor manoeuvrability

If the tyre is overinflated, the following may occur:

- Abnormal wear
- Poor manoeuvrability
- Poor riding comfort
- Unnecessary damage due to dangerous road conditions



A tyre pressure label is attached to the vehicle. The label is located below the outside of the left centre pillar and indicates the recommended tyre pressure.

### Tyre pressure monitoring system

The tyre pressure monitoring system alerts the driver to check the tyre pressure by turning on the abnormal tyre pressure warning lamp. After the tyres are inflated to the pressure recommended on the tyre pressure label when they are cold, each tyre should be checked once a month.

If the abnormal tyre pressure warning lamp is on, it indicates that one or more tyres have abnormal pressures. In this case, stop the vehicle as soon as possible, check the tyre pressure and deflate the tyre to the correct pressure. The tyre pressure label attached to the vehicle indicates the cold tyre pressure. The vehicle's tyre pressure monitoring system can alert you of abnormal tyre pressure, but it is not a substitute for normal tyre maintenance, as described in the "Tyre Inspection and Rotation" section of this chapter.

#### Calibration of Indirect TPMS (if equipped)

Calibration of the tyre pressure monitoring system is required when one of any following conditions occur:

- The inflation pressure of one or more tyres is adjusted.
- After a tyre/wheel has been replaced or transposed.
- After the dynamic balance of wheels have been performed.

- After replacing the ESC control module.
- After the tyre pressure monitoring system has been recalibrated, if there is a sharp change in the ambient temperature outside the vehicle (change of more than 40°C).
- After every 6 months or 10,000 kilometres of vehicle driving (whichever comes first).

#### System calibration mode

- Inflate the tyres to the recommended pressure (check the pressure tag on the driver door pillar).
- Set start switch to ON.



- On the multimedia display, tap Settings → Vehicle → Tire pressure monitoring. You can choose to calibrate the tyre pressure monitoring system. Follow the system prompts and start the calibration after ensuring that all tyre pressures meet the recommended values.
- After the tyre pressure monitoring reset has been activated, drive for a few minutes at speeds higher than 40km/h. The calibration of the tyre pressure monitoring will be

completed while driving and will take some time. The calibration will pause after the vehicle has stopped and will resume automatically when the vehicle resumes motion.

- The abnormal tyre pressure warning lamp on the instrument cluster illuminates when the start of the tyre pressure monitoring calibration fails. At this point, the calibration will need to be repeated according to the standard procedure.

**⚠** The tyre pressure monitoring system has to be calibrated after wheel replacement or tyre pressure change.

Failure to set the correct reference value may prevent the system from effectively identifying and warning of abnormal tyre pressure.

The system will activate a fault indication after the vehicle runs with tyre chains for a short period of time. This notification will persist until the chains are removed and the vehicle has run for an additional short period of time. During this period the system will not activate a low tyre pressure warning. In the case of replacing the spare wheel, snow tyre, non-original tyre, etc., the tyre pressure monitoring system may not work properly due to the difference between the tyre and the original tyre, resulting in alarm failure or false alarms.

#### Calibration of direct TPMS (if equipped)

When a tyre is renewed or rotated, the position of the tyre pressure sensor

should be correctly matched to that of the tyre.

**i** When the vehicle runs in winter, if all four tyres are replaced with snow tyres (while the sensors are not installed on the tyres), the instrument cluster indicates that the sensor signal is lost and triggers a system failure alarm.

## Tyre inspection

### When should tyres be inspected

Check the tyres at least once a month. Please see the "Tyre Pressure (Cold)" section in the "Technical Data" for tyre inflation pressure.

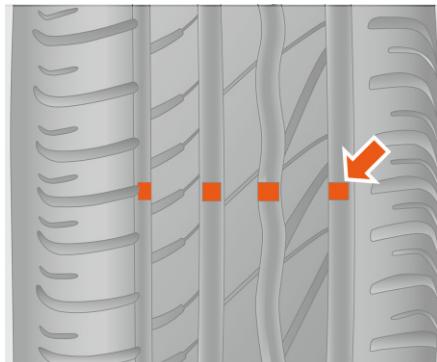
### How to check a tyre

Check the tyre pressure with a premium pocket tyre pressure gauge. Check the tyre inflation pressure when the tyre is cold. Remove the valve cap from the tyre valve. Press the tyre pressure gauge firmly against the valve to measure the pressure. If the cold tyre inflation pressure reaches the recommended value on the tyre pressure label, no adjustment is needed. If the inflation pressure is too low, inflate the tyre to the recommended pressure. If the tyre is overinflated, press the metal valve core of the tyre valve to deflate the tyre. Check the tyre pressure once again with the tyre pressure gauge. Be sure to refit the valve cap to the valve core.

The valve cap can prevent dust and moisture from entering the tyre.

### When to replace a tyre

Maintenance, temperature, driving speed, vehicle load and road conditions affect the tyre service life.



One way to judge when to replace with a new tyre is to check the tread wear indicator, which appears when the wheel is worn to a total tread thickness of about 9.4 mm.

Replace a tyre with a new one in any of the following situations:

- A wear indicator appears on the tyre.
- The cord or ply is exposed through the tyre rubber.
- The tread or sidewall is fractured, cut, or has any crack from which the cord or ply is visible.
- The tyre has a bulge, projection or delamination. The tyre is punctured, cut, or otherwise damaged and cannot be fully repaired due to the damaged area or location.

Please consult the tyre manufacturer for more information if you are unsure when the tyre needs to be replaced.



Please dispose of waste tyres in accordance with relevant environmental protection laws.

### Purchasing new tyres

Make sure that the dimensions, load range, rated speed and structure type of the new tyre are the same as that of the original tyre when purchasing a new tyre. It is recommended to replace four tyres all together. Please see the "Tyre Inspection and Rotation" section in this chapter for more information on tyre rotation.



If tyres on the vehicle are of different dimensions or types (radial tyre or bias belted tyre), traffic accidents and damage may be incurred due to poor manoeuvrability. All wheels should be equipped with tyres of proper dimensions and type.



Only radial tyres should be used for the vehicle, otherwise the vehicle may be suddenly out of control, causing an accident.

### Tyres and wheels of different dimensions

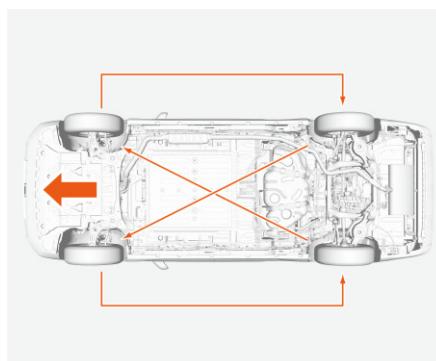
If the original wheels and tyres are replaced with ones different in size, the vehicle's performance or the functionality of the electronic system may be impaired.



A tyre with the specification that is not recommended in this manual may not be able to provide enough performance and safety, increasing the risk of traffic accidents.

### Tyre inspection and rotation

Check the vehicle's tyres regularly for signs of wear or damage. See "When to Replace a Tyre" in this chapter for details. It is recommended that tyre rotation should be performed every 10,000 km or so. Regular tyre rotation is to make all the tyres of the vehicle wear evenly. Whenever abnormal wear is found, perform tyre rotation promptly and check the wheel alignment. Also check the tyres or wheels for damage. See "When to Replace a Tyre" and "Replacing Wheels" sections in this chapter.



When performing tyre rotation, be sure to follow the correct rotation pattern shown in this figure. After performing tyre rotation, adjust the inflation

pressure of the front and rear tyres according to the instructions on the tyre pressure label of the vehicle. See "Tyre Pressure" in this chapter.

 Rust or dirt on the wheels or wheel connecting pieces may cause the looseness of wheel nuts after being used for a certain period, which could lead to the wheels coming off and causing an accident. When replacing a wheel, remove the rust or dirt from the connecting part between the wheel and the vehicle.

### Wheel alignment and tyre balance

Wheel alignment should be checked if any abnormal tyre wear or vehicle deviation is found. If the vehicle is bumpy while driving on a flat road, it may be necessary to balance the tyres and align the wheels again. Please contact Riddara authorised service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

### Replacing wheels

Replace the wheels that are bent, cracked, severely rusted or corroded. If the wheel nuts become loose frequently, replace the wheel, hub and wheel nuts. If any of the wheels, wheel nuts or tyre pressure monitoring system sensors (if equipped) need to be replaced, replace them with genuine parts. Ensure that the wheels, wheel nuts and tyre pressure

monitoring system sensors (if equipped) match the vehicle.

 It is very dangerous to use improper wheels and wheel nuts on the vehicle. They will affect the braking performance and manoeuvrability of the vehicle, which may cause accidents, resulting in injury or death. Therefore, be sure to replace the wheels and wheel nuts with the correct ones.

 Using incorrect wheels can also cause problems in the service life of bearings, brake cooling system, speedometer or odometer calibration, clearance between the tyre or tyre chain and the body/chassis, etc.

### Using old wheels

Do not use old wheels, or it will cause an accident. If you need to replace a wheel, use a genuine new one.

### Winter tyres

Winter tyres are used to increase the friction on icy or snowy roads. Using winter tyres may lead to a decrease in the traction force of the vehicle on the dry road, an increase in road noise and a shortened service life of the tread. Also, pay attention to changes in vehicle manoeuvre and braking. For details on the availability of winter tyres and the selection of suitable tyres, please contact a Riddara authorised service centre. If winter tyres are used:

- The tyres for all four wheels shall be of the same brand and tread pattern type.
- Use only radial tyres with the same dimension, load range and rated speed as the original tyres.
- Do not exceed the maximum rated speed of the tyres.

**⚠** Because snow tyres are not of the original specifications, there may be unexpected and wrong tyre pressure warnings.

## Tyre chains

**i** As tyre chains are not considered as the equipment of the vehicle, the following information is provided for reference only.



Please determine whether the tyre chains are needed according to the road conditions.

Avoid full load of the vehicle as far as possible when tyre chains are applied. In addition, drive cautiously at a low speed. Otherwise, the vehicle may be

damaged or its manoeuvrability may be affected.

Always use the tyre chains suitable for your tyre size and fit them in strict accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.



Never use tyre chains on a dry road surface.

## In case of flat tyre

When a tyre bursts or breaks during driving, please hold the steering wheel and gently depress the brake pedal to slow down. The vehicle can easily lose control if the brake is suddenly applied or if the steering wheel is turned suddenly.

If a tyre is found to be leaking, please follow the steps below:

1. Drive the vehicle slowly to a safe flat area to avoid further damage to the tyres and wheels.
2. Turn on the hazard warning lamp and place a warning triangle in an appropriate position.
3. Repair the tyre with a quick tyre repair kit.



Take the following measures to prevent the vehicle from moving:

- Apply the parking brake.
- Move the electronic shift lever to Park (P) position.
- Never leave any occupants in the vehicle.
- Before repairing the tyre with a quick tyre repair kit, place a stopper in front and back of the remaining tyres.

## Rapid tyre repair



Before using a quick tyre repair kit, ensure that the vehicle is parked on a safe, level and solid road surface. Turn on the hazard warning lamp and place a warning triangle within the specified distance behind the vehicle. See the "Warning Triangle" section of "Hazard Warning Device".



The quick tyre repair kit is only suitable for sealed tyres with punctures in the tread.

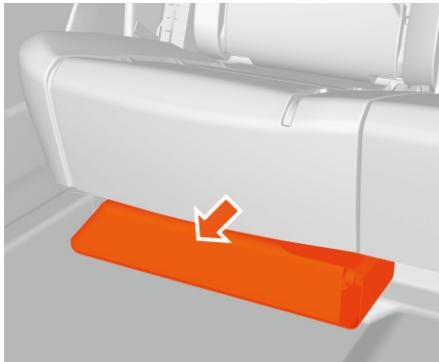


After using the emergency tire repair kit, do not drive faster than 80 km/h or further than 200 km. Visit an authorised service centre as soon as possible to check if the sealed tyre is safe for long-term or long-distance use. If not, repair or replace the tyre.

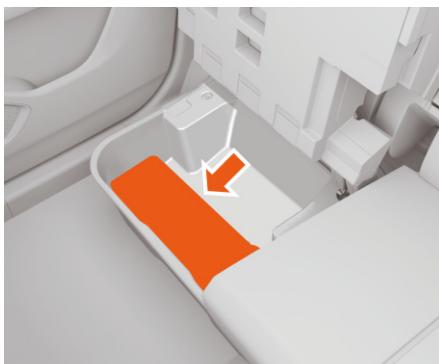
## Introduction to the quick tyre repair kit

The quick tyre repair kit is under the rear seat.

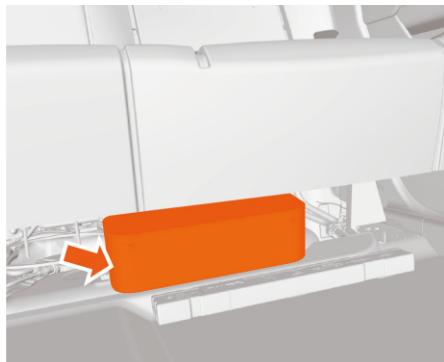
### Type I



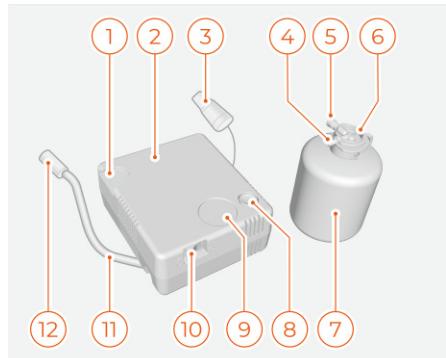
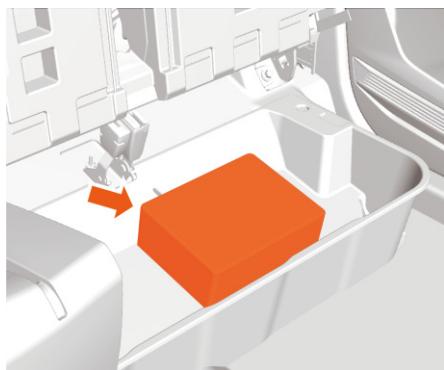
### Type II



## Type III



## Type IV



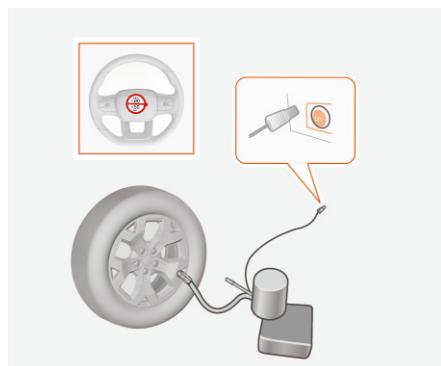
1. Air pump groove
2. Electric air pump
3. Cable

4. Tyre repair sealant air tube
5. Tyre repair sealant valve
6. Tyre repair sealant cover
7. Tyre repair sealant tank
8. Pressure reduction valve
9. Pressure gauge
10. Switch
11. Air hose
12. Air hose protective cover

The quick tyre repair kit is used to repair punctured tyres, and check and adjust the tyre pressure. The tyre repair sealant tank must be used before the expiration date and replaced after use.

**!** The quick tyre repair kit is not a substitute for professional tyre repair or replacement and is for emergency use only. Do not use the kit if the tyre has large slits, cracks or similar damage.

### Sealing a tire punctured by foreign objects



7

1. Remove the label for the maximum allowable speed (attached to the bottom of the tyre repair sealant

tank) and attach it to the steering wheel.

**i** Do not damage the tyre repair sealant tank before use. The seal is opened when the tyre repair sealant tank is screwed in.

**!** The tyre repair sealant irritates the skin. If the sealant is in contact with the skin, wash the skin immediately with soap or water.

2. Check to make sure that the electric air pump switch is in OFF position, then take out the cable and air hose.
3. Connect the air hose of the electric air pump to the tyre repair sealant valve.
4. Insert the tyre repair sealant cover into the air pump groove from the side.
5. Connect the tyre repair sealant air tube to the tyre valve.
6. Plug the cable into the 12V power socket and start the vehicle.

**!** Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle while the drive motor is running.

7. Turn the electric air pump switch to position ON.

**!** Do not stand next to the tyre while operating the electric air pump. When detecting cracks or unevenness, turn off the electric air pump immediately. Do not continue to drive the vehicle. Please contact Riddara authorised service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

**i** The pressure increases to 6 bar when the electric air pump is started, but drops about 30 seconds later.

8. Inflate the tyre for a few minutes.

**!** The operating time of the electric air pump should not exceed 10 minutes, otherwise there is a risk of overheating.

9. Turn off the electric air pump and check the pressure on the pressure gauge. The minimum pressure is 1.8 bar, and the maximum pressure is 3.2 bar.

**i** If the tyre pressure is too high, release some air with the pressure reduction valve.

**!** A pressure lower than 1.8 bar indicates a large puncture; in this case, do not drive. It is recommended to contact a Riddara authorised service centre.

10. Turn off the electric air pump and remove the wire from the 12V power socket.
11. Remove the tyre repair sealant hose from the electric air pump.

12. Drive the vehicle immediately for 10 minutes or 8 km at a speed of no more than 80 km/h to allow the tyre repair sealant to seal the tyre evenly.

## Rechecking the tyre

1. Reconnect the air tube of the electric air pump to the tyre valve.
2. Read the tyre pressure on the gauge.
  - If the tyre pressure is below 1.8 bar, it means that the tyre is not completely sealed and you cannot continue driving. In this case, contact a Riddara authorised service centre.
  - If the tyre pressure exceeds 1.8 bar, inflate the tyre to the pressure specified in the tyre pressure table. If the tyre pressure is too high, release the air with the relief valve.
3. Make sure the electric air pump is turned off. Separate the air hose and cable. Install the valve cap.

 After the tyre is inflated, be sure to reinstall the dust cap to protect the tyre valve from gravel or dust. Only use a plastic dust cap. Metal dust caps may rust, making it difficult to unscrew.

 The tyre repair sealant tank and hose must be replaced after use.

 Check the tyre pressure regularly.

## Tyre inflation

The original tyres can be inflated with an electric air pump.

1. The electric air pump must be turned off. Check that the switch is in position O and take out the cable and air hose.
2. Loosen the wheel valve cap and screw the joint of the air pump tube into the thread at the bottom of the tyre valve.
3. Connect the cable to the accessory power outlet and start the vehicle.
4. To start the electric air pump, turn the switch to position I.
5. Inflate the tyre to the pressure specified on the tyre pressure label (If the tyre pressure is too high, release air with the pressure reduction valve).
6. Turn off the electric air pump. Separate the air hose and cable.
7. Reinstall the electric air pump into the mounting groove.

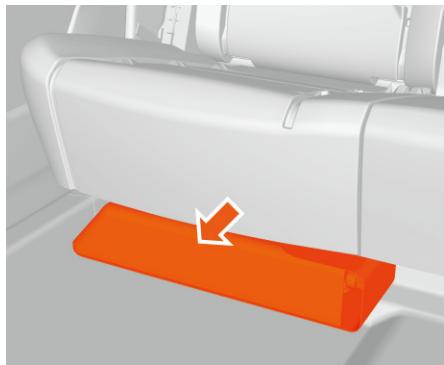
## Replacing spare tyre (if equipped)

 Before replacing the spare tyre in an emergency, ensure that the vehicle is parked on a safe, level and solid road surface. Turn on the hazard warning lamp and place a warning triangle within the specified distance behind the vehicle. See the "Warning Triangle" section of "Hazard Warning Device".

## Fault during driving

### Taking out the spare tyre and tool kit

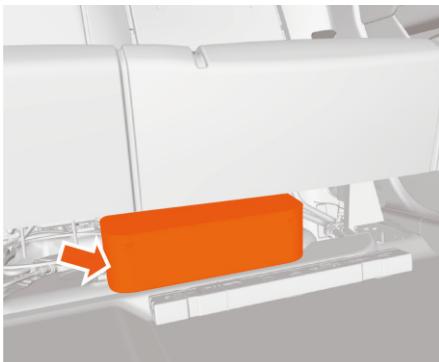
#### Jack and vehicle tool kit (Type I)



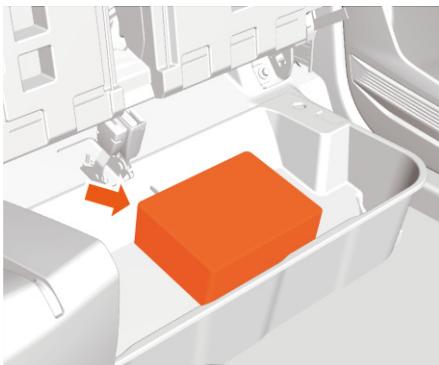
#### Jack and vehicle tool kit (Type II)



#### Jack and vehicle tool kit (Type III)



#### Jack and vehicle tool kit (Type IV)

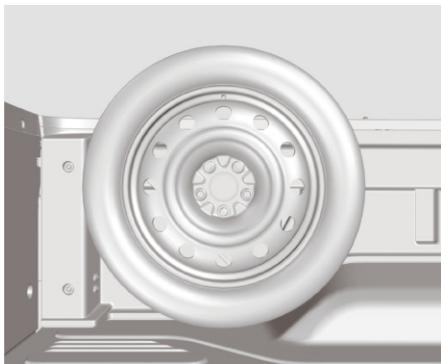


The jack (if equipped) and tool kit are placed under the vehicle's rear seat.



Please use the special jack provided with the vehicle. It is forbidden to use other non-compliant jacks; otherwise, the vehicle may slide down due to the quality of the jack, resulting in personal injury or death.

## Spare tyre



The spare tyre is fixed to the left inner wall of the cargo compartment.

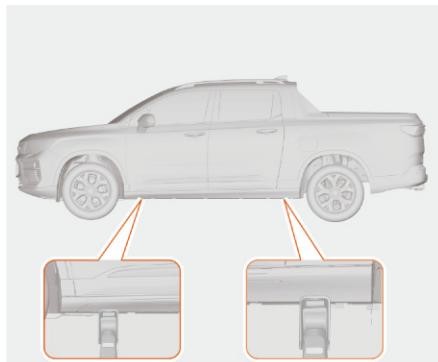
**!** The spare tyre of the vehicle is a T-type small spare tyre. When using, the maximum speed is 80 km/h. Please drive the vehicle to a Riddara authorised service centre as soon as possible to replace it with a new tyre.

### Removing the flat tyre and installing the spare tyre

1. Carry out safety inspection before the operation.
2. Remove the wheel nut trim caps.



3. Put the wheel wrench on the wheel nut and turn it counterclockwise to loosen all the wheel nuts for about one turn, but do not remove the wheel nuts first.



4. Place the jack head. Adjust the jack to a suitable height as shown in the figure, and then place the jack under the lifting point.

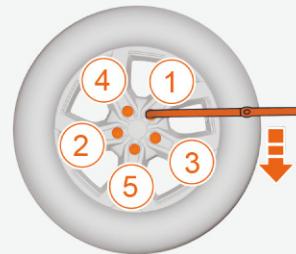
**!** The vehicle will be damaged and even may roll over if the supporting position of the jack is incorrect when the vehicle is lifted. To avoid personal injury and vehicle damage, before lifting the vehicle, be sure to place the jack head in the correct position.

**!** The vehicle is equipped with a jack, which can only be used to replace a flat tyre. Never come below the vehicle merely supported by a lifting jack. If the vehicle slips off the jack, serious personal injury or death may result.

5. Connect the jack handle.



Do not use engine oil or grease on the bolts or wheel nuts. Otherwise, the wheel nuts will become loose and the wheels of the vehicle may fall off, causing accidents.



6. Turn the jack handle clockwise as shown in the figure to lift the vehicle to a sufficient height above the ground to install the spare tyre.
7. Remove all wheel nuts.
8. Remove the flat tyre.
9. Remove the stain or dirt on the wheel bolts, mounting surface and spare wheel.

**!** Rust or dirt on the wheels or wheel connecting pieces may cause the looseness of wheel nuts after being used for a certain period, which could lead to the wheels coming off and causing an accident. Before replacing the wheel, use a scraper or wire brush to remove any rust or dirt from the connection between the wheel and the vehicle.

10. Install the spare tyre.
11. Screw each nut clockwise with a wheel wrench until the wheel is fixed on the hub.
12. Turn the handle of the jack counterclockwise to lower the vehicle. Lower the jack completely.

13. Pre-tighten the wheel nuts in a cross sequence as shown in the figure.
14. Lower the jack to the bottom, and take out the jack from below the vehicle.
15. Tighten the wheel nuts with the wheel wrench.
16. Install the wheel nut trim cap.
17. If necessary, install the hub trim cover.



If the front tyre fails, and a spare tyre needs to be used, please be sure not to replace the front tyre with the spare tyre. For driving safety, please replace the faulty front tyre with a normal rear tyre, and then install the spare tyre to the removed rear tyre position.

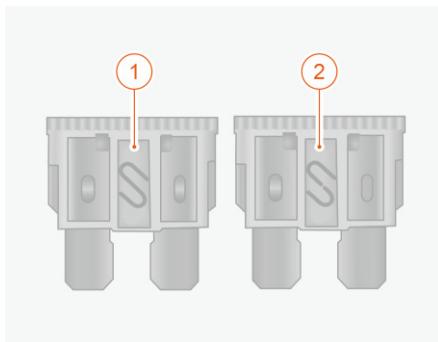
## Storing the spare tyre and tool kit

Fix the spare tyre with its inner side facing left to the left inner wall of the cargo compartment. Put the jack and tool kit back under the vehicle's rear seat.

## Changing fuses

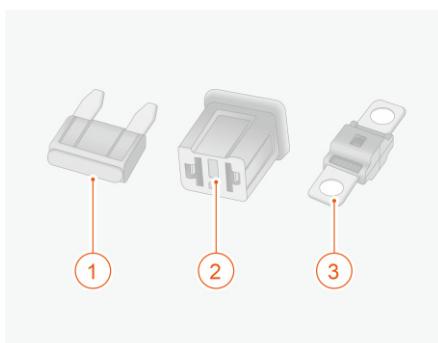
### Fuse position and identification

The wires and electrical equipment can be protected by blowing the fuses to prevent circuit overload. If the circuit fails and stops working, the fuse can be removed from the fuse box to check if the metal wire in the fuse is blown.



1. Intact
2. Blown

Fuses are located in the compartment fuse box on the left side of the front compartment and in the interior fuse box on the left side of the dash panel. There are three different types of fuses:



## Fault during driving

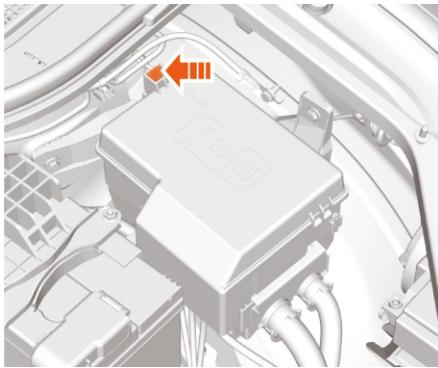
1. Blade fuse - fast acting, plug-in type, rated current range 5-30A.
2. Square fuse - slow acting, plug-in type, rated current range 20-60A.
3. Bolted fuse - high current slow acting, bolted type, rated current range 30-200A.

The colour represents the ampere value of the fuse, which is also labelled on the fuse.

 For the blown fuses, do not try to repair or replace them with fuses that are inconsistent in colour or ampere value; otherwise, it will cause damage to the electrical system or fire due to wire overload.

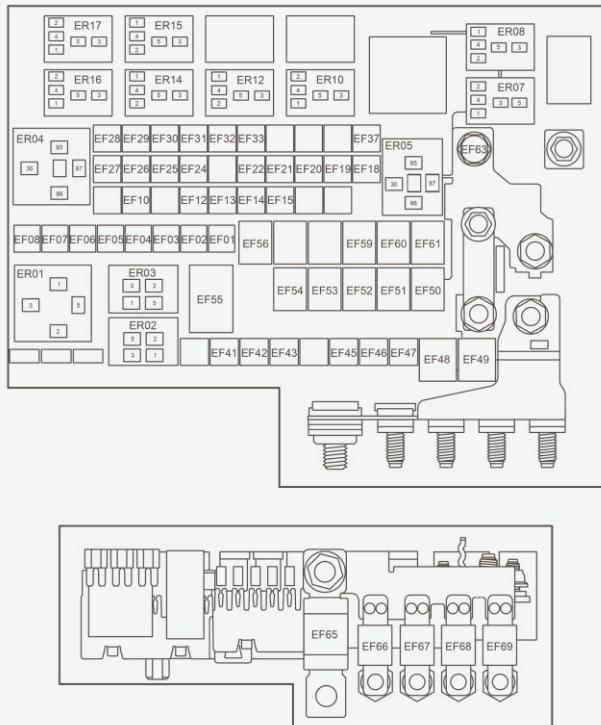
### Underhood electrical centre (UEC)

1. Open the bonnet.
2. To check the fuse, loosen the side lock catch shown in the figure and remove the UEC cover.



 Electrical parts of the vehicle will be damaged if any liquid is splashed on them. Always close the covers or caps of all electrical parts.

## Fuse information



| Fuse number | Name   | Amperage | Remarks       |
|-------------|--|----------|---------------|
| EF01        | Intelligent power fuse   | 10 A     | -             |
| EF02        | Through-type front lamp/ LOGO lamp relay fuse                  | 5 A      | (if equipped) |
| EF03        | Engine control module fuse                                     | 10 A     | -             |
| EF04        | BCM central lock and cargo compartment tailgate lock fuse      | 25 A     | -             |
| EF05        | BCM fuse   | 25 A     | -             |
| EF06        | Fuel tank cap unlock relay / BCM fuel tank cap lock power fuse | 10 A     | -             |
| EF07        | Horn relay fuse  | 15 A     | -             |
| EF08        | Fuel pump relay/fuse   | 20 A     | -             |

## Fault during driving

| Fuse number | Name  | Amperage | Remarks       |
|-------------|---|----------|---------------|
| EF10        | PTC heater/HVAC coolant three-way valve/battery circuit three-way valve/front evaporator valve/Powertrain Control Module (PCM)/Heater circuit coolant pump/A/C Compressor Control Module (ACCM)/Heat exchanger fuse | 10 A     | -             |
| EF12        | Charge air cooler water pump fuse   | 15 A     | -             |
| EF13        | BMS fuse  | 10 A     | -             |
| EF14        | Powertrain EWP fuse   | 15 A     | -             |
| EF15        | Battery radiator coolant pump fuse  | 20 A     | -             |
| EF18        | Left front combination lamp/console switch module fuse  | 10 A     | -             |
| EF19        | Right front combination lamp fuse   | 10 A     | -             |
| EF20        | Left front combination lamp fuse  | 10 A     | -             |
| EF21        | Right front combination lamp fuse   | 10 A     | -             |
| EF22        | Exterior rearview mirror heater fuse  | 10 A     | (if equipped) |
| EF24        | Rear MCU / OD / EVCC fuse   | 10 A     | -             |
| EF25        | Millimetre wave radar sensor/AVAS fuse  | 5 A      | (if equipped) |
| EF26        | ONE BOX module fuse   | 5 A      | -             |
| EF27        | Powertrain Control Module (PCM) / Engine Control Module (ECM) fuse  | 5 A      | -             |
| EF28        | Engine oil pump solenoid / canister purge solenoid / timing adjuster inlet / electronic pressure relief valve fuse  | 10 A     | -             |
| EF29        | Fuel pump relay / charge retention relay fuse   | 5 A      | -             |
| EF30        | Ignition coil fuse  | 15 A     | -             |
| EF31        | Oxygen sensor fuse  | 15 A     | -             |

| Fuse number | Name  | Amperage | Remarks       |
|-------------|---|----------|---------------|
| EF32        | Brake lamp switch fuse  | 5 A      | -             |
| EF33        | Fuel shutoff valve / fuel leak diagnostic module (FLDM) / EVCC fuse | 10 A     | -             |
| EF37        | Engine control module fuse  | 25 A     | -             |
| EF41        | Intelligent battery sensor (IBS) fuse                               | 5 A      | -             |
| EF42        | Horn relay fuse   | 30 A     | -             |
| EF43        | Powertrain Control Module (PCM) fuse                                | 15 A     | -             |
| EF45        | Rear MCU fuse   | 10 A     | -             |
| EF46        | Rear demister relay fuse  | 25 A     | -             |
| EF47        | BMS fuse  | 5 A      | -             |
| EF48        | Transmission shift actuator fuse                                    | 30 A     | -             |
| EF49        | Interior fuse box B + fuse 2  | 50 A     | -             |
| EF50        | Window regulator control module fuse                                | 30 A     | -             |
| EF51        | Front passenger power seat fuse                                     | 30 A     | (if equipped) |
| EF52        | Driver power seat fuse  | 30 A     | (if equipped) |
| EF53        | Blower relay fuse   | 40 A     | -             |
| EF54        | ONE BOX module fuse   | 60 A     | -             |
| EF55        | Charge holding relay fuse   | 50 A     | -             |
| EF56        | Electric towing hook fuse   | 30 A     | (if equipped) |
| EF59        | ONE BOX module fuse   | 40 A     | -             |
| EF60        | Motor oil pump fuse   | 30 A     | -             |
| EF61        | Interior distribution box B + fuse 1                                | 50 A     | -             |
| EF63        | EPS power fuse  | 80 A     | -             |
| EF65        | OD fuse   | 250A     | -             |

## Fault during driving

| Fuse number | Name                                | Amperage | Remarks |
|-------------|-------------------------------------|----------|---------|
| EF66        | Engine coolant pump fuse            | 60 A     | -       |
| EF67        | Hydraulic clutch actuator fuse      | 60 A     | -       |
| EF68        | Transmission electric oil pump fuse | 60 A     | -       |
| EF69        | Electric fan fuse                   | 125A     | -       |

| Relay Number | Name                           | Remarks |
|--------------|--------------------------------|---------|
| ER01         | Charge holding relay           | -       |
| ER02         | Intelligent power supply relay | -       |
| ER03         | Horn relay                     | -       |
| ER04         | Blower relay                   | -       |
| ER05         | Main relay                     | -       |
| ER07         | High beam relay                | -       |
| ER08         | Low beam relay                 | -       |
| ER10         | Fuel pump relay                | -       |
| ER12         | LOGO lamp relay                | -       |
| ER14         | Low speed wiper relay          | -       |
| ER15         | Fuel tank cap unlock relay     | -       |
| ER16         | High speed wiper relay         | -       |
| ER17         | Rear demister relay            | -       |

## Interior fuse box

### Type I



The interior fuse box is located on the right side of the dash panel. Uncover the dash panel storage box to view the fuse.

### Type II



The interior fuse box is located on the right side of the dash panel. Uncover the dash panel storage box to view the fuse.

### Type III



The interior fuse box is located on the right side of the dash panel. You can remove the speaker cover to access the fuse compartment.

### Type IV

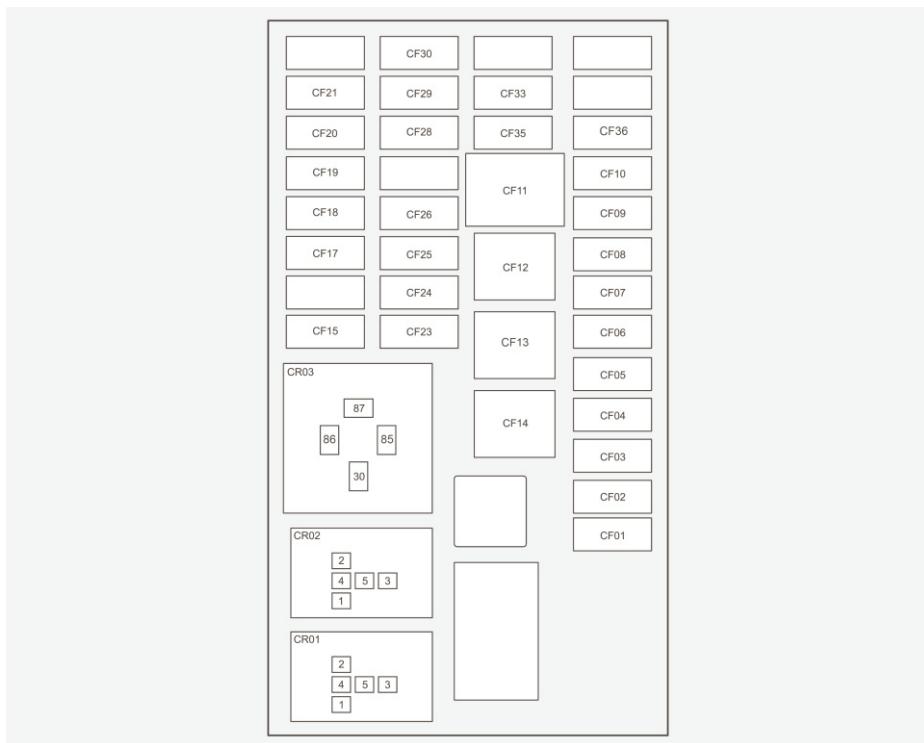


The interior fuse box is located on the right side of the dash panel. You can remove the speaker cover to access the fuse compartment.

# Fault during driving

---

## Fuse information



| Fuse number | Name   | Amperage | Remarks       |
|-------------|--|----------|---------------|
| CF01        | Brake lamp switch/towing hook control module fuse  | 5 A      | -             |
| CF02        | BCM internal lighting power fuse   | 20 A     | -             |
| CF03        | BCM exterior rearview mirror power fuse  | 10 A     | (if equipped) |
| CF04        | BCM front washer power fuse  | 15 A     | -             |
| CF05        | PDU fuse   | 5 A      | -             |
| CF06        | Towing hook control module fuse  | 30 A     | (if equipped) |
| CF07        | Electronic gear selector module fuse   | 5 A      | -             |
| CF08        | OBD diagnostic port fuse   | 10 A     | -             |
| CF09        | Left front door handle aerial / A/C panel switch fuse  | 5 A      | -             |
| CF10        | Gateway fuse   | 5 A      | -             |
| CF11        | Head unit/shipping fuse  | 20 A     | -             |
| CF12        | Ripple anti-pinch module power fuse 1  | 30 A     | -             |
| CF13        | Sunroof fuse   | 20 A     | (if equipped) |
| CF14        | Towing hook control module fuse  | 30 A     | (if equipped) |
| CF15        | Electric towing hook fuse  | 30 A     | (if equipped) |
| CF17        | Driver's USB port fuse   | 10 A     |               |
| CF18        | Discharge socket panel   | 15 A     | (if equipped) |
| CF19        | Discharge socket panel   | 15 A     | (if equipped) |
| CF20        | Infotainment head unit/exterior rearview mirror switch/digital video recorder/BCM ACC feedback signal fuse | 10 A     | -             |

## Fault during driving

| Fuse number | Name  | Amperage | Remarks       |
|-------------|---|----------|---------------|
| CF21        | Accessory power outlet fuse   | 15 A     | -             |
| CF23        | Steering angle sensor/electric power steering system fuse                                 | 5 A      | -             |
| CF24        | Airbag module fuse  | 5 A      | -             |
| CF25        | Instrument cluster / electronic gear selector module (EGSM) / front monocular camera fuse | 5 A      | -             |
| CF26        | Front compartment power distribution box IG + fuse  | 15 A     | -             |
| CF28        | Driver power seat/front passenger power seat/rear seat fuse                               | 10 A     | (if equipped) |
| CF29        | Gateway / BCM IG1 feedback signal / A/C controller / T-BOX module / E-CALL fuse           | 5 A      | -             |
| CF30        | ETC system/dash panel switch/ microphone fuse   | 5 A      | -             |
| CF33        | Display/ETC system/Digital video recorder/Rear side millimetre-wave radar fuse            | 10 A     | -             |
| CF35        | A/C controller/Rain sensor/ Instrument cluster/T-BOX module/E-CALL/DAB box fuse           | 10 A     | -             |
| CF36        | Wireless charging module  | 10 A     | -             |

| Relay Number | Name      | Remarks |
|--------------|-----------|---------|
| CR01         | IG2 relay | -       |
| CR02         | IG1 relay | -       |
| CR03         | ACC relay | -       |

## Checking or replacing a fuse

1. Turn off the start switch and all electrical consumers, and disconnect the negative cable from the low-voltage battery.



2. Use a fuse clip to hold the fuse head and remove the fuse. Check whether the metal wire is blown.
3. Replace the fuse with a new one of the same type.



If the newly replaced fuse immediately becomes damaged, contact a Riddara authorised service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

## Replacing bulbs

### Bulb specifications

Replacing light bulbs often requires the removal of specific vehicle parts, so it should be performed by a professional with the necessary skills. It is recommended that you drive the vehicle to a Riddara authorised service centre to replace the bulb.

| Part name                             | Bulb name             | Bulb model | Power  |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------|------------|--------|
| Front combination lamp (Type I)       | High beam             | LED        | 21W    |
|                                       | Low beam              | LED        | 39W    |
|                                       | Turn signal lamp      | LED        | 15W    |
|                                       | Front position lamp   | LED        | 2.5 W  |
|                                       | Daytime running lamps | LED        | 15W    |
| Front combination lamp (Type II)      | High beam             | HB3        | 60W    |
|                                       | Low beam              | HB3        | 60W    |
|                                       | Turn signal lamp      | LED        | 15W    |
|                                       | Front position lamp   | LED        | 2.5 W  |
|                                       | Daytime running lamps | LED        | 15W    |
| Rear combination lamp (Type I)        | Rear position lamp    | LED        | 20.8 W |
|                                       | Rear turn signal lamp | LED        | 3.6 W  |
|                                       | Reversing lamp        | LED        | 4 W    |
|                                       | Brake lamp            | LED        | 10 W   |
| Rear combination lamp (Type II)       | Rear position lamp    | LED        | 3 W    |
|                                       | Rear turn signal lamp | LED        | 3.6 W  |
|                                       | Brake lamp            | LED        | 6W     |
| Separate reversing lamp (if equipped) | Reversing lamp        | LED        | 3.6 W  |
| Cargo box lighting                    | Cargo box lighting    | LED        | 1 W    |
| High-level brake                      | High-level brake      | LED        | 2 W    |

| lamp                      | lamp               |     |       |
|---------------------------|--------------------|-----|-------|
| Rear fog lamp             | Rear fog lamp      | LED | 3.6 W |
| Licence plate lamp        | Licence plate lamp | W5W | 5 W   |
| Reading lamp<br>(Type I)  | Front reading lamp | LED | 2 W   |
|                           | Rear reading lamp  | LED | 0.5 W |
| Reading lamp<br>(Type II) | Front reading lamp | LED | 3.6 W |

## Emergency handling

### Overheating of hybrid powertrain

The hybrid powertrain may be overheating if any of the following occurs:

- The motor system overheating warning on the instrument cluster display lights up.
- The engine coolant high temperature indicator lamp on the instrument cluster display lights up.
- Power reduction occurs.
- A very loud knocking sound or thumping noise is heard.

In case of overheating of hybrid powertrain, follow this procedure:

1. Drive the vehicle safely off the road to a safe place, then stop the vehicle and turn on the hazard warning lamp, shift into the Park (P) position, and apply parking brake. If the air conditioner is working, turn it off.
2. If coolant or steam erupts from the expansion tank, immediately shut down the hybrid powertrain. Open

the bonnet only after the steam has dissipated. If coolant or steam is erupting, keep the hybrid powertrain running and ensure the cooling fan is operational.

 Do not open the bonnet until no steam or coolant leakage is visible.

3. Visually inspect the radiator, hose, and underbody of the vehicle for significant coolant leaks. Condensation dripping from the A/C system after use is normal.
4. If the coolant leaks, shut down the hybrid powertrain immediately and contact a Riddara authorised service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
5. If there is no obvious leak, check the coolant expansion tank. If the expansion tank is empty, top up coolant to between the MIN and MAX marks with the vehicle started.

 Do not attempt to remove the pressure cap from the coolant expansion tank when the hybrid powertrain or radiator is hot. Eruption of hot liquid or steam under pressure may cause severe injuries.

6. If there is no coolant leak and the coolant level in the expansion tank is normal, please contact a Riddara authorised service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
7. When the coolant temperature drops to normal, recheck the coolant level in the expansion tank. If necessary, add coolant until it reaches between the MIN and MAX marks. A serious loss of coolant indicates a leak in the system. Please contact Riddara authorised service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
8. In summer, after parking, the cooling fan often operates automatically or even does not stop for a long time, which is normal. When the temperature of the hybrid powertrain drops to a level where the cooling fan is not needed, cooling fans turn off automatically.

 Keep your body/clothing clear of cooling fans in operation. There is a risk of injury.

### Vehicle collision

In the event of a vehicle collision (including front, rear, left, right and ground collisions), stop the vehicle completely and then switch off the power supply and evacuate the passengers immediately.

- In the event of a collision, the vehicle control system will power off the high-voltage system, the READY indicator goes off, and the vehicle cannot be driven further. Contact a Riddara authorised service centre immediately.
- If you cannot estimate the extent of vehicle damage, do not touch the vehicle. Keep away from the vehicle, and immediately contact a Riddara authorised service centre for inspection and repair. You must promptly inform emergency responders that the vehicle is a hybrid vehicle. No one else should approach, touch, or move the vehicle.
- In any case, nobody is allowed to repair the vehicle before the vehicle is completely powered off.
- Check whether the high-voltage components and wiring harnesses of the vehicle are damaged or exposed (The component positions can be determined according to the high-voltage component layout diagram). To avoid personal injury, do not touch high-voltage harnesses, connectors and other high-voltage components (motor

control unit, high-voltage battery, etc.). To avoid the risk of high-voltage electric shock, do not touch damaged or exposed wiring harnesses. Check the high-voltage harnesses distributed on the floor carefully for damage, especially in the case of a scrape between the vehicle underbody and the ground. If it is necessary to touch any high-voltage cables or components, wear insulating protective equipment (including insulating gloves, shoes and clothes) that can withstand voltages above 1000 V.

- If the driver and passengers get stuck, try to cut the vehicle after being confirmed by a professional technician. Do not touch the high-voltage cable (which is typically marked with yellow or orange-yellow insulation) during cutting.
- If the vehicle needs to be repaired or painted after a collision, it must be performed at a Riddara authorised service centre. Unauthorised disassembly is strictly prohibited. Before painting, remove the high-voltage battery, high-voltage harness, motor control unit and other high-voltage components. Exposure of the high-voltage battery to a high-temperature spraying room may affect its service life. In addition, if the high-voltage battery on the vehicle is not removed, it may bring safety hazards to the maintenance personnel who have

not received professional training in electric vehicle maintenance.

## Vehicle on fire

If the vehicle is on fire, turn on the hazard warning lamp immediately, stop the vehicle, evacuate all personnel in the vehicle to a safe area, and set up a warning triangle according to the regulations. Please see the "Warning Triangle" section in this chapter. Then call the police and inform them of the situation on site. On the premise of ensuring personal safety, contact a Riddara authorised service centre and perform the following operations under the guidance of professionals:

1. If the battery wiring harness smokes and catches fire, follow the guidance of professionals to use a carbon dioxide or dry powder fire extinguisher at a safe distance from the upwind to extinguish the fire, and get advice on the next treatment steps of the high-voltage battery.
2. If the high-voltage battery catches fire, follow the guidance of professionals to use a high-pressure water gun at a safe distance to extinguish the fire, and get advice on the next treatment steps of the high-voltage battery.

If someone inhales thick smoke accidentally, evacuate the victim and seek medical attention as soon as possible.

 Electrolyte leakage or damage to the high-voltage battery may cause a fire. If this happens, contact a Riddara authorised service centre immediately for inspection and repair. Do not touch the leaking electrolyte with your hands. If the electrolyte comes into contact with your skin or eyes, rinse with plenty of water and seek medical attention immediately. If the vehicle is on fire, leave the vehicle immediately.

### Getting unstuck

If the vehicle gets stuck in snow, mud or other soft roads, please try the following steps to get out:

1. Turn the steering wheel left and right to grind out an area around the front wheels.
2. Repeatedly move the vehicle back and forth, reducing wheel idling as much as possible, and gently depress the accelerator pedal.
3. If the vehicle cannot get out of trap after several attempts, tow the vehicle.

 Before getting the vehicle out of the trap, always check whether there are people or obstacles around the vehicle because the vehicle may suddenly rush forward or backward when getting it out, which may cause injuries.

 If you need to rock the vehicle, the following precautions must be observed to prevent causing damage to the drive motor and other components:

- Do not depress the accelerator pedal until the electronic shift lever is moved to the Drive (D) or Reverse (R) position.
- Do not keep the wheels idling at high speed, which may burst the tyre, resulting in personal injuries, or may overheat drive motors or wheel parts, causing damage to components or other items.
- If the vehicle cannot get out of trap after rocking for a while, use other methods such as towing.

### Emergency response to road accidents (if equipped)

The system monitors the airbag bursting signal and the user's call operation through the vehicle's built-in controller and sends the position of the vehicle, the vehicle's direction of travel, and the vehicle's data at the time of the collision to the rescue service centre through the network.

Triggering conditions of road accident emergency response system:

1. The controller detects the airbag bursting signal
2. Press and hold the SOS switch

Upon the occurrence of any of the triggering events above, the system will send the information to the public

service centre after startup, and at the same time make an emergency call.

#### Type I



1. SOS switch
2. SOS indicator lamp

#### Type II



1. SOS switch
2. SOS indicator lamp

When you need to activate the traffic accident emergency response system, you can directly press the SOS switch of the front interior lighting. The SOS indicator will indicate the system status and call status accordingly, and

when the system is on, the user can make a voice call.



The following situations (including but not limited to) may cause the traffic accident emergency response system not to work properly:

- Internet of vehicles (IOV) system, audio equipment failure or damage.
- Mobile network signal is weak, interfered, or blocked, etc.
- When GPS devices are damaged or in areas with weak signals (e.g. underground garages, tunnels, mountainous areas, etc.), the vehicle's position may not be tracked by GPS.
- Airbags may not be able to trigger the rescue call automatically when they are not deployed in minor collisions or abnormal situations, and the emergency call can be triggered manually or by other means.
- Emergency assistance services are unavailable due to riots, fires, floods, storms, explosions, wars, governmental actions, orders from judicial and administrative authorities, social circumstances and other force majeure factors.

### Refuelling

#### Refuelling

#### Refuelling



Fuel is flammable and volatile, and explosive in poorly-ventilated spaces.

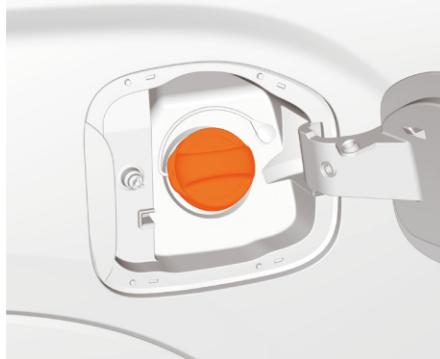
Observe the following for refuelling:

- Shift to P, set start switch to OFF, and exit READY state.
- No open flames near vehicle.
- No phone call.
- For self-service refuelling, discharge static electricity using the button on the fuel dispenser before handling the fuel nozzle.
- Observe all additional safety notices posted at the fuel station.

2. Slowly rotate the filler cap counterclockwise and remove it.
3. After refuelling, put the filler cap back by rotating it clockwise until a click is heard ensure it is in place.
4. Close the fuel tank cap, and confirm it is fully closed.



Do not overfill. Stop refuelling when the first click of the fuel nozzle stops.



The fuel filler is located in the right rear of the vehicle.

1. When the vehicle is unlocked, unlock the fuel tank cap via the multimedia display. Press the rear area of the fuel tank cap for a short time to open the cap.

## Vehicle emission

### Vehicle emission

The vehicle complies with China VI, Euro 6B or Euro 6C emission standards upon manufacture.

The vehicle is equipped with Gasoline Particulate Filter (GPF) to trap exhaust particulates and reduce emissions.

When the GPF is full, the indicator

lamp  on the instrument cluster display lights up. Depending on the vehicle configuration, models equipped with a full LCD instrument cluster will also display a text message reminding you that the vehicle requires particulate filter cleaning. Please contact an authorized service centre as soon as possible.

-  Refer to the vehicle's conformity certificate for emission standard.



## Maintenance

### Regular maintenance

 The Warranty and Maintenance Manual is an important part of this manual, and the maintenance intervals, inspections, repairs, and recommended oils, fluids and lubricants specified in this manual are necessary to maintain the vehicle in good condition. Any damage caused by a failure to follow regular maintenance is not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Proper vehicle maintenance is not only helpful to keep the vehicle in good condition but also beneficial to the environment. All recommended maintenance items are very important. To protect the environment and keep your vehicle in good condition, it is important to maintain your vehicle properly.

### Maintenance plan for use

As people use vehicles in various ways, their maintenance needs are different. You may need to check and replace vehicle parts more frequently.

If you have questions about how to keep your vehicle in good condition, please consult a Riddara authorised service centre. This maintenance plan applies to the following vehicles:

- Vehicles transporting passengers and goods within the specified loading range.

- Vehicles driving on suitable roads within the speed limits specified by laws and regulations.

 Vehicle maintenance operations are complex and can be dangerous. Performing certain maintenance tasks by yourself may cause serious injury. Only when you have sufficient maintenance expertise as well as the required tools and equipment can you carry out maintenance. If you are unsure of this, drive your vehicle to a Riddara authorised service centre for maintenance.

### Maintenance records

For details, see the Warranty and Maintenance Manual. After each maintenance, be sure to have the Riddara authorised service centre sign and stamp the maintenance record form.

### Maintenance by the owner

 In case of an obvious or sudden drop in the fluid level, or uneven tyre wear, immediately drive the vehicle to a Riddara authorised service centre for maintenance.

In addition to the maintenance mentioned above, the driver should also carry out some simple checks frequently. The recommended maintenance schedule is listed below.

#### Daily inspection

- Check the functions of lamps, horns, wipers, washers, and warning lamps.

- Check the functions of seat belts and brakes.
- Check the underbody for traces of liquid residue indicating leakage.
- Check tyre appearance.

### Weekly inspection

- Coolant level.
- Engine oil level.
- Brake fluid level.
- Windscreen washer fluid level.
- Tyre pressure and condition.
- Operation of A/C system.

### Five rules for preventing accidental vehicle fires



1. Avoid storing flammable items like lighters inside the vehicle, as they can expand or explode due to heat, potentially causing fires.
2. Do not install extra decorative lights other than the vehicle's original equipment. The usage of appliances with higher power than the rated power will cause short

circuits due to excessive load, which may cause a fire.



3. When modifying or adding wiring for the multimedia system, wires with different rated power will generate a large amount of heat, which may cause a fire.
4. Use specified light bulbs only, as those exceeding the rated capacity can overload the wiring and increase the risk of fires.
5. Always ensure cigarette butts are completely extinguished after smoking to prevent potential fires.

### Toxic liquids

Liquids used in the vehicle are toxic and should not be swallowed or come into contact with open wounds.

Toxic liquids include acid from low-voltage batteries, coolant, brake fluid and front windscreen washer fluid.

For your safety, please carefully read and follow the instructions printed on the labels and containers.

## Front compartment

### Bonnet

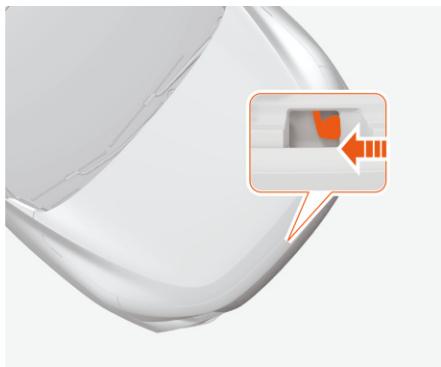
#### Opening the bonnet



Ensure that the wiper arms are not raised when opening the bonnet.



1. Pull the bonnet release handle located on the lower left side of the driver's dash panel to unlock the bonnet.



2. Push the safety hook handle of the bonnet in the direction of the arrow. This handle is located in the middle of the radiator grille.



3. Raise the bonnet. Set the bonnet struts to support the bonnet.



Do not attempt to open the bonnet on your own if the vehicle experiences a breakdown or accident in the rain.

#### Closing the bonnet



Before closing the bonnet, check for any forgotten tools, pieces of cloth, or other objects inside the front compartment and ensure all filler caps are covered.

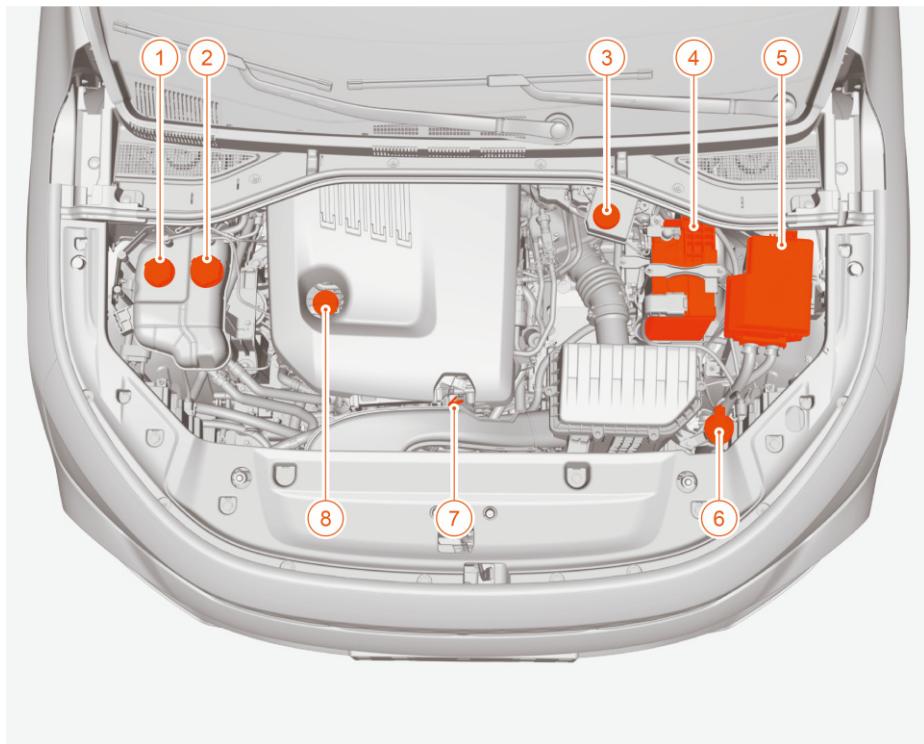
Place the bonnet braces into their retaining grooves, then push down the bonnet firmly until you hear a 'click' sound, indicating that the bonnet is securely locked.

After closing the bonnet, gently lift its front edge to ensure it is securely locked in place.



Do not drive when the bonnet is not properly closed. Otherwise, the bonnet may suddenly open and block the driver's view, resulting in injury and property loss.

## Front compartment



|   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Expansion tank of engine                   | 5. Underhood electrical centre<br>(UEC) |
| 2. Expansion tank of electric drive<br>system | 6. Washer fluid reservoir               |
| 3. Brake fluid reservoir                      | 7. Oil dipstick                         |
| 4. Low-voltage battery                        | 8. Engine oil filler cap                |

## Engine oil

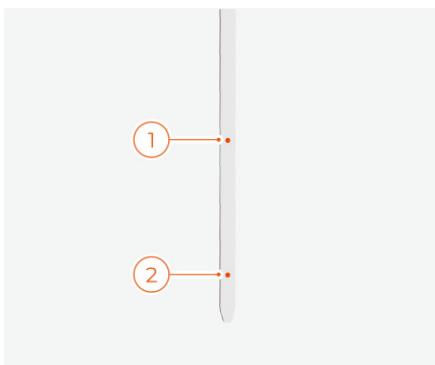
### Checking and adding engine oil

#### Engine oil filler cap



To open the engine oil filler cap, turn it anti-clockwise.

#### Oil dipstick



The engine oil level should be between the MAX and MIN marks on the dipstick.

1. MAX mark
2. MIN mark

### Operation procedure



Ensure that the wiper arms are not raised when opening the bonnet.

1. Park the vehicle on a level ground. Switch off the engine, and wait for a few minutes (after the engine warms up to a water temperature of 90°C, let it stand for 10 minutes after shutdown).
2. Withdraw the oil dipstick, wipe it clean with lint-free cloth, and reinsert it fully.
3. Withdraw the dipstick again to verify the oil level.
4. If the engine oil level is below the MIN mark, unscrew the engine oil filler cap. Add oil until the level reaches 3/4 between MAX and MIN marks.
5. Wait for a few minutes and then check the engine oil level again. If necessary, add an appropriate amount of engine oil.
6. Reinsert the dipstick fully and tighten the oil filler cap securely.



**i** New engines may exhibit higher oil consumption during break-in period. This situation is normal. Please have an engine service according to the Warranty and Maintenance Manual.



Use the engine oil recommended and approved by Riddara. Please refer to "Recommended oils, fluids and capacities" in "Technical Data".



Dispose of used engine oil in accordance with relevant environmental protection laws.

## Cooling system

### Cooling system introduction

The coolant added to a new vehicle not only provides anti-freeze protection at a low temperature, but also protects all components in the cooling system from corrosion. In addition, it prevents deposits and significantly increases the coolant boiling point.

For details about the coolant replacement interval, see the **Warranty and Maintenance Manual**.



Do not replace the coolant with other liquids. It is recommended to use the coolant specified by the manufacturer.



Even though the vehicle is not started, the cooling fan under the bonnet can start running and cause injury. Therefore, keep your body parts, clothing, and tools away from the cooling fan under the bonnet.



Do not touch the radiator and its hose, engine and other drive motor parts. Otherwise, you may be burned. Do not start the vehicle if there is coolant leakage. Otherwise, a vehicle fire may occur, causing personal injury and property loss.



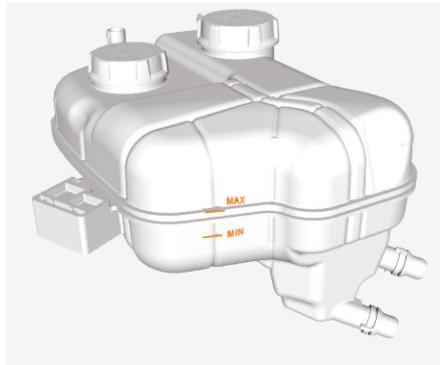
Dispose of used coolant in accordance with relevant environmental protection laws.

## Checking coolant

### Expansion tank of electric drive system



### Expansion tank of engine

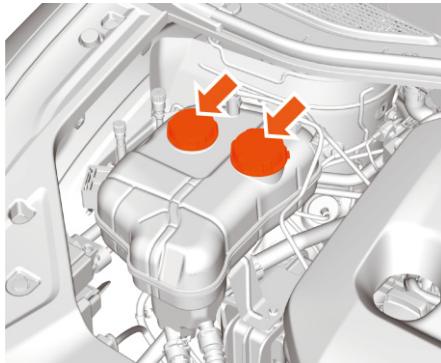


The vehicle must be parked on a flat surface while checking the coolant level. Check whether the coolant level in the expansion tank is between MAX and MIN marks. If the coolant in the expansion tank is boiling, never do anything until it cools down. If the coolant level is below the MIN mark or the expansion tank is empty, fill the

expansion tank with coolant according to the prescribed procedure.

## Adding coolant

The pressure cap of the coolant expansion tank should only be opened after the cooling system (including the coolant expansion tank pressure cap and the upper radiator hose) has completely cooled down.



1. Slowly turn the pressure cap of the expansion tank counterclockwise. If you hear a hissing sound, wait until the sound disappears before opening it. Hissing indicates that there is still pressure inside.
2. Continue turning the pressure cap of the expansion tank and remove it.

 Steam and boiling liquid from a hot cooling system can splash out and cause severe burns. The coolant is pressurized, and even a slight loosening of the pressure cap of the coolant expansion tank can result in boiling coolant spraying out. Do not open the pressure cap of the coolant expansion tank when the cooling system (including the pressure cap itself) is still hot. Always wait until the cooling system and the pressure cap of the coolant expansion tank cool down before opening the pressure cap.

3. Fill an appropriate amount of coolant into the coolant expansion tank until the coolant level reaches between MAX and MIN marks on the coolant expansion tank.

 If you spill coolant on hot parts, you may get burned.

 Do not mix coolants of different brands and specifications. Different brands of coolants are added with different types of preservatives, rust inhibitors and other chemical components. When they are mixed with each other, chemical reactions will easily occur, causing precipitation, scaling, corrosion and other hazards, thus affecting the service life of the vehicle.

 Please fill with ethylene glycol coolant certified by Riddara. Damage or failure caused by the use of inferior coolant or non-compliant coolant mixture is not covered by the warranty of Riddara.

4. With the coolant expansion tank cap open, start the vehicle and let it run until the upper radiator hose begins to warm up. During this process, the coolant level inside the expansion tank may decrease. If the coolant level is decreased, add an appropriate amount of coolant until the coolant level reaches between MAX and MIN marks on the coolant expansion tank.

5. Reinstall the cap. Make sure the pressure cap is securely tightened by hand and fully seated.

 If the pressure cap is not tightened, it may cause coolant loss and damage to the drive motor. Make sure the pressure cap is properly secured. If the coolant level drops significantly in a short period of time, it indicates that the cooling system may leak. In this case, contact a Riddara authorised service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

## Brake system

### Overview

A vehicle with good braking performance is required to reduce the speed or stop in a short time and distance after braking at any speed. Good braking performance plays an important role in driving safety. The vehicle cannot be braked effectively if the brake pads are worn abnormally or excessively. The degree of wear on the brake pads mainly depends on the vehicle operation conditions and driving habits. If the vehicle is used for regular urban trips or short journeys, it is recommended to increase the checking frequency of the brake pads according to the Warranty and Maintenance Manual.

Replace the brake fluid according to the maintenance cycle specified in the Warranty and Maintenance Manual. If the brake fluid remains in the brake system for too long, it may produce air resistance in the system pipeline during braking, which severely affects the braking effect.



Be sure to replace the brake pads at a Riddara authorised service centre to guarantee the best braking effect and minimum wear between brake pads and brake discs. New brake pads have a running-in period within the first 300 km, during which the brake pedal must be stepped with a stronger force to increase the braking effect. When driving with new tyres and new brake pads, do not follow other vehicles too close or brake suddenly, which may cause traffic accidents, resulting in serious injury or death.



Never use emergency brakes when driving the vehicle on narrow, wet, snowy, iced or muddy roads. Drive carefully and hold the steering wheel tightly while braking. After driving through water, step on the brake pedal continuously and gently for several times to eliminate the moisture on the brake pads and recover the braking performance.

### Energy recovery

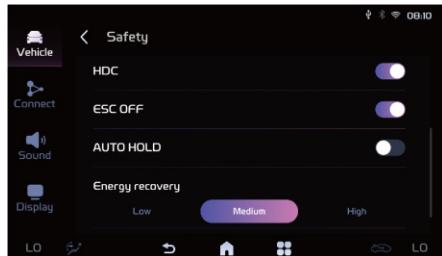
When the vehicle is set to Drive (D) position, coasting or braking, the kinetic energy is converted into electric energy, which is charged into the high-voltage battery to recover energy and increase the driving range.

In the process of energy recovery, the anti-dragging drive motor for the wheels is working, and the drive motor and the service brake system jointly achieve vehicle deceleration.

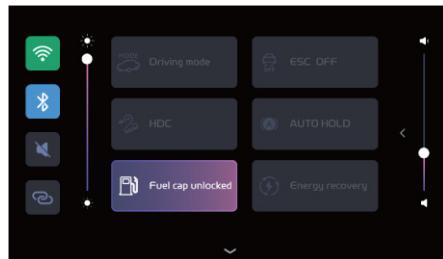
**i** It is normal for the vehicle to slow down with slight frustration and motor noise.

### Adjusting energy recovery levels

#### Type I

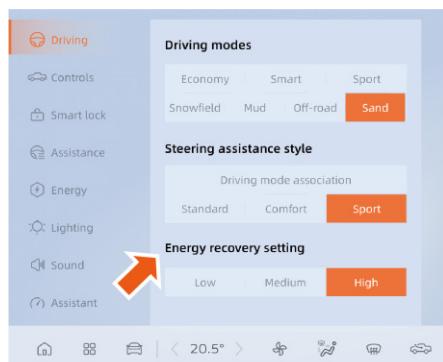


Tap: Settings → Vehicle → Safety in turn on the multimedia display, where an appropriate energy recovery level can be selected.



Alternatively, swipe down from the top edge of the display to open the Control Centre and toggle the Energy Recovery button to open the Energy Recovery screen.

#### Type II



Click on the multimedia display step by step: My car → Driving → Energy recovery setting, with three levels to choose from: Low, Medium, and High.

### Brake pedal travel

If the brake pedal does not return to its normal height or the brake pedal travel increases too quickly, please contact a Riddara authorised service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

## Brake disc rusting and the resulting brake judder problem

After the vehicle is left unused for a long time, the surface of the brake disc will rust, resulting in a brake judder problem during the braking process. In this case, it is necessary to remove the rust, and the temperature of the brake system should be controlled to be not too high during the running-in process. Contact a Riddara authorised service centre for guidance.

## Brake squeal

When driving on a wet road, or in a cold, snowy or rainy weather, depressing the brake pedal will cause the front and rear brakes to work simultaneously and produce a squeal sound now and then, which is normal.

## Creep groan appears when starting

It is normal to hear the friction sound between brake pads and brake discs when the brake pedal is released at starting. When the shift lever of a vehicle equipped with an automatic transmission is moved to D position, the braking torque is greater than the starting torque, so the front wheel will produce a "creak" sound when the brake pedal is released. This sound will be louder if the brake discs are wet after vehicle washing.

## The sound caused by depressing the brake pedal while turning the steering wheel in place

When the vehicle is still, the wheels also move when the steering wheel is turned. If the brake pedal is depressed at this time, the wheels will be prevented from moving. With the steering force and braking force, the vehicle accumulates some energy, so that the brake discs creep in the clamping state to release this energy. Thus, the vehicle produces a "creak" sound, which is normal.

## Brake discs heat up after use

Vehicle braking is achieved by the friction between brake discs and brake pads. This generates heat and the heat will concentrate on the brake discs, so brake disc heating is a normal phenomenon.



Do not touch the brake discs with your hands after the vehicle stops to avoid burning.

## Operating sound of Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system

When the ESC is working, you may hear some noise or feel the vibration of the brake pedal, which is normal. Please drive your vehicle as you wish.

### Replacing brake system parts

The brake system of the vehicle is very complex. Many parts must be of high quality, and they must be accurately matched to achieve the optimum braking effect. To replace the brake system parts, be sure to use the approved replacement parts. Otherwise, the brake system may not work properly. If the incorrect replacement parts are installed, the expected braking performance can change in other ways.

| Item                                  | Unit | Value |
|---------------------------------------|------|-------|
| Standard thickness of front brake pad | mm   | 10.0  |
| Minimum thickness of front brake pad  | mm   | 1.5   |
| Standard thickness of rear brake pad  | mm   | 10.0  |
| Minimum thickness of rear brake pad   | mm   | 2.0   |

### Brake fluid



Wear of the brake pad will cause the brake fluid level to drop. After replacing the brake pad, the brake fluid level can return to normal.



Brake fluid leakage will cause the level to drop. Please visit a Riddara authorised service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.



Do not add brake fluid when the brake pad is worn and the brake fluid leaks. After repair, add or reduce brake fluid as needed. If too much brake fluid is added, it may splash onto the hot parts inside the front compartment; if the temperature is high enough, it may burst into flames, causing personal injury and property loss.



When the brake fluid level is low, the brake system fault warning lamp will go on.



Do not let brake fluid spill on the vehicle paint. If any, clean it immediately.

The brake fluid reservoir should be filled with DOT4 brake fluid.



The brake fluid level must always be between MAX and MIN marks on the brake fluid reservoir.

**⚠** Always use the brake fluid of the manufacturer and brand specified by the Riddara authorised service centre, otherwise it will seriously damage the hydraulic brake system parts, affecting the braking performance and distance.

## Steering system

### Electric power steering (EPS)

The steering system is an important part of a vehicle. The performance of the steering system directly affects the operating stability of the vehicle and plays an important role in ensuring the safe running of the vehicle, reducing traffic accidents and protecting the safety of the driver.

When you feel it hard to steer, contact a Riddara authorised service centre for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

**⚠** Do not adjust the height of the electric power steering column when driving the vehicle. Do not make the vehicle coast when powered off. The steering could otherwise have no power, which is likely to cause accidents.

**⚠** Do not hold the steering wheel in the steering limit position for more than 5 seconds. The motor could otherwise be damaged.

### Exterior lamps

#### Condensation on exterior lamps

The exterior lamps adopt a ventilation design to adapt to the normal pressure changes within the lamps. Therefore, condensation on them is a normal phenomenon. Under normal operating conditions, the condensation will dissipate automatically after driving or turning on the exterior lamps for a while. The following conditions are normal:

- A thin layer of condensation (without strip-shaped watermarks, drip marks or water droplets).
- The condensation covers less than 50% of the exterior lamp cover.

Please contact a Riddara authorised service centre promptly if any of the following situations occur (usually caused by water leakage of exterior lamps):

- There are puddles of water inside the exterior lamp.
- There is a large area of water droplets, drop marks or strip-shaped watermarks inside the exterior lamp cover.

### Batteries

#### Maintenance of low-voltage battery

The vehicle is equipped with maintenance-free low-voltage battery. See the "Front Compartment" section in this chapter to locate the low-voltage battery.



Low-voltage battery poles, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds that may harm health. After contact with them, wash your hands with soap and thoroughly rinse with water.

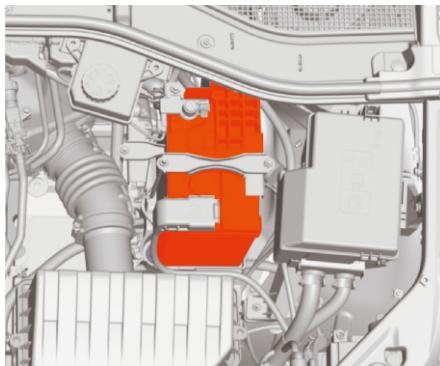
The following suggestions are provided to extend the service life of the low-voltage battery and maintain the normal operation of the vehicle's electrical system:

- Prevent the low-voltage battery from overcharging or long-term power loss.
- Keep the low-voltage battery away from heat source or open fire. When charging and using it, keep the area ventilated to prevent burning accidents.
- External charging should be carried out promptly when the voltage of the low-voltage battery is insufficient, the light is dim and the vehicle cannot be started.
- The low-voltage battery should be firmly installed on the vehicle to reduce vibration.

- Often check whether the low-voltage battery pole clamp is firm and in good contact to prevent sparks that can cause the explosion of the low-voltage battery. The oxides and sulfates produced by the clamp of the low-voltage battery must be scraped and coated with vaseline to prevent further corrosion.
- When driving in cold areas, avoid complete discharge of the low-voltage battery to prevent the electrolyte from freezing.

## Low-voltage battery inspection

The vehicle is equipped with maintenance-free low-voltage batteries, so there is no need to fill low-voltage battery electrolyte. Please visit a Riddara service centre regularly to check the status of your low-voltage battery.



## Replacement of low-voltage battery

Low-voltage batteries of the same model and specifications must be used for replacement. Contact a Riddara authorised service centre for removal, replacement and installation of the low-voltage battery.

 After replacing the low-voltage battery, please hand over the used low-voltage battery to the Riddara authorised service centre for disposal, or to a recycling station that meets the relevant environmental protection law. The low-voltage battery contains corrosive toxic substances. Keep the battery face up during transportation and storage.

 Low-voltage battery acid can cause burning, and the gas produced is explosive, which can cause injury or death. For details, see the "Jump Start" section in "Faults during Driving".

### Vehicle storage

Due to the weak current consumption of the vehicle circuit system when parking, the long-term storage of the vehicle will cause the low-voltage battery to run out of power. If you want to store the vehicle for a long time, you should disconnect the black negative (-) cable on the low-voltage battery to prevent the discharge of the low-voltage battery.

The vehicle should be stored in a cool, ventilated, clean and dry environment. If the vehicle is parked in a closed humid environment for a long time, this will accelerate the rust and ageing of the vehicle parts. Please carry out regular maintenance of the vehicle in a timely manner according to the suggestions and requirements in the Warranty and Maintenance Manual.

## Washer fluid and wiper blades

### Washer fluid

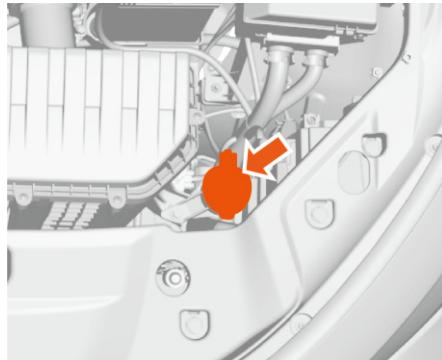
#### What kind of washer fluid to be used

Be sure to read the manufacturer's instructions before using the windscreen washer fluid. If the temperature in the area where you drive may drop below 0°C, use washer fluid with adequate anti-freezing capacity.



The freezing temperature of the washer fluid should be at least 10°C lower than the local minimum temperature.

### Adding washer fluid



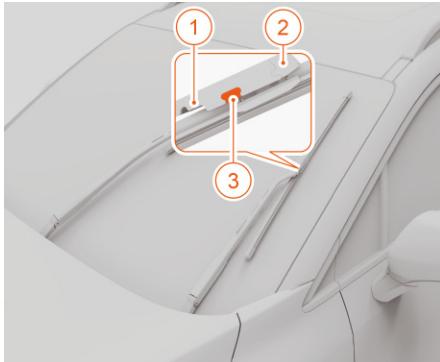
Open the filler cap of the washer liquid reservoir and add washer fluid.

 If concentrated washer fluid is used, please dilute it according to the manufacturer's instructions. Do not add water to the ready-to-use washer fluid; otherwise, the washer fluid may freeze and damage the washer fluid reservoir and other parts of the washer system. Do not top up the washer fluid reservoir when the weather is very cold. Otherwise, it may be damaged due to the freezing of washer fluid. Do not add coolant to the washer fluid reservoir. Otherwise, it will damage the vehicle's windscreen washer system and vehicle paint.

## Wiper blades

 Grease, silicon and petroleum products can easily weaken the wiping effect of the wiper blades. Clean the wiper blades with warm soapy water and check their conditions regularly. Clean the windscreen frequently and prevent the wiper blades from wiping dust sediments on the windscreen, so as not to affect the blade performance or shorten its service life. If the wiper rubber hardens or cracks or the wiper leaves scratches on the glass or fails to clean an area, the wiper blades need to be replaced. Use approved windscreen washer fluid regularly to clean the windscreen and ensure that the windscreen is thoroughly cleaned before replacing the wiper blades. Replace the wiper blades with only those of the same specifications. If the wiper or windscreen is covered with snow and ice or frozen, clean the snow and ice on the wiper and windscreen before using the wipers to avoid damage. Do not use the wipers when the windscreen is dry or covered by hard objects; otherwise, the wiper blades and windscreen may be damaged.

### Replacing front wiper blades

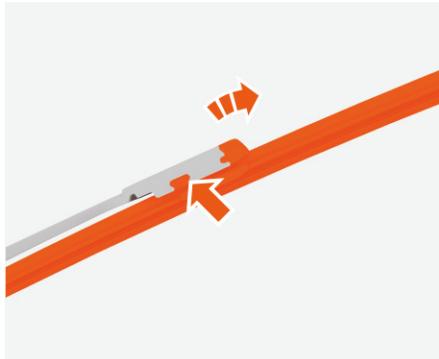


1. Wiper arms
2. Wiper blades
3. Clips

The wiper blade should be checked for wear or breakage. To replace the wiper blade:

1. Within 30 seconds after moving the start switch to the OFF position, pull the wiper control lever upward to the MIST position and then release it to activate the wiper service mode.
2. Pull the wiper blade assembly away from the windscreens.

**⚠** When the wiper blade is upright, do not open the bonnet; otherwise, it will collide with the wiper blade, resulting in damage to the wiper blade or the bonnet. Any damage arising from this is not covered by the vehicle warranty.



3. Press the retaining clips of the wiper as shown in the illustration. Pull the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow to release it from the wiper arm. Remove the wiper blade.

**⚠** When the wiper blade is not installed, allowing the wiper arm to touch the windscreens will damage the windscreens. Any damage arising from this is not covered by the vehicle warranty.

4. Install the wiper blade in reverse order of steps 2 to 3.
5. After the start switch is placed in the ON position, flick the wiper switch to any gear, the wiper will return to the original position and exit the maintenance mode.

## Vehicle cleaning and maintenance

### Cleaning of the exterior

Washing your vehicle frequently helps to protect the vehicle's appearance. When washing the vehicle, always turn off the start switch first and wash it in the shade, not under direct sunlight. If your vehicle has been parked under direct sunlight for a long time, let it cool down before washing. When washing with an automatic washing machine, you must follow the instructions of the operator.



To avoid damage to the vehicle paint, corrosive substances (bird droppings, resins, insects, asphalt spots, road salt, industrial dust, etc.) should be removed immediately. If necessary, remove asphalt spots and stubborn oil stains with industrial alcohol, then immediately wash away the alcohol with water and a mild neutral soap solution.

### Use a high-pressure cleaner for washing

- Before washing the vehicle, check and confirm that the vehicle charging port flap is properly closed.
- Wash the vehicle in strict accordance with the usage instructions of the high-pressure cleaner, and pay special attention to operating pressure and spraying distance. If a pressure cleaner is

used, the nozzle must be at least 30 cm away from the surface of the car body. Keep the nozzle moving, and do not spray water on a certain part all the time; otherwise, high-pressure water will flow into the vehicle parts and cause chronic damage. Do not spray water towards the charging port.

- Do not use "cluster nozzles" to wash your vehicle.
- Do not spray water directly or indirectly into the front compartment. High pressure water flow can cause damage to the electrical components in the front compartment or cause malfunction of some components.
- Do not flush the chassis connectors (especially orange high-voltage harness connectors) of the vehicle with the nozzle.
- Do not use a high-pressure washing machine or steam cleaner to clean cameras and sensors as this may cause damage.
- Do not spray wash painted bumpers, rubber hoses, plastic parts, insulation materials and other flexible components at a short distance.

### Automatic vehicle washing

- Before automatic vehicle washing, check the vehicle with the car washing operator for additional installed parts and follow the

professional advice provided by the operator.

- Fold the exterior rearview mirrors before washing the vehicle.
- Although the body paint is strong enough to withstand the washing of an automatic cleaning machine, pay attention to the impact on the paint. The degree of impact mainly depends on the structure of the cleaning machine, the cleaning brush, the filtering state of the cleaning water and the types of cleaning agent and wax solvent. If the body paint is darkened or scratched after the washing, tell the operator to make corrections immediately.
- When cleaning your vehicle with an automatic washing machine, try to use a contact-free one. This type of washing machine does not have parts that touch the vehicle body (such as bushes).

### Cleaning of the interior

Cleaning the interior regularly helps to improve the vehicle's internal environment. Dust and dirt on the interiors can cause surface damage to carpets, fabrics, leather and plastic products. Stains, especially those on light-coloured interiors, should be removed quickly, otherwise extreme heat will cause them to cure quickly. Use a small soft brush to dust buttons and knobs.

Use only cleaning agents for vehicles to clean the surface of interiors. Other detergents may cause permanent damage to the vehicle. To prevent overspray, spray the cleaning agent onto the cleaning cloth. If you accidentally spray the cleaning agent on other surfaces in the vehicle, wipe it off immediately.

The temperature of the drying gun used to paste the glass protective film is very high. Pay attention not to bake the interior when pasting the protective film, otherwise the interior will be damaged.



When cleaning the vehicle glass, only use a soft cloth and glass cleaning agents, and do not use any abrasive cleaning agent; otherwise, it will scratch the glass and/or cause malfunction of the rear window demist feature.

The cleaning agents contain solvents that may condense on the interiors. Read and follow all safety instructions on the label before applying cleaning agents.

Open the doors and windows when cleaning the interiors to maintain good ventilation.

When cleaning the interiors, pay attention to the following:

- Do not use blades or other sharp objects to remove dirt from interior surfaces.
- Do not use a stiff brush. It may damage the surface of the interior.

- Never press the interiors hard or wipe them with cleaning cloths forcibly. Wiping hard cannot clean better, but instead may damage the interiors.
- Use only mild neutral soaps. Avoid using strong detergents or de-oiling soap. Using too much soap leaves traces and dirt may adhere to these traces.
- Do not soak the interiors during cleaning.
- Do not use organic solvents such as naphtha and alcohol, which may damage the interiors.

## Fabric/carpet

Use a vacuum cleaner with a soft brush to remove dust and scum. For stubborn stains, always try to remove them with water or soda water first. Before cleaning, select appropriate methods to remove stains:

- Liquid stains: gently wipe the residual stains with a paper towel to make them soaked and adsorbed to the paper towel as much as possible.
- Solid stains: remove as many stains as possible by hand, and then clean with a vacuum cleaner.

### Cleaning steps:

1. Soak a clean white lint-free rag with water or soda water.
2. Wring out the rag.
3. When removing stains, scrub gently from the edge to the centre until no more stain remain on the rag.

4. If the stains cannot be completely removed, repeat the steps with mild soapy water.

If these stubborn stains cannot be removed yet, you may use synthetic fabric cleaners or detergents. Conduct a test for colour fastness in an inconspicuous position inside the vehicle before using a cleaning agent. If the cleaning effect is good in this position, use the cleaning agent to clean the entire surface. After cleaning, use paper towels to absorb excess water from the fabric or carpet.

## Cleaning leather

You can use soft wet rags to remove dust. To clean more thoroughly, use soft rags soaked with neutral soapy water. Let the leather dry naturally, do not bake it, and never clean it with steam.

Do not use cleaners and polish agents on leathers, otherwise it may permanently change the appearance and feel of the vehicle interiors. Do not use silicon-based, wax-based or products with an organic solvent to clean vehicle interiors, which may lead to uneven leather gloss, affecting the appearance of the vehicle interiors.

Never use shoe cream on leather.

## Dash panel and other plastic surfaces

Do not use cleaners and polish agents on plastic surfaces, otherwise it may permanently change the appearance and feel of the vehicle interiors. Some commercially available products can enhance the gloss of the dash panel, but they may cause reflection on the windscreens and seriously affect the visibility of the windscreens.

## Main parameters

### Main dimension parameters

| Item              | Unit | Parameters |      |
|-------------------|------|------------|------|
| Length            | mm   | 5260       | 5277 |
| Width             | mm   |            | 1900 |
| Height            | mm   |            | 1880 |
| Front wheel track | mm   |            | 1614 |
| Rear wheel track  | mm   |            | 1620 |
| Wheelbase         | mm   |            | 3120 |

### Vehicle weight parameters

| Item                             | Unit    | Type I        | Type II | Type III |
|----------------------------------|---------|---------------|---------|----------|
| Drive form                       | /       | On-Demand 4WD |         |          |
| Number of passengers             | Per son |               | 5       |          |
| Vehicle kerb weight              | kg      | 2105          | 2120    | 2140     |
| Maximum allowable total mass     | kg      | 2980          | 2995    | 3015     |
| Payload                          | kg      |               | 500     |          |
| Free stroke of accelerator pedal | mm      |               | <4      |          |
| Free stroke of brake pedal       | mm      |               | 5~15    |          |

## Technical data

---

### Main assembly types and parameters

#### Main parameters of engine

| Item                 | Unit  | Parameters |
|----------------------|-------|------------|
| Total displacement   | L     | 1.499      |
| Rated power          | kW    | 120        |
| Maximum net power    | kW    | 115        |
| Rated power speed    | r/min | 5500       |
| Maximum torque       | N·m   | 255        |
| Maximum torque speed | r/min | 2500~4000  |

#### Motor parameters

| Item                            | Unit  | Front motor | Rear motor |
|---------------------------------|-------|-------------|------------|
| Rated power of drive motor      | kW    | 75          | 60         |
| Peak power of drive motor       | kW    | 160         | 180        |
| Rated torque of drive motor     | N·m   | 175         | 140        |
| Peak torque of drive motor      | N·m   | 350         | 309        |
| Rated speed of drive motor      | r/min | 4100        | 4093       |
| Peak speed of drive motor       | r/min | 16000       | 16000      |
| Main reduction ratio of reducer | /     | ICE: 4.176  |            |

## High-voltage battery parameters

| Item                                    | Unit  | Parameters                     |
|---|-------|--------------------------------|
| Battery type                            | /     | Lithium iron phosphate battery |
| Rated voltage of battery pack           | V     | 313                            |
| Operating voltage range of battery pack | V     | 200~365                        |
| Peak power (10s, 50%SOC, RT)            | kW    | 128                            |
| Battery cell voltage                    | V     | 3.13                           |
| Pack energy density                     | Wh/Kg | 112                            |

## High-voltage battery parameters

| Item                               | Unit | Parameters        |
|------------------------------------|------|-------------------|
| Battery pack type                  | /    | 1P100S            |
| Battery capacity                   | Ah   | 61                |
| Total energy of battery pack       | kWh  | 19.09             |
| Battery assembly size              | mm   | 1262.9*1112*153.7 |
| Battery assembly weight            | kg   | 189               |
| Battery assembly protection rating | /    | IP69              |

## Technical data

|   |    |        |
|---|----|--------|
| Battery assembly<br>charging<br>temperature<br>range    | °C | -20~56 |
| Battery assembly<br>discharging<br>temperature<br>range | °C | -30~56 |

## Vehicle power performance

| Item                                 | Unit | Parameters |
|--------------------------------------|------|------------|
| Maximum speed                        | km/h | 180        |
| Maximum<br>gradeability<br>(Unladen) | /    | 90%        |

## Vehicle economy

| Item             | Unit    | Parameters |
|------------------|---------|------------|
| Fuel consumption | L/100km | 1.9        |

## Emission level

| Item           | Parameters                               |
|----------------|--|
| Emission level | China VI, Euro 6B, and Euro 6C standards |

## Wheels and tyres

### Tyre model

| Item               | Parameters |           |
|--------------------|------------|-----------|
|                    | Type I     | Type II   |
| Rim specification  | 17×6.5 J   | 18×7.0 J  |
| Tyre specification | 235/65R17  | 235/60R18 |

### Dynamic unbalance

| Item                   | Unit | Parameters |
|------------------------|------|------------|
| Front wheel inner side | g    | ≤10        |
| Front wheel outer side | g    | ≤10        |
| Rear wheel inner side  | g    | ≤10        |
| Rear wheel outer side  | g    | ≤10        |

### Tyre pressure (cold)

| Wheels       | Unit | Parameters                                  |
|--------------|------|---|
| Front wheels | kPa  | Unladen/half-laden: 250<br>Fully laden: 250 |
| Rear wheels  | kPa  | Unladen/half-laden: 250<br>Fully laden: 290 |

### Wheel alignment parameters

(unladen vehicle)

| Item   | Parameters  |
|--|-------------|
| Maximum turning angle of front wheel (inner/outer) | 37.2°±2°    |
| Front wheel toe-in                                 | 10'±6'      |
| Rear wheel toe-in                                  | 12'±6'      |
| Front wheel camber                                 | -19'±40'    |
| Rear wheel camber                                  | -17'±30'    |
| Kingpin inclination angle                          | 12.57°±0.5° |
| Kingpin caster angle                               | 3.3°±0.5°   |

## Technical data

|                                   |       |
|-----------------------------------|-------|
| Front wheel toe-in (single wheel) | 5'±5' |
| Rear wheel toe-in (single wheel)  | 6'±5' |

## Fluids

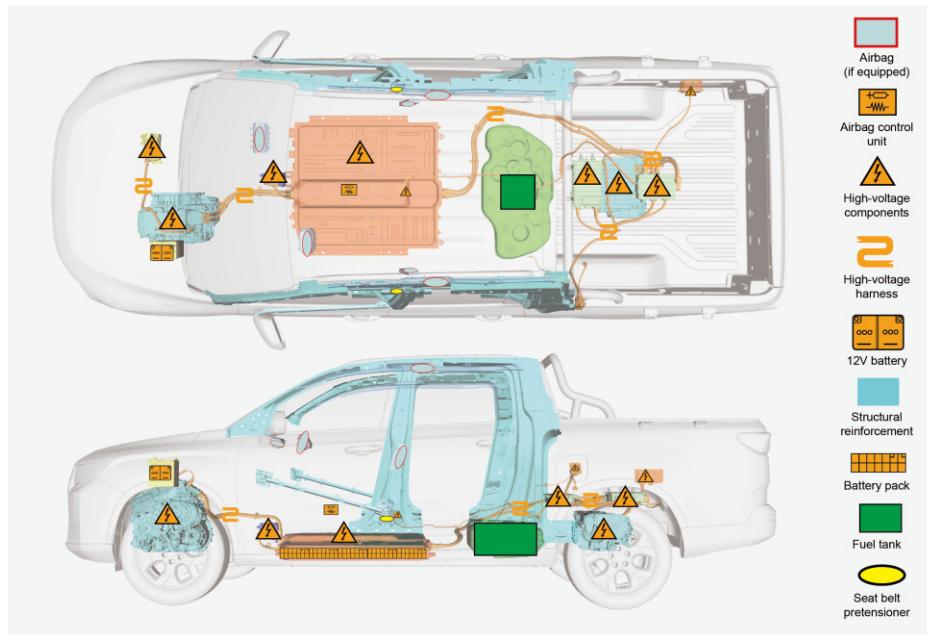
### Recommended oils, fluids and capacities

| Item                          | Specification                | Capacity  |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------|---|
| Petrol                        | Refer to fuel tank cap label | 60L   |
| Engine oil                    | SP 0W-20                     | 4.0L (with oil filter replacement)<br>3.7L (without oil filter replacement) |
| Engine coolant                | LongPan -40°C                | 8.8L  |
| Electric drive system coolant | LongPan -40°C                | 10.8L   |
| Front reducer lubricant       | Shell E-Fluids E6 I DHTF     | 3.6L  |
| Rear reducer lubricant        | Castrol BOT 805C             | 1.6 L   |
| Brake fluid                   | DOT4                         | 1.05L   |
| Windscreen washer fluid       | Freezing point: -20°C        | ≤2.7 L  |
| A/C refrigerant               | R134A                        | 650g  |

## Product information

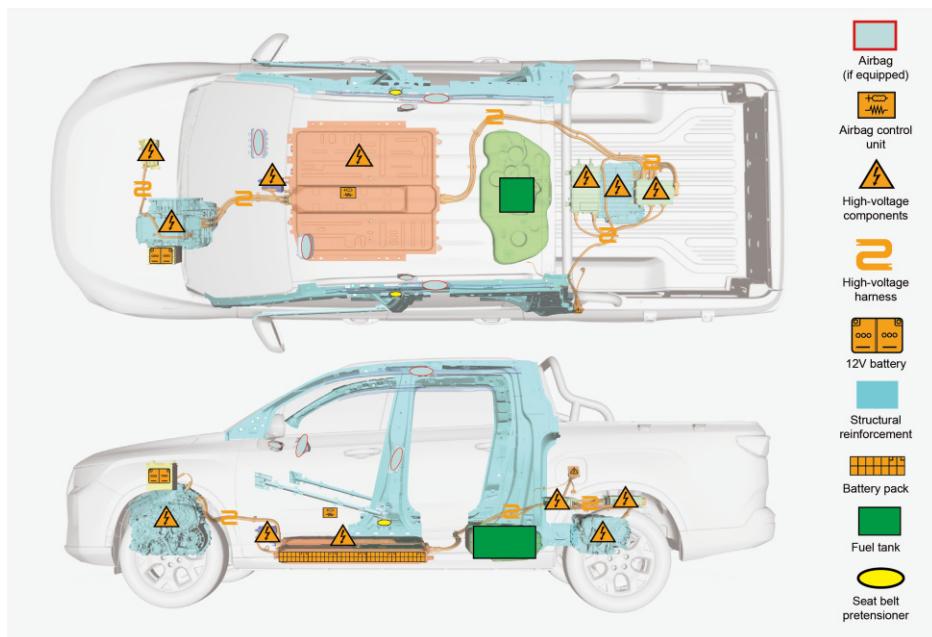
## Power system information

Type I (Chinese Standard)

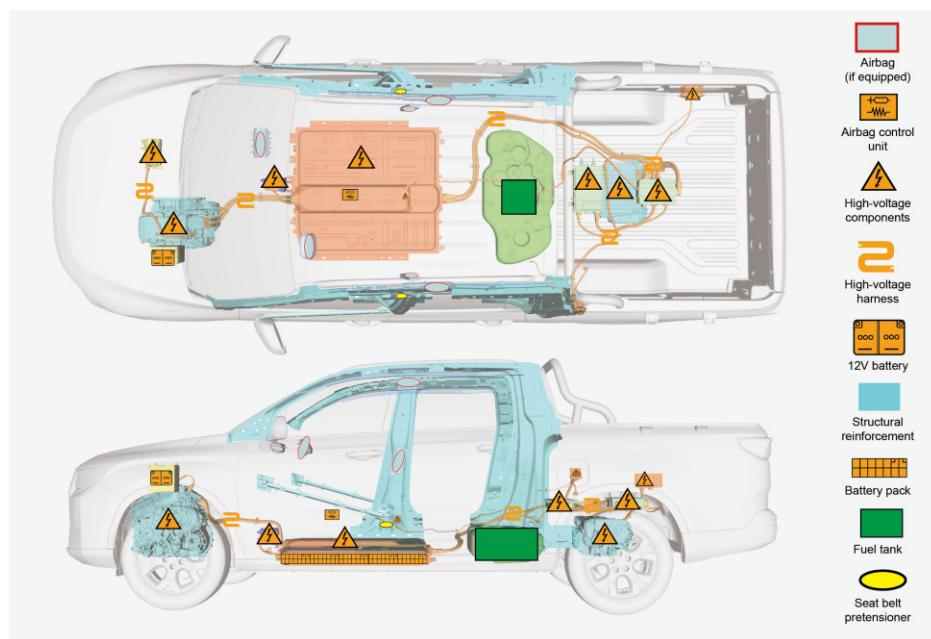


## Emergency rescue

### Type II (Chinese Standard)



## Type I (European Standard)



1

2

3

4

5

6

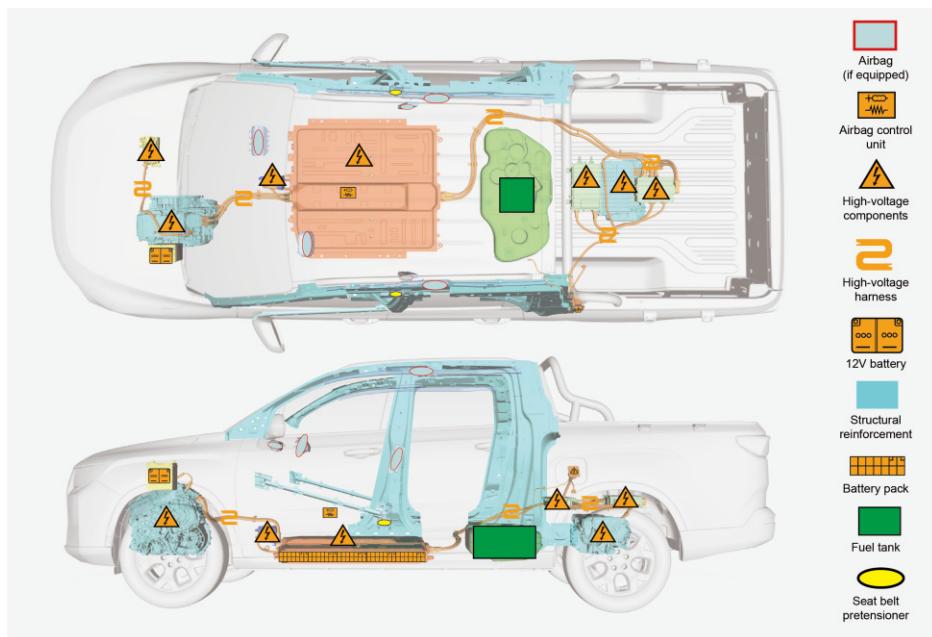
7

8

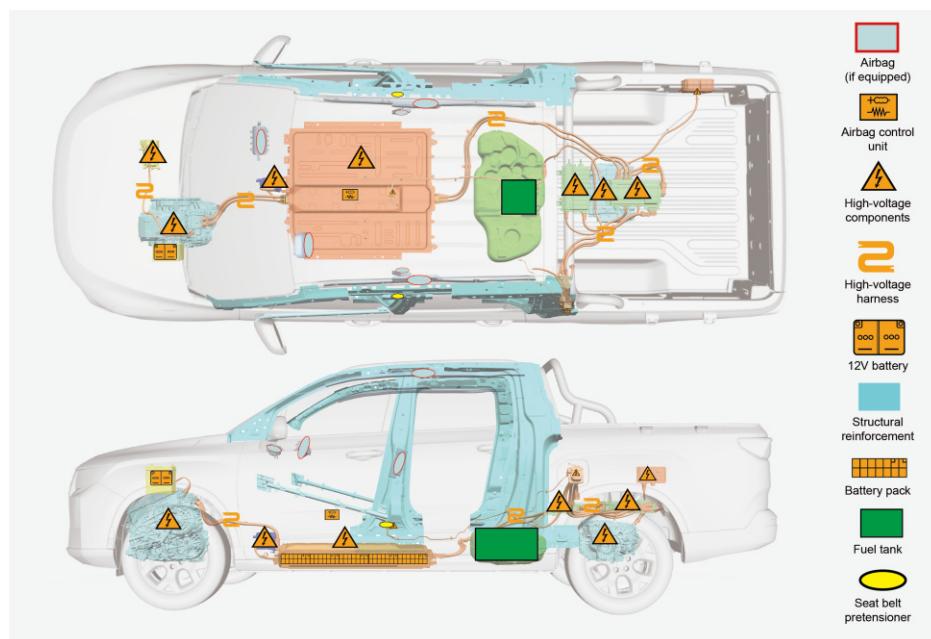
9

## Emergency rescue

### Type II (European Standard)



## Type III (European Standard)



1

2

3

4

5

6

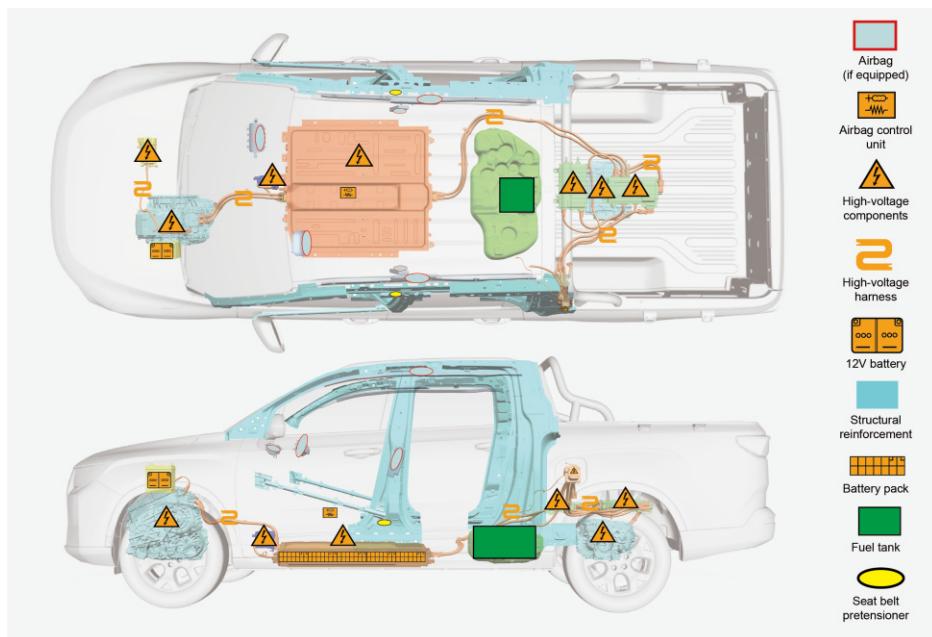
7

8

9

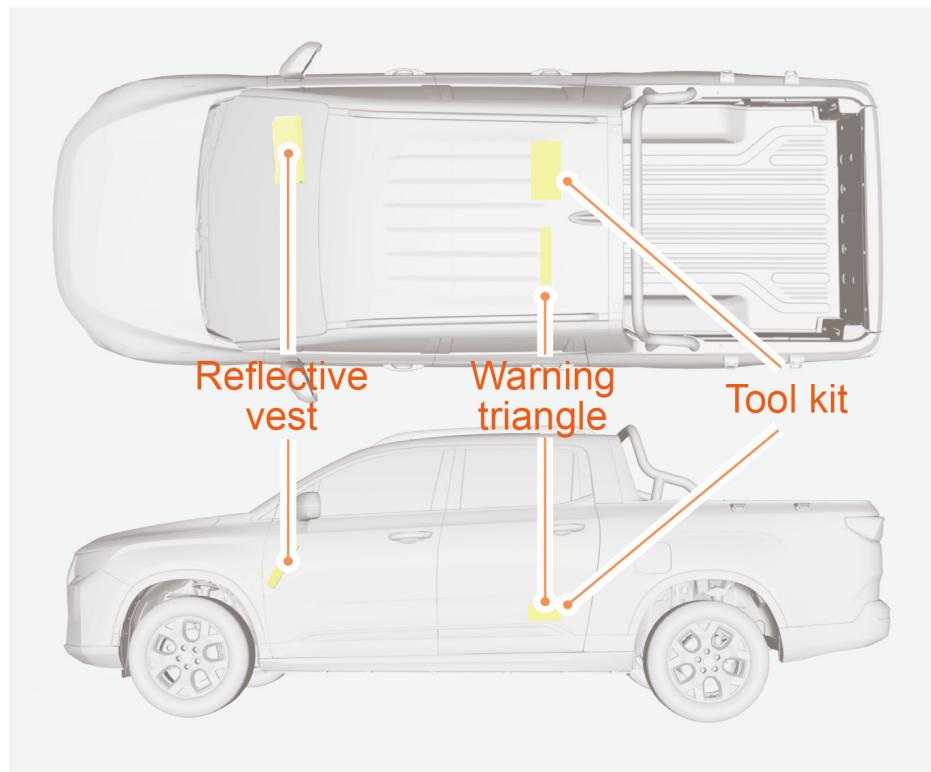
## Emergency rescue

### Type IV (European Standard)



## Vehicle emergency tools

## Type I



1

2

3

4

5

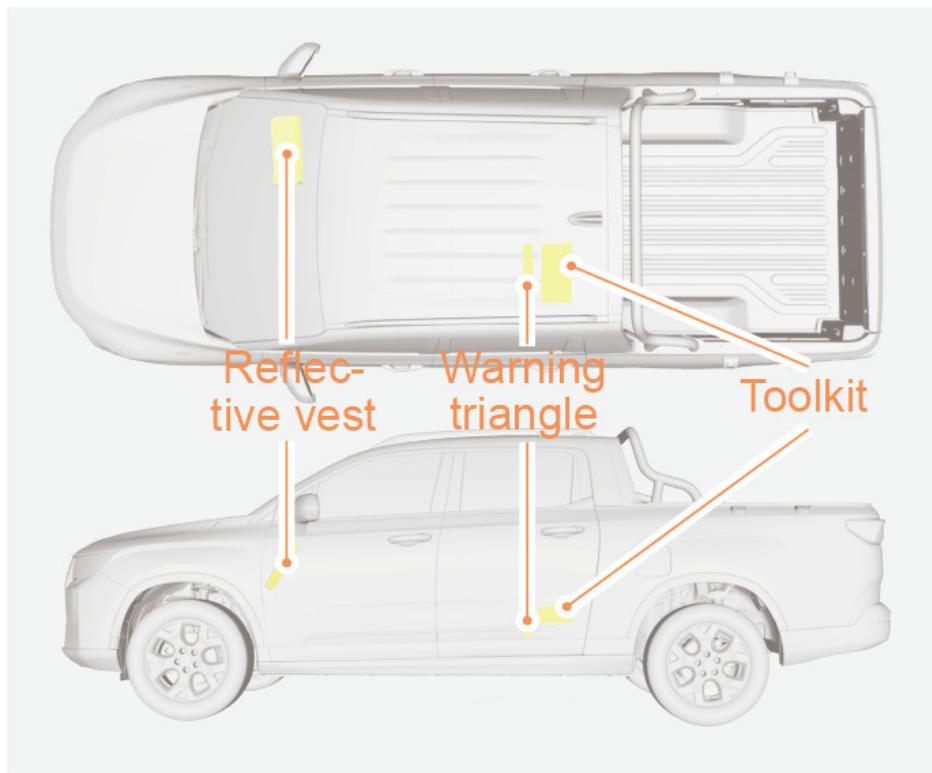
6

7

8

9

Type II



Tyre repair kit (if equipped)

When a tyre is leaking and needs to be repaired, you can use the tyre repair tool, which is under the rear seat.



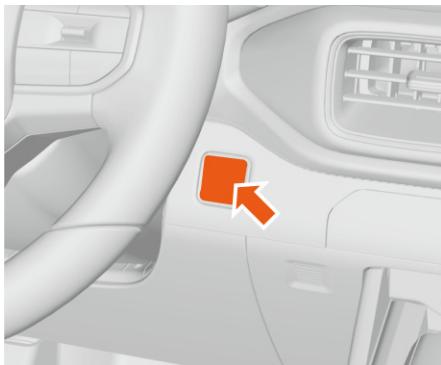
## Towing eye

When towing the vehicle, use the towing eye under the rear seat.



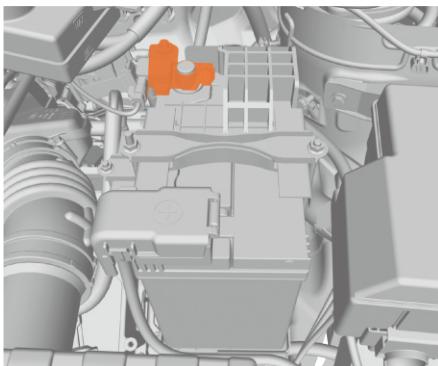
## High voltage discharge solution

1. Press the start switch to switch off the vehicle, make sure the indicator lamp is off and wait for at least 5 minutes to ensure that the high voltage system is fully de-energised.

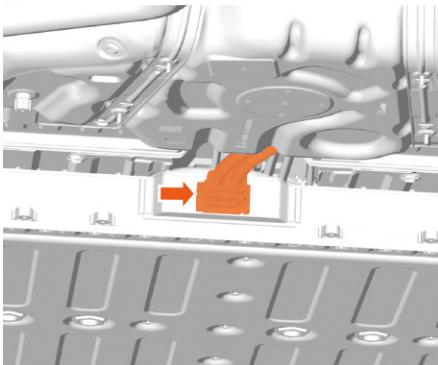


2. Open the bonnet.

3. Disconnect the negative battery terminal bond strap and wait for 15 minutes.



4. Disconnect the high-voltage DC bus.



1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

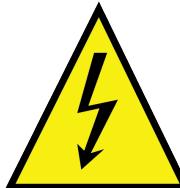
9

 Always wear appropriate personal protective equipment and disconnect the high-voltage system if you need to touch any high-voltage harness or component. To avoid the risk of electric shock, even if the high-voltage system is disconnected, people not wearing proper PPE must not touch high-voltage battery components.

## Safety sign information

## Safety sign information

## Safety signs

| S/N | Name of safety sign                      | Design  | Explanation   |
|-----|--|---|---|
| 1   | Warning sign for high voltage            |    | Danger! Do not touch high-voltage components.   |
| 2   | Warning sign for high-voltage components |    | Danger! Do not touch high-voltage components.   |
| 3   | Warning sign for high-voltage components |    | Danger! Do not touch high-voltage components.<br>Do not insert a 10A plug into a 16A socket!  |
| 4   | Warning sign for charging                |  | Danger! Do not touch high-voltage components.<br>Misalignment between the charging gun and the charging port is prohibited!<br>The charging gun must be fully aligned with the charging port! |

|   |                      |   |  |
|---|----------------------|---|--|
| 5 | Battery pack label   |  | Battery pack information               |
| 6 | High-voltage harness |  | The high-voltage harness is in orange. |

### Information on emergency response procedure

#### Items to be prepared

#### Protective equipment

The following protective equipment should be used properly when working with or maintaining high-voltage systems.

- Wear goggles when handling high-voltage systems.
- Wear 1000 V insulating gloves when contacting high-voltage components.
- Use insulating tools when handling high-voltage systems.
- Prepare insulated protective hooks.
- Use a fire extinguisher suitable for lithium-ion batteries (e.g., powder fire extinguisher).
- Follow the two-person rule and do not work alone, as you may need help if an accident occurs.

| Name                             | Picture   | Remarks  |
|----------------------------------|---|--|
| Acid and alkali-resistant gloves |  | Use in case of lithium battery electrolyte leakage |

|   |                                |   |  |
|---|--------------------------------|---|--|
| 1 | Insulated protective hook      |    | Use in case of electric shock                      |
| 2 | Powder fire extinguisher       |    |  |
| 3 | Fire blanket                   |    | For fire extinguishing                             |
| 4 | High-voltage insulating gloves |    | For protection against high-voltage electric shock |
| 5 | Insulating cap                 |   |  |
| 6 | Goggles                        |  | For protection against high-voltage electric shock |
| 7 | Insulating shoes               |  |  |

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

## Emergency rescue

|                  |   |  |
|------------------|---|--|
| Insulating tape  |  | Cover damaged harnesses to provide protection and prevent electric shock. All exposed or damaged wires shall be wrapped with tape. |
| Insulating tools |  | For operating high-voltage system components   |

## Vehicle fire

**!** In the event of a fire, do not touch any part of the vehicle, considering that the entire vehicle is electrified. Wear personal protective equipment, including self-contained air breathing apparatus. Electric vehicles produce similar smoke when burning as fuel vehicles. When extinguishing a fire, have a sufficient water source available to completely extinguish the fire. High-voltage components may be electrified during a fire! Cutting, crushing or touching high-voltage parts may cause an accident resulting in injury or death. Do not touch any part of the vehicle. If there are occupants in the vehicle during rescue, be sure to help them escape by pulling the door handle to see if the door can be opened. When all the doors cannot be opened, you can use a sharp hard object to hit the corners of the door glass to break the window to escape.

**i** Fire in high-voltage components must be extinguished with an extinguisher suitable for lithium-ion batteries, a water-based extinguisher is recommended.

In the event of a vehicle fire, personnel should quickly leave the vehicle, call the police as the case may be, and notify rescuers that the vehicle is an electric vehicle and is equipped with high-voltage components.

With personal safety assured, take the following actions where appropriate:

- If the wiring harness smokes and catches fire, use a dry powder fire extinguisher to put out.
- If smoke is found emanating from the high-voltage battery, it should be assumed that the high-voltage battery is heating up, use a water cannon to extinguish the fire at a distance.
- If you accidentally inhale thick smoke, please move to a safe area and seek medical attention as soon as possible.

After all flames and smoke have significantly diminished, a thermal imaging camera can be used to actively detect and monitor the temperature of the high-voltage battery. There must be no fire, nor smoke or heat in the high-voltage battery for at least one hour before moving the vehicle. The high-voltage battery must be completely cooled before the vehicle leaves the accident scene. Always inform the transporter that there is a risk of re-ignition of the high-voltage battery.

It must be confirmed that the high-voltage battery is thoroughly cooled when extinguishing residual sources of fire to prevent the high-voltage battery from re-igniting. Spontaneous ignition occurs when the high-voltage battery is in close proximity to an ignition source. To prevent electric shock and

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

injury, do not damage the high-voltage battery housing.

### Waterlogged vehicle

**⚠** The extent of damage to a waterlogged vehicle may not be obvious. People handling a waterlogged vehicle must wear protective equipment to avoid being injured or killed by electric shock.

**⚠** Before touching high-voltage system components in water, ensure the rescuer wears protective equipment to prevent electric shock. Before handling a waterlogged vehicle, the high-voltage system must be disconnected. The vehicle must be allowed to dry completely after being removed from the waterlogged area to prevent injury caused by electrical leakage.

When the door is unlocked, you can open the door by using the inner handles.

**⚠** Each of the remaining three doors can be unlocked and opened by the inner handles. If the rear door cannot be opened, it may have been locked by the child lock function. It needs to be opened from the outside, or you should lower the glass and stretch your hand out to pull it open from the outside. When all the doors cannot be opened, you can use a sharp hard object to hit the corners of the door glass to break the window to escape.

### Emergency evacuation of occupants

#### Door unlocking and evacuation

If life is in danger, follow the steps below to escape as quickly as possible.



## Cuttable positions

### Airbag components

**!** Do not cut the area associated with the high-voltage system, as this may result in serious personal injury or death.

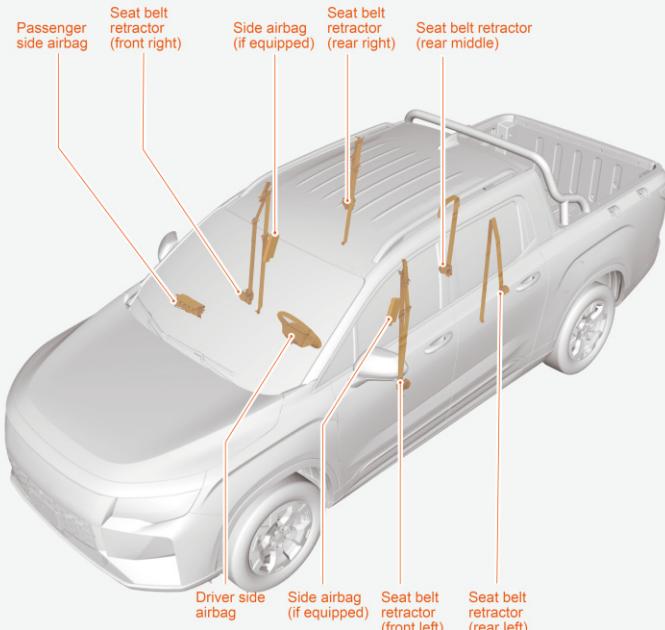
Do not cut the area associated with the high-voltage battery, as this may result in serious personal injury or death.

Personal protective equipment must be worn at all times when disassembling parts, otherwise, it may cause serious personal injury or death.

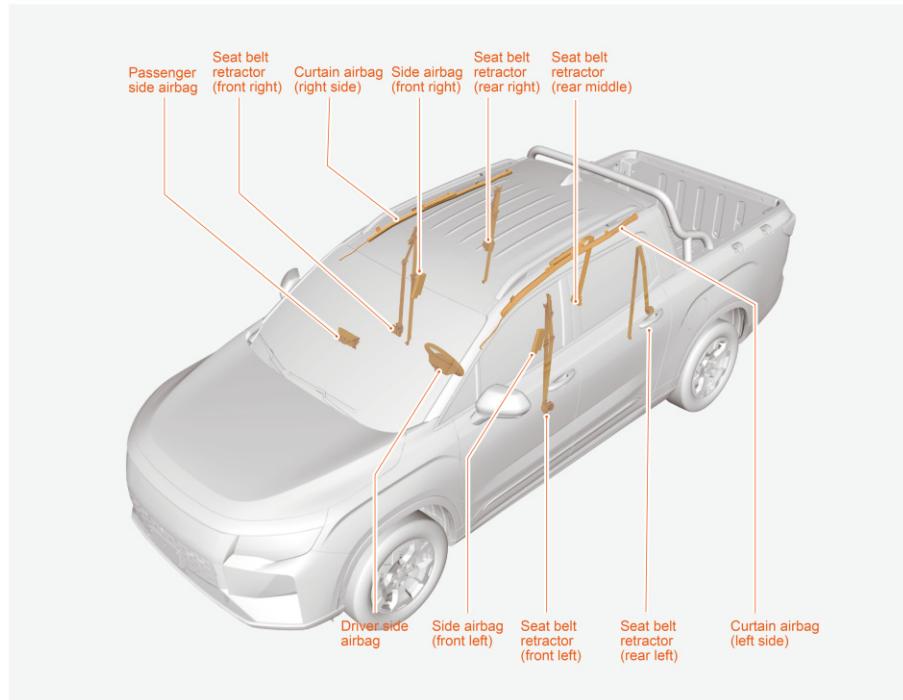
Airbag parts must not be cut if they are not deployed, otherwise, an accidentally deployed airbag could result in serious personal injury or death, unless:

- The driver-side and occupant-side airbags have been deployed.
- The 12V negative battery cable has been disconnected for more than 3 minutes and the high-voltage system has been switched off.

#### Type I



### Type II



## No-cutting areas

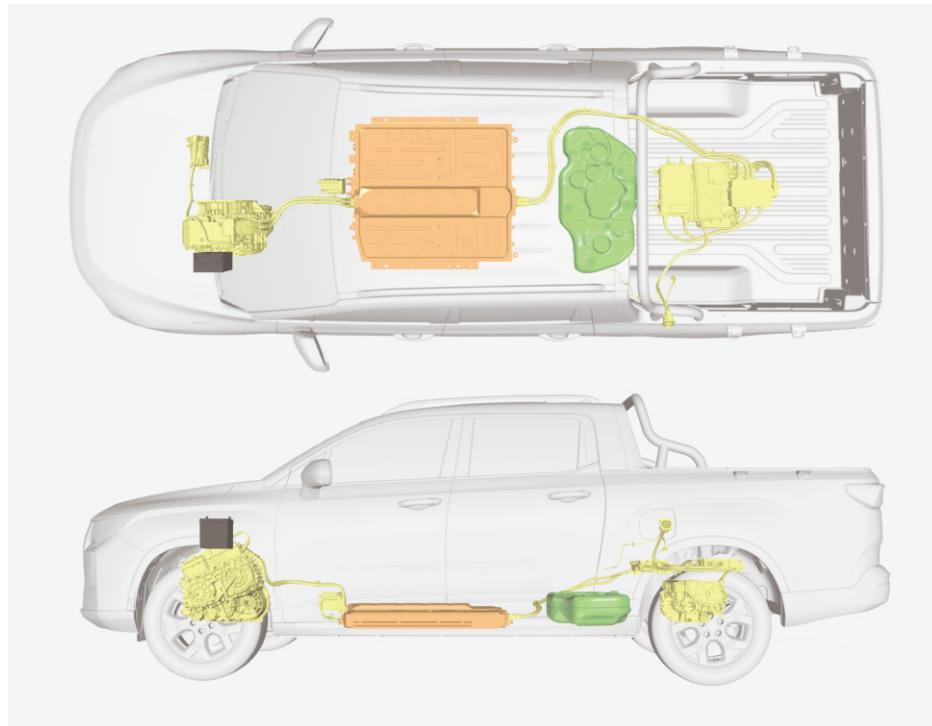
The areas in yellow in the figure below are high-voltage parts and wiring harnesses that can only be cut when the high-voltage system has been turned off.

The orange parts in the figure below are "no-cutting areas". Do not cut or shred these areas, otherwise, high-voltage electric shock, fire, explosion and other accidents may occur, resulting in serious personal injury or death.

The black part in the following figure is the 12V battery, which is strictly prohibited to cut.

The green part in the following figure is the fuel tank. Cutting is strictly prohibited.

Type I (Chinese Standard)



1

2

3

4

5

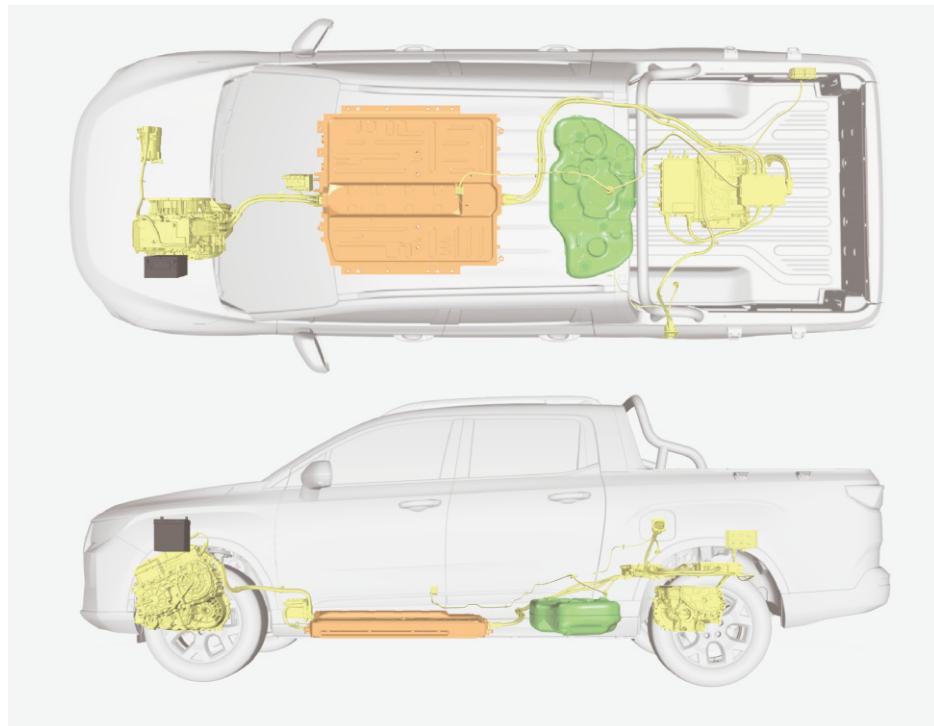
6

7

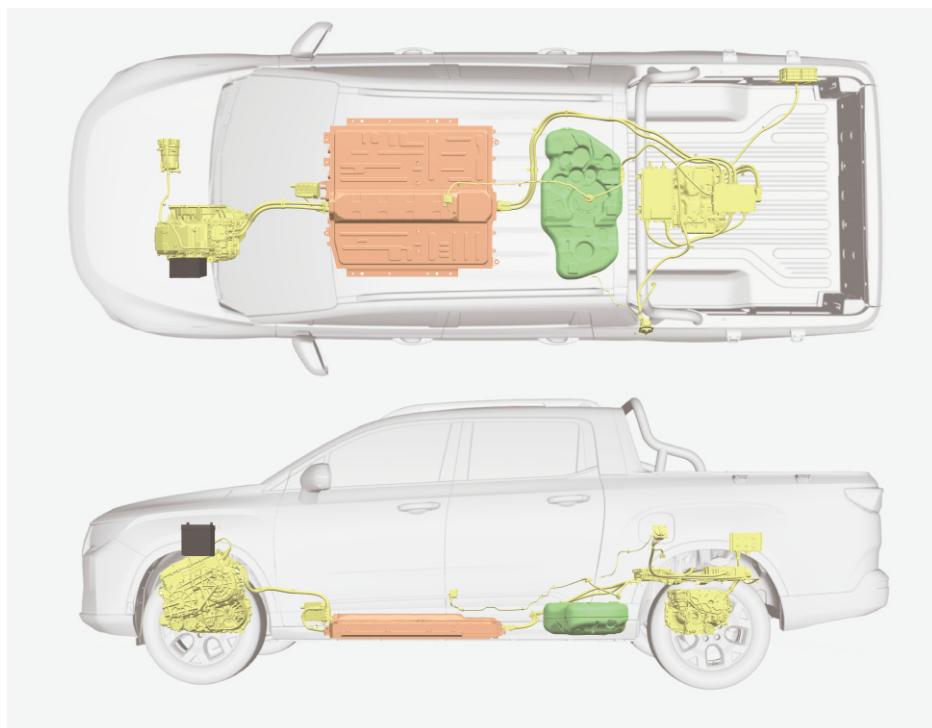
8

9

Type II (Chinese Standard)



Type I (European Standard)



1

2

3

4

5

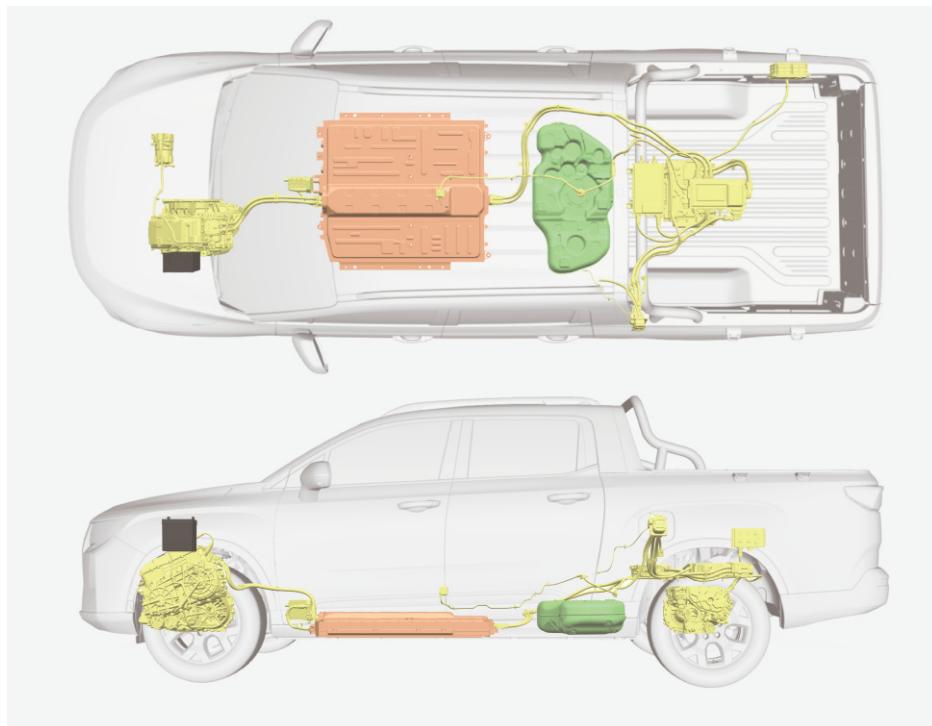
6

7

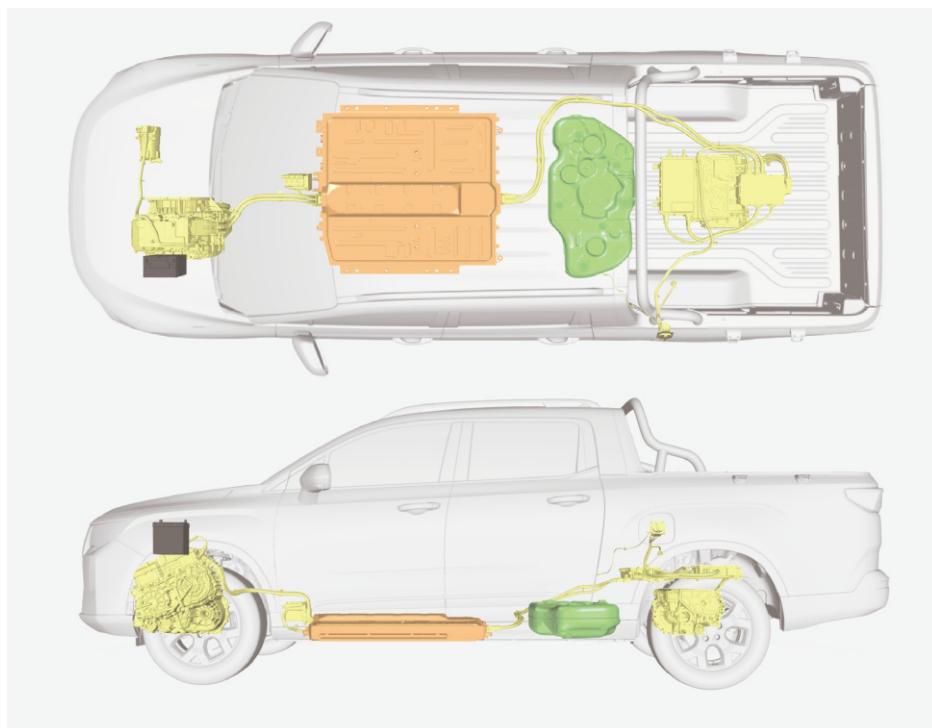
8

9

Type II (European Standard)



Type III (European Standard)



1

2

3

4

5

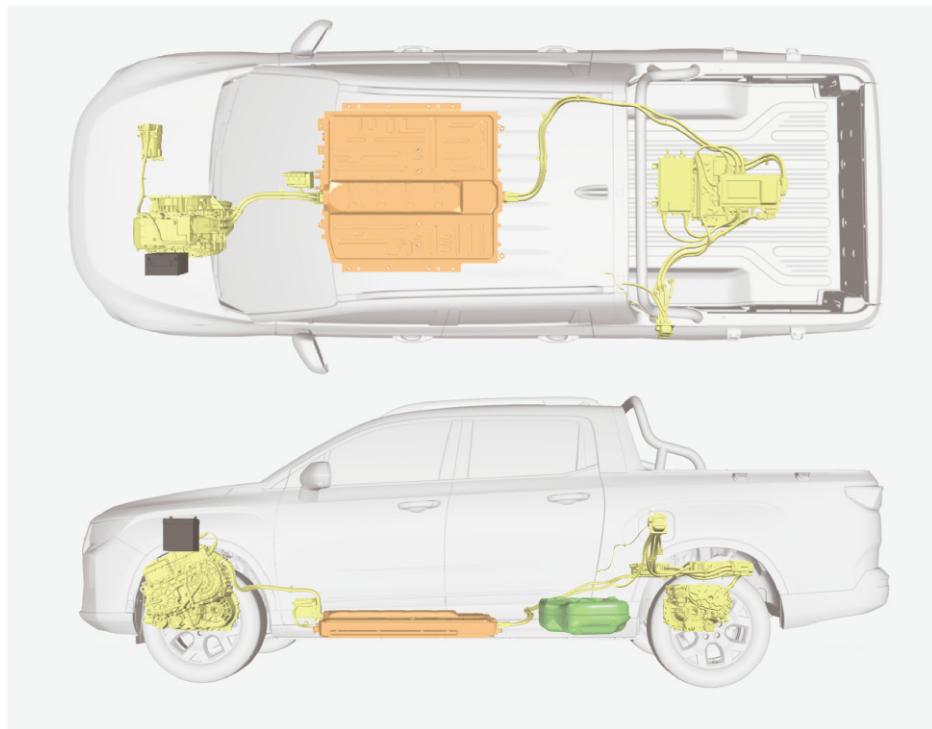
6

7

8

9

### Type IV (European Standard)



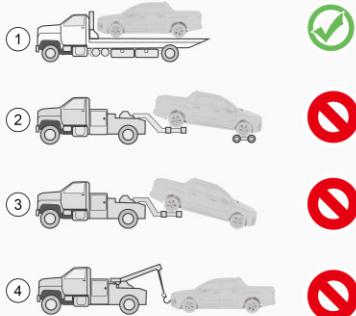
When cutting, be sure to use a suitable tool such as a hydraulic cutter and wear appropriate personal protective equipment. Failure to comply with these instructions can result in serious injury or death.

All high-voltage components are energized by default, regardless of whether the high-voltage de-energization procedure is performed or not! Cutting, crushing or touching high-voltage components can result in serious personal injury or death.

## Removing vehicle from the scene after an accident

### Vehicle towing

If the vehicle cannot start properly after an accident, remove it from the scene as shown in Fig. □.

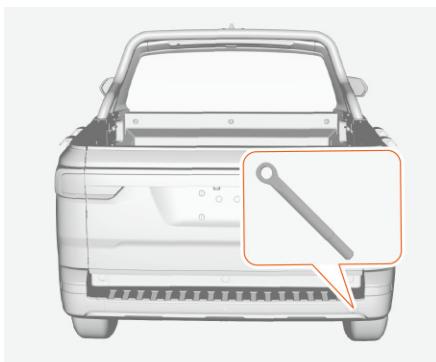


Precautions for vehicle towing:

- Have the vehicle towed with four wheels away from the ground. Do not tow the vehicle with any of the methods shown in Fig. □□□.
- Before towing, switch the vehicle to OFF mode, turn on the hazard warning lamp, close the doors and apply the mechanical locks.
- During towing, personnel are not allowed to stay in the vehicle.

### Using towing eye

1. Take the towing eye from the vehicle toolkit (see "Vehicle Emergency Tools - Towing Eye").
2. Open the front or rear towing hole covers as shown below.



3. Then screw the towing eye into the tow hook thread guide, making sure that the towing eye is fully tightened.
4. After use, remove the towing eye and put it back to its original place. Refit the towing hole cover.

**i** In some cases, the towing eye can be used to pull the vehicle onto a flatbed trailer.

- Whether the vehicle can be towed onto a flatbed trailer with the towing eye depends on the position and ground clearance of the vehicle.
- Towing via the towing eye may damage the vehicle if the trailer's slope is too steep or the vehicle does not have enough ground clearance.
- If necessary, use the trailer's lifting device to lift the vehicle.

---

# Index

## A

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Accessory power outlet .....                     | 89  |
| Acoustic vehicle alerting system (AVAS) .....    | 181 |
| Adaptive cruise control (ACC) .....              | 198 |
| Adding coolant .....                             | 287 |
| Air conditioning and ventilation system .....    | 107 |
| Air outlet adjustment .....                      | 112 |
| Air purification system .....                    | 112 |
| Airbag deployment .....                          | 134 |
| Airbag maintenance and replacement .....         | 137 |
| Airbag overview .....                            | 130 |
| Ambient light and sunlight sensor .....          | 106 |
| Around view monitor (AVM) (if equipped) .....    | 188 |
| Automatic emergency brake system (AEB) .....     | 224 |
| Automatic speed limit control system (LIM) ..... | 197 |

## B

|                                 |     |
|---------------------------------|-----|
| Bonnet .....                    | 283 |
| Brake fluid .....               | 292 |
| Brake pedal travel .....        | 290 |
| Bulb specifications .....       | 272 |
| Buttons on steering wheel ..... | 65  |

## C

|                                      |     |
|--------------------------------------|-----|
| Cargo box lighting .....             | 80  |
| Cargo compartment .....              | 95  |
| Centre armrest .....                 | 87  |
| Charging port .....                  | 24  |
| Checking and adding engine oil ..... | 285 |
| Checking coolant .....               | 287 |
| Checking or replacing a fuse .....   | 271 |
| Cleaning of the exterior .....       | 299 |

|                                      |     |
|--------------------------------------|-----|
| Cleaning of the interior .....       | 300 |
| Condensation on exterior lamps ..... | 294 |
| Cooling system introduction .....    | 286 |
| Cruise control (CC) .....            | 194 |
| Cup holder .....                     | 88  |

## D

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Driver seat memory (if equipped) ..... | 122 |
| Driver side overview .....             | 31  |
| Driving .....                          | 161 |

## E

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Electric power steering (EPS) .....                      | 293 |
| Electronic brake assist (EBA) .....                      | 179 |
| Electronic shift lever .....                             | 167 |
| Electronic stability control (ESC) .....                 | 177 |
| Emergency evacuation of occupants .....                  | 324 |
| Emergency response to road accidents (if equipped) ..... | 276 |
| Emission level .....                                     | 306 |
| Energy recovery .....                                    | 290 |
| Exterior lighting (if equipped) .....                    | 80  |
| Exterior rearview mirrors .....                          | 67  |

## F

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Fire extinguisher .....                  | 238 |
| Forward car leaving warning (FCLW) ..... | 234 |
| Front A/C control system .....           | 99  |
| Front compartment .....                  | 284 |
| Front Interior lighting .....            | 78  |
| Front seat heating/ventilation .....     | 120 |
| Front seats .....                        | 115 |
| Fuse position and identification .....   | 261 |

## G

|                                 |     |
|---------------------------------|-----|
| Gears.....                      | 168 |
| Getting unstuck.....            | 276 |
| Glasses case (if equipped)..... | 87  |
| Glove box .....                 | 82  |

## H

|                                  |     |
|----------------------------------|-----|
| Hazard warning lamp.....         | 237 |
| High-voltage battery.....        | 22  |
| Hill descent control (HDC) ..... | 179 |
| Hill hold control (HHC).....     | 180 |
| Horns .....                      | 63  |

## I

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| Immobiliser .....                             | 151 |
| Installing child restraint system ..          | 143 |
| Instructions for use .....                    | 169 |
| Intelligent cruise control (ICC)....          | 208 |
| Intelligent U-turn assistance<br>system ..... | 182 |
| Interior fuse box.....                        | 267 |
| Interior handles .....                        | 95  |
| Interior rearview mirrors.....                | 70  |
| Introduction to driver assist<br>systems..... | 191 |

## J

|                 |     |
|-----------------|-----|
| Jump start..... | 239 |
|-----------------|-----|

## L

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| Lane departure warning (LDW) ..                   | 223 |
| Lane keeping assist (LKA) .....                   | 219 |
| Location of vehicle<br>identification marks ..... | 11  |
| Locking and unlocking.....                        | 151 |
| Low-voltage battery inspection ..                 | 295 |

## M

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Magazine net (if equipped).....            | 95  |
| Main assembly types and<br>parameters..... | 304 |

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| Main dimension parameters.....              | 303 |
| Maintenance of low-voltage<br>battery ..... | 294 |
| Microwave window .....                      | 14  |

## N

|                             |    |
|-----------------------------|----|
| Net bag (if equipped) ..... | 95 |
| Notes to owners.....        | 7  |

## O

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| Overheating of hybrid<br>powertrain.....                      | 273 |
| Overview .....  | 289 |
| Overview of full LCD<br>instrument cluster (if equipped) ...  | 41  |
| Overview of instrument cluster<br>(full-segment display)..... | 37  |
| Overview of seat belts .....                                  | 123 |

## P

|                                    |     |
|------------------------------------|-----|
| Panoramic sunroof .....            | 75  |
| Parking brake .....                | 174 |
| Parking distance control (PDC).... | 183 |
| Passenger side overview .....      | 34  |
| Positions of airbags .....         | 131 |
| Power windows .....                | 72  |
| Preface.....                       | 1   |
| Prompts .....                      | 10  |

## R

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Rapid tyre repair .....                              | 254 |
| Rear interior lighting (if<br>equipped).....         | 79  |
| Rear seat ventilation .....                          | 121 |
| Rear seats.....                                      | 118 |
| Rear side radar system (RSRS)<br>(if equipped) ..... | 230 |
| Rear view camera (RVC)<br>system (if equipped).....  | 186 |
| Recommended oils, fluids and<br>capacities .....     | 308 |
| Reflective vest.....                                 | 238 |
| Refuelling .....                                     | 278 |

---

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Regular maintenance .....                | 281 |
| Replacement of low-voltage battery ..... | 295 |
| Replacing brake system parts .....       | 292 |
| Replacing spare tyre (if equipped) ..... | 257 |
| Roof rack (if equipped) .....            | 98  |

## S

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| Seat adjustment parameters .....            | 122 |
| Seat belt maintenance and replacement ..... | 129 |
| Selecting child restraint system .....      | 138 |
| Service brake .....                         | 173 |
| Smart key .....                             | 149 |
| Start operation .....                       | 160 |
| Start switch (keyless start) .....          | 159 |
| Steering wheel adjustment .....             | 63  |
| Steering wheel module for lamps .....       | 57  |
| Steering wheel module for wipers .....      | 61  |
| Storage boxes/compartments .....            | 83  |
| Sun visor and vanity mirror .....           | 86  |
| Symbols .....                               | 10  |
| System features .....                       | 21  |
| System layout .....                         | 19  |

## T

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| Three-point seat belt .....                        | 126 |
| Ticket holder (if equipped) .....                  | 87  |
| Towing eye .....                                   | 242 |
| Towing mode (if equipped) .....                    | 244 |
| Towing tips .....                                  | 242 |
| Traction control system (TCS) .....                | 181 |
| Turning on and off air conditioning remotely ..... | 113 |
| Type plate .....                                   | 14  |
| Tyres .....  | 247 |

## U

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| Underhood electrical centre (UEC) ..... | 262 |
| USB port .....                          | 93  |
| Using child restraint system .....      | 140 |

## V

|                                    |     |
|------------------------------------|-----|
| Vehicle collision .....            | 274 |
| Vehicle economy .....              | 306 |
| Vehicle emission .....             | 279 |
| Vehicle identification marks ..... | 11  |
| Vehicle on fire .....              | 275 |
| Vehicle power performance .....    | 306 |
| Vehicle start failure .....        | 161 |
| Vehicle storage .....              | 296 |
| Vehicle weight parameters .....    | 303 |

## W

|   |     |
|---|-----|
| Warning and indicator lamps .....         | 46  |
| Warning triangle .....                    | 237 |
| Washer fluid .....                        | 296 |
| Wheels and tyres .....                    | 307 |
| Why are seat belts protective .....       | 123 |
| Wiper blades .....                        | 297 |
| Wireless charging pad (if equipped) ..... | 93  |